REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF
BACHELOR OF JOURNALISM
(BJ)

(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)

Definitions

J1 In these Regulations, and in the Syllabuses for the degree of BJ, unless the context otherwise requires –
‘Course’ means a course of instruction which normally carries 6 credits or in some cases 3 credits or multiples of 3, leading to one examination paper as defined in the syllabus;
‘Paper’ means one or more of the following tests: a theoretical examination paper, a practical examination paper, an assessment of field practice, a thesis, and a dissertation, or other assignments as prescribed in the syllabus of the course leading to it;
‘Credits’ means the weight assigned to each course relative to the total study load. The number of credits is indicative of the contact hours and / or study time associated with the course on a weekly basis;
‘Pre-requisite’ means a course which candidates must have completed as specified to the satisfaction of the Head of Department before being permitted to take the course in question.

Admission to the degree

J2 To be eligible for admission to the degree of Bachelor of Journalism, candidates shall
(a) comply with the General Regulations;
(b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
(c) complete the curriculum in accordance with the regulations that follow.

Length of study

J3 The curriculum shall normally extend over three academic years consisting of six semesters of full-time study, excluding the summer semesters. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to complete the curriculum in more than four academic years, which being the maximum period of registration.

Completion of the curriculum

J4 To complete the curriculum, candidates shall:
(a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula2;
(b) enrol in not less than 180 credits of courses, unless otherwise required or permitted under the Regulations;
(c) follow the required number of compulsory and elective courses as prescribed in the syllabuses of the equivalent of normally 60 credits for each year of study. For each semester, candidates shall select not less than 24 or more than 36 credits of courses;
(d) take a maximum of 81 credits of junior-level courses and the rest being senior-level courses as prescribed in the syllabuses over the entire period; and
(e) successfully complete 3 credits of summer internship.

1 This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.
2 The specific requirements applicable to candidates of this degree curriculum are spelt out in the syllabuses.
Selection of Courses

**J5** Candidates who wish to withdraw from a course at the beginning of each semester may do so up to 2 weeks after the commencement of the semester. Withdrawal beyond the 2-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical or other reasons acceptable by the Faculty Board, and candidates who withdraw from any course without permission will be given a failed grade.

Assessment and grading

**J6** Candidates shall be assessed in each of the courses for which they have registered. The assessment may take one or a combination of forms as prescribed in the syllabuses and shall normally include the candidates’ coursework during the semester. Only those satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits.

**J7** Candidates’ performance in a course shall be assessed with the grading system as prescribed in UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

Failure in examination

**J8** Candidates who fail in any course may, as directed by the Board of Examiners, be permitted to present themselves for re-assessment with or without repeating the failed course. The timing and the form(s) of re-assessment shall be decided by the Board of Examiners. Candidates shall not be allowed to repeat a course for which they have achieved a passed grade for upgrading purposes, nor shall they be permitted to repeat a course more than once. The failed grade will be recorded in the official transcripts. The new grade obtained after re-assessment will also be recorded and will replace the previous F grade in the calculation of the weighted grade averages. As failed courses shall not be credited towards a degree, failed compulsory courses must be re-assessed.

Absence from examination

**J9** Candidates who are unable because of their illness to be present for any written examinations may apply for permission to present themselves for a supplementary examination to be held before the beginning of the first semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of absence from any examination. Candidates who fail to satisfy the examiners in one or more papers in such a supplementary examination shall be considered under the provisions made in these Regulations for failure at the first attempt at the examination, except that a further supplementary examination shall not be permitted.

Performance assessment

**J10** At the end of each semester, candidates’ performance shall be assessed for the purposes of determining
(a) their eligibility for progression to an award of the degree;
(b) their eligibility for the award; or
(c) whether they be required to be discontinued from the programme.

Progression of studies

**J11** Candidates shall be permitted to progress if they have:
(a) not exceeded the maximum period of the registration; and
(b) accumulated not less than 30 credits and attained a GPA of 1.00 or above over the first and second semesters; or
(c) accumulated not less than 30 credits and attained a GPA of 1.50 or above over the third and fourth semesters; or
(d) accumulated not less than 30 credits and attained a GPA of 1.50 or above over the fifth and sixth semesters; or
(e) attained a semester GPA of 1.50 or above at the end of each subsequent semester. Those who have not been able to fulfill the requirements above shall be recommended for discontinuation from the programme under General Regulation G12.

Award of the degree

J12 To be eligible for the award of the degree of BJ, candidates shall have:
(a) achieved a weighted GPA of 1.00 or above;
(b) accumulated a minimum of 180 credits; and
(c) satisfied the requirements in UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

Degree classification

J13 A list of candidates who have successfully completed all the degree requirements shall be published in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its full discretion by taking the overall performance of candidates and other relevant factors into consideration.

SYLLABUSES FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF JOURNALISM

CURRICULUM REQUIREMENTS

1. Regulations J1 to 5 specify the requirements with which candidates have to comply for completion of the BJ degree programme. Further details of the requirements are given in the syllabuses. The programme which normally extends over three academic years of six semesters of full-time study provides candidates with the flexibility of completing their studies within a maximum period of four academic years. Candidates shall enrol in not less than 180 credits of courses for the curriculum. They shall select not less than 24 and not more than 36 credits of courses for each semester. The normal semester load is 30 credits.

2. For the fulfillment of Regulation UG3 “Requirements for Graduation”, candidates shall complete successfully the three language studies courses and the general studies courses. Also, candidates shall obtain a pass in an Information Technology proficiency test, or successfully complete a 3-credit course in Information Technology.
PROGRAMME STRUCTURE

Junior-level courses

Candidates are permitted to take a maximum of 81 credits of junior-level courses comprising the following:

- **JMSC0101.** Principles of journalism and the news media (6 credits)
- **JMSC0102.** News reporting and writing workshop (6 credits)
- **STAT0301.** Elementary statistical methods or
- **STAT1301.** Probability & statistics I or
- **STAT1306.** Introductory statistics
- **ECON1001.** Introduction to economics I (6 credits)
- **POLI1002.** Fundamentals of public administration or
- **POLI1003.** Making sense of politics or
- **SOWK1001.** Introduction to social administration
- **SOCI1001.** Introduction to sociology or
- **SOCI1003.** Introduction to anthropology or
- **PSYC1001.** Introduction to psychology
- **ECEN1901.** Academic English for social sciences (3 credits)
- **ECEN1910.** Professional writing for the media (3 credits)
- **CSSC1001.** Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students (3 credits)
- Science and technology studies (3 credits)
- Culture and value studies or any elective course outside the BJ syllabus (3 credits)

Senior-level courses

Senior level candidates are required to take 36 credits from List A, and a minimum of 18 credits from List B. Candidates are also required to successfully complete 3 credits of summer internship.

**List A (36 credits)**

- **JMSC0004.** Radio production (6 credits)
- **JMSC0007.** New media workshop (6 credits)
- **JMSC0008.** Multimedia production (6 credits)
- **JMSC0009.** Desktop publishing (6 credits)
- **JMSC0014.** Journalism and media practicum (6 credits)
- **JMSC0017.** Feature writing (6 credits)
- **JMSC0018.** Chinese news writing (6 credits)
- **JMSC0019.** Media law and ethics (6 credits)
- **JMSC0023.** Advanced reporting: public affairs (6 credits)
- **JMSC0024.** Advanced reporting: beats and investigations (6 credits)
- **JMSC0025.** Journalism traditions (6 credits)
- **JMSC0026.** Independent study (6 credits)
- **JMSC0027.** The press, politics and government (6 credits)
- **JMSC0030.** Editing (6 credits)
- **JMSC0031.** Business and financial journalism (6 credits)
- **JMSC0032.** Cultural studies of the media (6 credits)
- **JMSC0033.** Literary journalism (6 credits)
- **JMSC0034.** Covering China (6 credits)
Advanced computer-assisted reporting (6 credits)
Research methods and investigative reporting (6 credits)
Advanced Chinese news writing (6 credits)
Visual journalism (6 credits)
The magazine workshop (6 credits)
Chinese news editing (6 credits)
Business and financial journalism in an age of globalization (6 credits)
International news (6 credits)
Reporting public health issues (6 credits)
Special topics in journalism I (6 credits)
Special topics in journalism II (6 credits)
Introduction to television (6 credits)
Writing and reporting for broadcast news (6 credits)
Television news production, shooting and editing (6 credits)
Broadcast newsroom and management (6 credits)
Radio news reporting and writing (6 credits)

List B (Minimum 18 credits)

AMER2022. “What’s on TV?” Television and American culture (6 credits)
CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)
CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)
CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)
CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)
CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (3 credits)
CLIT2025. Visual cultures (6 credits)
CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)
CLIT2027. Digital culture and new media technologies II (6 credits)
CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)
FOSS0001. Media, culture and communication in contemporary China (6 credits)
POLI0006. China and Hong Kong: the politics of transition (6 credits)
POLI0013. Elections and representative democracy (6 credits)
POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)
POLI0020. Hong Kong politics (6 credits)
POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)
POLI0022. Governing China (6 credits)
POLI0059. China and the world (6 credits)
PSYC0023. Psychology of human communication (6 credits)
PSYC0041. Consumer psychology (6 credits)
SOCI0006. Critical issues in media studies (6 credits)
SOCI0015. Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)
SOCI0043. Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)
SOCI0062. Media development and cultural change in contemporary China (6 credits)
SOCI0065. Understanding media studies (6 credits)
SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)

Besides fulfilling the above requirements, it is mandatory that candidates should pursue a ‘major’, or a ‘double minor’ as prescribed in the syllabuses below.

(a) A ‘major’ is defined as taking not less than 48 (except psychology major should register not less than 54 credits) and not more than 78 credits of courses from a single department/programme listed below:

Disciplinary Majors
- American Studies
- Biochemistry
• Biology
• Biotechnology
• Chemistry
• Chinese
• Comparative Literature
• Earth Sciences
• Ecology & Biodiversity
• Economics (For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 only)
• Economics and Finance (For candidates admitted in the academic year 2004-2005 only)
• English
• Environmental Protection
• European Studies
• Finance (For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 only)
• Fine Arts
• Food and Nutritional Science
• Geography
• History
• Japanese Studies
• Language
• Linguistics
• Linguistics and Philosophy
• Material Science
• Mathematics
• Music
• Philosophy
• Physics
• Politics and Public Administration
• Psychology
• Risk Management
• Social Work and Social Administration
• Sociology
• Statistics

Multi-disciplinary Majors
• Criminal Justice
• Global Studies
• Public and Social Administration

(b) (i) Double Minor
A ‘double minor’ is defined as taking not less than 24 credits from each of the two departments or programmes specified below:

Disciplinary Minors
• Actuarial Studies
• American Studies
• Astronomy
• Biochemistry
• Biology
• Biotechnology
• Business
• Chemistry
• Chinese
• Comparative Literature
• Computer Science
• Earth Sciences
• Ecology & Biodiversity
• Economics
• Environmental Protection
• European Studies
• Finance
• Fine Arts
• Food and Nutritional Science
• General Science
• Geography
• History
• Japanese Studies
• Language
• Legal Studies
• Linguistics
• Mathematics
• Music
• Philosophy
• Physics
• Politics and Public Administration
• Psychology
• Risk Management
• Social Administration
• Sociology
• Statistics

**Multi-disciplinary Minors**
• Criminal Justice
• Global Studies
• Human Resources Management
• International Business
• Public and Social Administration

**Inter-disciplinary Minors**
• Contemporary China and Hong Kong
• Globalism: Cultures, Spaces, Languages
• Histories and Cultures of the Asia-Pacific Region
• Self-expression, Communication, and the Human Subject
• Technology in the Humanities
• The Culture of Business in the Modern World

(For the detail requirements of majors and minors, please refer to the BSocSc, BA and BSc syllabuses. For the course descriptions, please refer to the BA, BBA, BBA(Acc&Fin), BBA(IBGM), BBA(IS), BBA(Law), BEcon, BEcon&Fin, BFin, BSc and BSocSc syllabuses.)

---

**Note:**
(1) Candidates should complete the following courses in or before the second semester:

- **CSSC1001.** Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students
- **ECEN1901.** Academic English for social sciences
- **ECEN1910.** Professional writing for the media
- **JMSC0101.** Principles of journalism and the news media
- **JMSC0102.** News reporting and writing workshop

Candidates admitted in the academic year 2004-2005 should take **ECEN1910** “Professional writing for the media” in the academic year 2005-2006.
Candidates should complete all junior-level core courses and the following courses in or before the fourth semester:

Culture and value studies or any elective course outside the BJ syllabus
Science and technology studies
Foundations to information technology or Information technology proficiency test

Candidates should ensure that they have taken the relevant junior-level course(s) for the subject in which they intend to major.

(2) For ‘Multi-disciplinary majors’, selection is subject to the compliance with prescribed requirements and acceptance by the Heads of Department/staff concerned.

(3) Candidates may take at most 12 3-credit courses for the curriculum, while the remaining should be 6-credit or more courses.

(4) Course registration
Course registration will take place before the commencement of each semester. Candidates are advised to consult relevant teachers or Heads of Departments on the suitable combinations of courses and to adhere closely to the normal study pattern. Less suitable combinations of courses may not be permitted because of timetabling difficulties. Courses listed in the syllabuses may not necessarily be offered every year; and depending on the exigencies of staffing, additional courses may be offered. Candidates may change their course selection during the two-week add/drop period which is scheduled at the beginning of each semester. Withdrawal beyond the 2-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical or other reasons acceptable by the Faculty Board. Candidates withdrawal from any course without permission will be given a failed grade. In course registration, candidates should pay special attention to the pre-requisite and co-requisite requirements of courses as specified in the syllabuses. A prerequisite is a course which candidates must have completed in accordance with the conditions stipulated by the Head of Department before being permitted to take a course in question. A co-requisite is a course which candidates must take at the same time as the course in question.
FACULTY OF ARTS

American Studies Programme

First Year

AMER1009.  Consuming culture: decoding American symbols (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Images of America (as revealed in Hollywood films, television, advertisements, music and music videos, news media and consumer products) shape our vision of US culture. In a course specifically designed with Hong Kong students in mind, we will study and decode cultural products mediated to us by the increasingly global American media. We will approach national culture, including popular culture, as an extension and creation of national myths and propaganda and explore why American people are so attached to certain symbols, and what these symbols mean for the United States as a whole. In the course of our discussions we may touch on the symbolism and reality of the American Dream and the myth of “rags to riches,” the notion of success, materialism and consumerist culture, as well as on the national and international symbols that for many define the image of America. We may also consider distinctions between high and low/popular cultures and see how class, gender and race affect notions of culture generally and how they shape the particular themes of US culture under discussion.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

AMER1011.  Born in the USA: U.S. youth cultures (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Baby boomers, Beats, Hippies, Yuppies and Gen(eration) Xers are labels assigned to various generations of American youth. This first-year survey course explores the connection between historical change and adolescence/early adulthood in the United States during the second half of the 20th century. Throughout the term we will consider youth culture through the interdisciplinary mix of history, politics, literature, and popular culture. From these diverse perspectives, we will discover how young people in America are defined and how they attempt to define themselves by their subcultures, fashion, leisure, music, use of the internet, slang, education, and other expressions of identity. While teaching about American youth cultures, the course will offer students a chance to reflect on their own experiences as adolescents/young adults and focus on improving critical thinking, speaking and writing skills.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

AMER1015.  Wall Street: Issues in American business (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will draw on selected issues in American business in order to teach us about the essential characteristics of US society, including its character, values, as well as written (e.g. legal) and unwritten codes of behaviour. Every day, decisions are made on Wall Street which affect how business is conducted in America, Asia, and everywhere else around the globe. How did one address become so influential in, and such an icon of, American business? This course seeks to examine the Wall Street phenomenon, as well as its culture, influence and impact on specific components of American business. Issues under discussion may involve the nature of American business, its place in the national life (“the business of America is business,” affirmed President Coolidge), its code of ethics and failures to live by that code. Case studies will be drawn from the famous and infamous examples of American entrepreneurial spirit as they made headlines up to, and including, the 21st century. Furthermore, issues such as the rise of the Internet and the information age will be examined to explore the reverse — how they shape Wall Street and the way business is conducted in America.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

AMER1017. Movieland: America on Hollywood’s big screen (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Hollywood is known to spin dreams, visions and illusions but, caught in the big-screen experience, viewers often forget that these dreams and illusions are spun within particular social and cultural contexts. Films are woven into national myths, myths are woven into the society that builds them, and society is woven into the people that create and recreate America everyday as they live, work and go to the movies. This course will look at many of the biggest, most famous and most representative Hollywood blockbusters—films and their movie-star icons—that in many ways define American culture. Students will be introduced to various genres that have become synonymous with Hollywood, among them the action thriller, classic and revisionist western, MGM musical, film noir and police story, science fiction, romantic comedy, Disney animation, and others. The experience of these films and their contexts will broaden our knowledge of American cultural values and help us critique these values, so that the reality of American life is explored alongside its ideals. The course will also aim to enhance critical and creative thinking as well as speaking and writing skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework

AMER1018. From crime fiction to social document: Introduction to 20th century American literature (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Humphrey Bogart, Robert Mitchum, James Caan, Jack Nicholson, Robert Elliot Gould... all these Hollywood actors played him: the tired gumshoe, the hired dick, the hardboiled detective, the gun for hire, the private eye. If you’ve seen them in action and liked what you saw, now is your chance to study the original novels on which the films were based. In this course we will read and analyze some of the classic novels of the genre which at various points has been labelled hardboiled fiction, tough guy fiction, or even noir, and what they tell us about life in America in the 20th century. We will begin with a socio-economic look at the several decades in American history crucial to the development of modern crime, crime-fighting forces and crime fiction, laying the foundations for a better understanding of the novels and films in the course and the social issues they touch on. Building on these opening lectures, we will trace the rise of the hardboiled story from pulp fictions of the 1920s and the emergence of the classic hero (the private eye) and heroine (the femme fatale), to the contemporary examples of the genre, including the police procedural and the legal/lawyer procedural. We will try to identify what is specific and recurrent about American crime fiction in terms of its structure and themes, and try to understand its portrayal of America then and now.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Second Year/Third Year

AMER2002. The road in American culture (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The popular hit song, “Hit the road, Jack,” is as much a part of American culture and slang as Jack Kerouac’s bestselling account of his life on the American highway, On the Road. For better or worse, North Americans have always been on the road, pushing westward towards California, Oregon and British Columbia, moving around the country in pursuit of the American Dream, or just driving along Route 66 to escape the mundane suburban life. This restlessness and the ease with which large segments of the population move and resettle characterizes many aspects of US and Canadian life, turning the road into one of the most powerful symbols in North American literature and culture. Through the analysis of various media forms, which may include film, fiction, music, material culture
and architecture, this course will consider the road in America as reality and icon, extending it to the recent emergence of the Internet and the “information highway.”
Assessment: 100% coursework.

AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Like so many other immigrants to the United States, Asians – Chinese, Japanese, Filipinos, Vietnamese, Koreans, etc. – were also drawn by the dream of Golden Mountain. Yet once in America, they would confront not only promise and possibility but the dream’s betrayal: hostility, rejection, and exclusion. This course will explore the varieties of Asian American cultures that emerge out of the painful, disruptive struggles between expectation and reality faced by these immigrants and their children, and the representation of their experiences in the arts, media, politics and popular culture. Asian Americans are frequently stereotyped as model minorities for striving after the American dream of education, wealth, and political representation. We will examine and challenge this “model minority” idea in American life and politics, especially as it relates to inter-minority conflict and cooperation, as individual American minority groups attempt to achieve their own version of American success.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
In 1800 only 6% of Americans lived in cities; in 2000 this number was more than 80%. As a center of growth, power, and cultural diversity, the American city has always occupied a crucial place in America’s vision of itself as a new nation. “A cruel city, but a lovely one, a savage city, yet it had such tenderness”—this quote from Thomas Wolfe’s *A Vision of the City* is representative of the varied cultural representations of the American urban environment as a place where fortunes and lives are made or lost. Through an examination of literature, art, architecture, photography, film and music, this course will take a closer look at some of the greatest as well as the “baddest” American metropolises, looking for a way to understand the people who live, commute, work, create, govern, commit crime and conduct business in them.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is designed to familiarize students with business practice in the United States and in American corporations operating in Hong Kong, laying foundations for a better understanding of the individuals and institutions driving the economy. Weekly sessions will include lectures and, whenever possible, discussions with members of the American business community in the Asia-Pacific region. Topics may include: U.S. business history and economic cycles, American entrepreneurs, the ethics and etiquette of U.S. corporate culture, government/business relationships, gender and business, glass ceilings and opportunities for advancement, and business and technological change.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

AMER2021. On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Concentrating on North American points of interest from cities to landscape to cultural sites—this
course will explore the variety and complexity of American life. Throughout the semester students will conduct group research and deliver presentations on the cities and locations to be visited in the summer, which will typically vary in the years the course is offered. In 2004, for example, the field trip will stretch from Los Angeles and the “Star Walk” of Hollywood, to San Francisco and its world-famous Chinatown, to the metropolitan Seattle which both Bruce Lee and Bill Gates called home, to the Calgary stampede which every year enacts the cowboy rituals of the Wild West.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework

---

**AMER2022. What’s on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Television has been a powerful force in US history and culture. American TV shows and programming styles have been exported globally, and are modified to suit diverse cultural settings, including Hong Kong. The United States exerts significant global influence, in part because of its success in marketing itself, both domestically and abroad, through media and entertainment. While many contest the content or perspective of American media, few are exempt from its impact. This course offers students a chance to consider the impact of television inside and outside of the US and explore how the American media-machine reaches into every facet of the nation’s life as well as into the lives of people around the world. Topics to be discussed in the course may include the history of television, strategies for critical viewing, war and TV, educational television, television’s domination of politics, youth culture and TV, the technology behind television programming, and finally TV programming in Hong Kong.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2029. Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students in this course will be discussing current and past events as reported in newspapers, magazines, television, literature, films and on the internet. The course will focus on domestic issues facing Americans at home as well as on political, economic, and cultural links between the United States and other nations. Pedagogy will be student-centered and require students to participate regularly in (and at times lead) discussions. Typical topics may include the analysis of the American political system and the presidency, the relationship between business and politics, the role of sports in American life, the fallout from September 11, the rise of rap and hip-hop, manufacturing media, regionalism, stand-up comedy and social satire, and the US university system. These and other issues will form the basis of the course taught, on occasion, with the help of representatives of various disciplines across the spectrum of the arts, humanities and social sciences.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework.

---


*(This course is normally open only to second-year students and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course and its companion, Foundations in American Studies: Part 2 (offered in the second semester), are requisite for all Majors in the American Studies Programme. Building on the introductory material from the first year, the course provides a mosaic of perspectives on the United States between 1600 and 1900 through an intensive series of lectures and discussions. Following an overview of and a general introduction to the United States, a number of invited experts will trace the development of American society from pre-Columbian times to the beginning of the 20th century. The lectures will range over a diverse but complementary array of viewpoints, and may include geography, history, sociology, business, education, art, music, theatre, language and literature. This unique approach will allow students to sample and compare multidisciplinary perspectives on such
foundational issues in US history as the settlement, expansion, the War of Independence, *laissez faire* capitalism, slavery, the Civil War, and the country’s rising economic, political and military domination. The lectures will be enriched with discussions, film clips, music, and prints from this period in American life.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**AMER2031. Foundations of American Studies: Part II (6 credits)**

(This course is normally open only to second-year students and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course and its companion, Foundations in American Studies: Part 1 (offered in the first semester), are requisite for all Majors in the American Studies Programme. In this course we will focus exclusively on the 20th and 21st centuries and on the internal problems and international conflicts that shape the face of America today. Among the topics for study and discussion may be the flood of immigration at the turn of the 20th century, the gangster-friendly Jazz Age, the Great Depression, World War II, the worldwide Cold War and the conformist ’50s, the psychedelic flower-power ’60s, and the post-Vietnam decades in which the US increasingly lost touch with its ideals. Through lectures and class debates we will attempt to compare our popular knowledge of America with the sometimes different historical reality behind it. From documentary sources and literary nonfiction, through film, novels, comic books and rap music, we will lay foundations for a better understanding of the country which for better or worse continues to make the world headlines today.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**AMER2033. Asia on America’s screen (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

“The Orient” has always held a dual attraction of romance and danger outside Asia, and this tradition has since been reinforced by Hollywood. The allure of wealth, trade and exoticism that brought millions of Americans across the Pacific provided rich material for movie drama. This combination of geographical attraction and cultural appeal was further reinforced during the wars the United States fought in Asia. War, violence and romance fill America’s movie screens, pulling in vast crowds and in the process shaping and mis-shaping America’s view of Asia. Asking what is Asia and how far it extends, this course will explore cinematic representations of the continent and its people as constructed by Hollywood during more than a century of selling romantic myths to a public that often has no first-hand experience of Asian culture and no firm grasp of its history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**AMER2035. Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The Vietnam War was the first war in the age of the television and the first war that America lost. The emotions aroused by the loss of American lives and the images of violence and brutality made TV and Hollywood important actors in the war for hearts and minds. This course will examine the multiple wars, police actions, military invasions, armed “liberations,” coups d’états, political assassinations, “regime changes,” and other euphemisms for military aggression and intervention on an international scale. Among other issues discussed may be international weapons trade, the Cold War, the two World Wars, international peace keeping, “wars” on drugs and/or terrorism, and the state of civil liberties in the US. In the process we will also examine the role of movies, television and journalistic reportage in shaping public opinion and thus indirectly the American perception and misperception of the rest of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework
AMER2036. Issues in contemporary immigration to American cities (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is an introduction and overview to the contemporary immigration in American society. Although we begin with a cursory historical overview, the bulk of the course focuses on the period following the 1965 Immigration and Nationality Act, in which the race-based quota system that had been in place since 1924 was eliminated.
Assessment: 100% coursework

AMER2037. Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Institutions structure the lives of all Americans. While institutions can be thought of in terms of discreet organizations—Harvard University, the New York Stock Exchange, National Basketball Association, the Metropolitan Museum of Art—or even the buildings in which these organizations are housed, in the broader sense, institutions are the forms into which social activity is organized. Among the most fundamental institutions of this latter type are the family, school, business, and leisure. Each of them is associated with values, beliefs and practices which, taken together, help to constitute American culture. The course will examine these and other types of institutions in order to understand the origins of the values, beliefs and practices which they embody. We will also study how these values, beliefs and practices may have been influenced by such factors as ethnicity, race, class, religion, and geographic region, and how the institutions and the ideas they embody have persisted or changed over time. In the process, we will seek to identify common themes, and to consider how certain tensions—for example between individualism and community, democracy and excellence, service and profit—have shaped each of these institutions, and through them, American society. Finally, we will consider the extension of these institutions, and their values and practices, beyond the United States, asking how American ideas about home, school, work and play have impacted and interacted with other cultures, including Asian.
Assessment: 100% coursework

Third Year

AMER3004. Senior seminar in American Studies: Part I (6 credits)

(This course is also open to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)
This course is required of all Majors in the American Studies Programme and is designed to cap students’ university careers with a rigorous, interdisciplinary and theme-based program of study. The specific area of study may vary from year to year depending on students’ background, interests and the expertise of the instructor. Students will deepen their research and writing skills, conduct discussion sessions, participate in intensive group work, get involved in a mentoring program and continue to hone the critical thinking skills nurtured during their education in American Studies. The seminar will seek ways to prepare students to make the transition from the university setting to a variety of employment settings.
Assessment: 100% coursework

AMER3005. Senior seminar in American Studies: Part II (6 credits)

(This course is also open to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)
This course is required of all Majors in the American Studies Programme and is designed to cap students’ university careers with a rigorous, interdisciplinary and theme-based program of study. The specific area of study may vary from year to year depending on students’ background, interests
and the expertise of the instructor. Students will deepen their research and writing skills, conduct discussion sessions, participate in intensive group work, get involved in a mentoring program and continue to hone the critical thinking skills nurtured during their education in American Studies. The seminar will seek ways to prepare students to make the transition from the university setting to a variety of employment settings.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**AMER3006. Dissertation (12 credits)**

This is a directed reading course aimed at top students in American Studies who would like to pursue an individualized program of research under the supervision of a mentor, typically (though not necessarily) an American Studies Programme instructor or an American Studies Board member. The student is responsible for approaching the instructor in advance and obtaining consent for supervision. The coursework will normally consist of designing the project around a topic relevant to the Programme, compiling a bibliography, research and reading, and finally writing the dissertation. A project proposal consisting of a thesis statement, preliminary outline of research (typically 3-5 pages), timetable for completion, and working bibliography will be filed with the Programme Coordinator no later than November 30. The full dissertation (approximately 40-80 pages) shall be completed and presented for examination by April 30 of the academic year in which the course is taken.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Other courses, offered from time to time by the component departments and approved by the Board of Studies in American Studies in conjunction with the department concerned, may be used to fulfil programme requirements. Students who wish to count courses towards the requirements of the American Studies major that are not listed in this syllabus need to seek special Faculty Board approval.

---

**Department of Chinese**

**Group A: Chinese Language and Literature**

**First Year Courses**

**CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

An introduction to the various aspects of the Chinese language: etymology, phonology, lexicology and grammar, with special reference to the cultural context and its developments in the twentieth century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN1102. An introduction to standard works in classical Chinese literature (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the classical Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN1103. An introduction to standard works in modern Chinese literature (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the modern and contemporary Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.
CHIN1105. History of Chinese literature: a general survey (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims at a study of the general characteristics and the development of Chinese literature from the pre-Qin period to the nineteenth century. This course is suitable for students without A-level Chinese literature attainments.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN1106. Poetry and the couplet: the writing and appreciation (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims to enhance students’ ability to appreciate and to write shi and ci poems as well as couplets.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN1108. Contrastive phonology of Putonghua and Cantonese (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims to help students gain knowledge of the phonological differences and correspondences between Putonghua and Cantonese and thus improve students’ language abilities in spoken Chinese.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN1109. An Introduction to Chinese women’s literature (3 Credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of Chinese women’s literature in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known writers. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese women’s literature from the Han period to contemporary China.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN1110. Creative writing I (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims to foster interest in the great works of modern Chinese literature and to help students develop and sharpen their writing skills. It examines how writers and readers interact with literary works in general and considers how meanings and effects are generated in prose and fiction in particular.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN1111. Creative writing II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA Students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A continuation of CHIN1110, this course aims to foster interest in the great works of modern Chinese literature and to help students develop and sharpen their writing skills. It examines how writers and readers interact with literary works in general and considers how meanings and effects are generated in modern poems and free verse in particular.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

Second and Third Year Courses

CHIN2121. **Prose up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of Chinese prose in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese prose from the pre-Qin period to the end of the Qing period.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

CHIN2122. **Prose: selected writers (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A detailed study of the prose of one or two of the following: Han Yu, Liu Zongyuan, Ouyang Xiu, Wang Anshi and Su Shi. Students taking this course are expected to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the prose works covered and a general ability to describe and analyse prose styles.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

CHIN2123. **Shi poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of Chinese *shi* poetry in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese *shi* poetry from earliest times to the nineteenth century.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

CHIN2124. **Shi poetry: selected writers (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A detailed study of the *shi* poetry of one or two of the following: Cao Zhi, Tao Qian, Xie Lingyun, Wang Wei, Li Bai, Du Fu, Han Yu, Li Shangyin, Su Shi, and Huang Tingjian. Students taking this course are expected to show in the examination a sound knowledge of the *shi* poetry covered and a general ability to describe and analyse poetic styles.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

CHIN2125. **Ci poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A general survey of the *ci* poetry from its beginning in the Tang period to the Qing period, with special emphasis on the Song period, which is considered the golden age in the history of this literary genre. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development of the *ci* poetry from the eighth century to the nineteenth century. Its various forms and styles are examined through specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.
CHIN2126.  *Ci* poetry: selected writers (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the *ci* poetry of one or two of the following: Su Shi, Zhou Bangyan, Xin Qiji and Jiang Kui - the Four Great Masters of the *ci* poetry of the Song period. The course will consider the individual achievements and influences of the poets; their contemporaries will also be discussed. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2127.  Classical Chinese fiction (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of classical Chinese fiction through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of classical Chinese fiction from the Tang to the Qing period. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2128.  *Xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2129.  Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) I (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in China from 1917 to 1949 and how they affected modern Chinese poetry, essays and novels. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2130.  Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) II (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of modern Chinese fiction from 1917 to 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works of representative authors. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2131.  Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in the Mainland since 1949 and how they have affected poetry, essays and novels. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2132.  Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese fiction in the Mainland since 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works
of representative authors.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2133.  Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of Chinese literature in Taiwan since 1949.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2134.  Prescribed texts for detailed study I (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A close study of one or more of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:
(i)  Shijing
(ii)  Chuci
(iii)  Zhaoming wenxuan
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2135.  Prescribed texts for detailed study II (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A close study of one or both of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:
(i)  Zuozhuan
(ii)  Zhuangzi
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2136.  Classical Chinese literary criticism (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course includes a general survey of classical Chinese literary criticism with special reference to the Wenxin diaolong.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2138.  Chinese etymology (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of the essential features of the Chinese characters, principles underlying their construction, and the process of evolution behind them.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2139.  Chinese phonology (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course includes an introduction to general phonetics, a survey of the history of Chinese phonology, and an introduction to ‘rhyme books’ and ‘rhyme tables’.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.
CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:
(i) Phonology
(ii) Lexicology and semantics
(iii) Philology
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:
(i) Grammar
(ii) Rhetoric
(iii) Logic
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A study of the general characteristics and the development of Functional Chinese with special reference to the use of language in Hong Kong. Students taking this course are expected to acquire sufficient language skills for general communication purposes.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

Group B: Chinese History

First Year Courses

CHIN1201. Topical studies of Chinese history (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines some of the major topics in Chinese political, social, economic and institutional history.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN1202. An introduction to the study of Chinese history (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A foundation course in the development of Chinese history and historiography.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN1203. Chinese history of the twentieth century (3 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
A brief survey of the transformation and reformation of China since 1900.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1204. Chinese culture in the twentieth century (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the major cultural changes since 1900.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1205. Chinese history: a general survey (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the Chinese political, social, and economic history from the early times to the present century. The course is especially suitable for students from non-Arts backgrounds.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1206. An introduction to Chinese thought (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A broad overview of the teachings of Confucianism, Daoism and Buddhism, with a view to introducing students to the foundations of Chinese thought. This course is suitable for both students with or without Arts backgrounds.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1207. Traditional Chinese culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the general characteristics of traditional Chinese culture. The course is especially suitable for students from non-Arts backgrounds.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second Year and Third Year Courses**

**CHIN2221. History of the Qin and Han Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century B.C. to the third century.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2222. History of the Wei, Jin and the Northern-and-Southern Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century to the sixth century.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2223. History of the Sui and Tang Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the sixth century to the tenth century.
CHIN2224.  History of the Song and Yuan Periods (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the tenth century to the fourteenth century.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2225.  History of the Ming Period (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the fourteenth century to the seventeenth century.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2226.  History of the Qing Period (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the seventeenth century to the twentieth century.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2231.  Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The course gives an overview of the development of religious Daoism and Chinese popular religions.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2233.  History of the Chinese legal system (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the main features and development of the Chinese legal system from the early times to the present.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2234.  History of Chinese political institutions (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the main features and the development of Chinese political institutions from the early times to the present.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2235.  Sources and methodology (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course intends to provide a thorough training in research methodology related to the study of Chinese history. The ideas of noted ancient and contemporary Chinese historians will be drawn on. Particular emphasis is placed on the use of reference works and information search through internet.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with Chinese civilization in general including ethnic cultures and problems in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to give an in-depth investigation of Chinese scientific thought and culture from the pre-Qin period to the early twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2244. History of Guanxue and Sixue (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the development of educational theories and institutions in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2245. History of Chinese examination system (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the theories and means of selecting men of talent, as well as the development of the examination system in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2246. Historical writings: texts and styles (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or more of the following:

(i) *Shiji*.
(ii) *Hanshu*.
(iii) *Hou Hanshu*.
(iv) *Sanguozhi*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2247. Local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the general characteristics and the compilation problems of local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
CHIN2251. Chinese philosophy I: Confucianism (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the major philosophical texts and ideas of the Confucian tradition. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2252. Chinese philosophy II: Daoism (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the major philosophical texts and ideas of the Daoist tradition. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2253. Chinese philosophy III: Buddhism (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the main streams of Indian Buddhist thought and their development in China. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the history of Christianity in China. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2255. Chinese intellectual history (Part I) (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Qin-Han to the Sui-Tang period. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2256. Chinese intellectual history (Part II) (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Song period to the Qing period. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2257. The development of Confucianism in late imperial China (3 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the development of Confucianism in China from late fourteenth century to early twentieth century. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2258. The mentality of literati in Ming-Qing transition (3 credits)
(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the milieu of the cataclysmic change of Heaven’s Mandate in mid-seventeenth-century China and literati’s feelings and responses to the change.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2259.  Historical writing and historiography in traditional China (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course explores some important issues of historical writing and historiography in traditional China with reference to the development of historical writing, the organization of historiography institutes, and the influence of emperors on historiography. Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2261.  Buddha and Bodhisattva worship in Chinese Buddhism (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The worship of buddhas and bodhisattvas is a central feature of Mahayana Buddhism, and a pivotal factor in the formation and development of Chinese Buddhism. The course examines the origin of the practice, its transformation in China, and its impact on Chinese religious thought and life. The course aims at providing students with comprehensive knowledge and understanding of a Buddhist practice which has dominated Chinese religious life and shaped the popular image of the Buddhist religion. Assessment: 100% coursework.

Group C: Translation

First Year Courses

CHIN1311.  Introduction to translation (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This is an introduction to the theoretical and technical issues of translation, with guided practice in translating material of common occurrence. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN1312.  Language studies for translation I (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This introductory course considers the distinctive characteristics of Chinese and English and aims at highlighting the mechanics of translation as a process of linguistic transfer. Emphasis will be placed on developing in the students a sensitivity towards the particular manners of behaviour of the two languages being reviewed. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Second and Third Year Courses

All courses listed below, if not otherwise specified, may be taken in either the second or the third year. Students opting for the Major are however required to take all the courses in List 1 in the years indicated, unless the Head of Department approves otherwise,
  Second Year:  CHIN2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316 (totalling 21 credits)
  Third Year:  CHIN2317, 2318, 2319, 2320 (totalling 18 credits),
and their remaining courses from List 2 in either the Second or the Third Year to make up at least 48 credits in two years.
Some of the courses require CHIN2335 or CHIN2336 as a prerequisite. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived by the Head of the Department.

List 1

CHIN2311. Translation criticism I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)

In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator’s competence and the merits of the selected translations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2312. Translation criticism II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)

Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2313. Language studies for translation II (6 credits)

This course considers the differences in grammar, semantics and pragmatics between Chinese and English, paying special attention to problems of translating in these areas.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2314. Translation in practice I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)

This course provides practical training in English-Chinese translation. Materials selected include both the literary and the non-literary. The weekly lectures will be accompanied by written exercises and tutorials.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2315. Translation in practice II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)

This course contains a critical element as well as a number of exercises in translation from Chinese into English. Texts of different stylistic types will be analysed, and the use of translation strategies for rendering such texts will be explored.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2316. Translation theory (3 credits)

This course introduces leading theories in translation studies. Through studying on-going debates in the field, students will acquire a theoretical and methodological knowledge indispensable to the procedure and evaluation of translation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
CHIN2317. Translation criticism III (English-Chinese) (3 credits)

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism I. In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator’s competence and the merits of the selected translations.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2318. Translation criticism IV (Chinese-English) (3 credits)

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism II. Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2319. Language studies for translation III: comparative stylistics (6 credits)

This course investigates the resources that lead to effective writing and serviceable translation. The objective is two-fold: to identify the variety of figures of speech such as metaphor, personification, parallelism and hyperbole commonly used in novels, prose, poetry and lyrics; and to consider the effects of these literary devices on the translation between English and Chinese.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

CHIN2320. Long translation (6 credits)

The Long Translation project is an important part of the Translation degree. Its commencement is as early as the summer vacation between Years Two and Three when students are expected to find and decide on the texts for their translation. Close study of the chosen texts on the part of the students should occur in the vacation. From the beginning of the Third Year to about the end of March of the graduation year, the actual translation will be done by the student under the supervision of a teacher, in each case assigned by the teachers of Translation. The length of the translation should be about twenty pages; the nature of the writing, as literary or practical as the individual student prefers.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

List 2

CHIN2331. Choice of words in translation (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This is a course specially planned for students who aspire to carve out for themselves a career in administration, publishing, advertising and journalism. Assuming no specific prior knowledge of linguistics, this course takes a new semantic approach to the analysis of different types of word meaning in a text. It addresses some key issues of a functional grammar pertaining to translation studies in Hong Kong.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2332. Translation in Hong Kong society (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This is a course designed to provide students with an understanding of the translation of speech in Hong Kong society. It aims to develop students' awareness of the cultural context in which translation occurs and to enable them to apply this knowledge in their translation practice.
The basic aim of this course is to provide students who intend to become professional translators in Hong Kong with an overall view of translation as a communicative activity. The translators’ work demands specialised knowledge of the ways translation functions in specific social contexts. The principal concern of this course is the practical information about the various circumstances in which translation serves its purpose as a communicative activity, either in the Government or in the private sector. This course will be assessed on the basis of a written seminar paper presented orally and participation in discussion.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2333. Culture and translation (3 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course focuses on the cross-cultural dimension of translation. It examines the most complex cultural barriers faced by the translator – such as differences in the expression of emotions (for instance - love, anger, fear), codes of behaviour (for instance intimacy, privacy, politeness), values and world views, notions of gender, aesthetic taste, humour and forms of symbolism and metaphor. These issues arising from translation practice will be discussed in light of current theories on culture and translation from multiple disciplines.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2334. Power of speech in written translation (3 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This is a course designed to teach both Translation and non-Translation students specific communication skills required for social interaction in a cosmopolitan city such as Hong Kong. ‘Good communication behaviour’ exhibited in bilingual texts is studied within the general framework of an Interpersonal Rhetoric model.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2335. Introduction to interpretation (3 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The aim of this course is to introduce to students the different forms of interpreting, i.e., sight translation, consecutive interpreting, and simultaneous interpreting, and to familiarise them with the basic skills and techniques essential for interpreting. Training will be focused on sight translation and consecutive interpreting between English and Chinese.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2336. Interpretation workshop I (3 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This is a continuation of Introduction to Interpretation. Students will be trained in sight translation and consecutive interpreting between English and Chinese on general and more specialised topics. Apart from training in note-taking skills, students will also be introduced to different environments for interpretation and the professional ethics of the interpreter.
Prerequisite: CHIN2335. Introduction to interpretation
CHIN2337.  Journalistic translation (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The primary focus of this course is the linguistic features and stylistic conventions of press material. Texts of various types from the mass media will be examined, and their generic characteristics identified. Students will familiarize themselves in this course with the basic techniques of news reporting and the skills needed to render press material from one language into another.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2338.  Translation of promotional material (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Promotional material usually has a unique appeal that lies in the skilful manipulation of rhetorical devices. In this course their linguistic and stylistic characteristics will be studied, with emphasis on how best to translate the original into Chinese or English. Students will be provided with opportunities to examine the creative use of language and to improve their ability through training and regular practice to deal with different kinds of writing for advertising products and services.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2339.  Translation for administration and business (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the role of translation in Hong Kong’s public administration procedures, and how it is used by Hong Kong and Chinese business concerns in conducting international business. Students will practise translating papers related to negotiation, administration and the law arising from such contexts, and explore suitable translation techniques in the process.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2340.  Film translation workshop (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Film-making today is becoming increasingly international, rendering translation almost indispensable to the industry. Translating films for dubbing and subtitling requires special skills distinct from those outside the field. This course concentrates on such skills, emphasizing audio-visual awareness and cinematic elements such as drama, dialogue, vernacular, and pacing. Critical theories on media and on cultural production and consumption will be introduced. Students learn through group projects, the hands-on translation of feature films, and critiques of film translation.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2341.  Translating writings on art (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
In this course students will have the opportunity to practise translating from Chinese to English and
vice-versa within the field of art history, art appreciation and art criticism. Writings on Chinese and western art, such as those published by museums and art galleries, will be used as study texts, and translation skills and strategies will be discussed to enable students to build up bilingual vocabulary and linguistic expressions for describing Chinese and western works of art in specific historical, social, cultural and aesthetic contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

CHIN2342. Interpretation workshop II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This is a continuation of Interpretation Workshop I. It aims at providing students with training in consecutive interpreting on specialised topics ranging from political speeches and addresses at meetings on a variety of topics to court proceedings. This course will also provide training in the essential skills and techniques for simultaneous interpreting, including shadowing, rephrasing, memory retention, abstraction and the cultivation of split attention.

Prerequisite: CHIN2336. Interpretation Workshop I

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Group D: Dissertation

Third Year Course

CHIN3401. Dissertation (12 credits)

A dissertation will be written on a subject approved by the supervisor and the Department. This course is only open to students majoring in the Department of Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

ASSESSMENT

Coursework assessment will be based on performance in tutorials and seminars, and on the strength of essays and such other exercises as can be assessed continually.

Each course will be examined by a written paper of not more than 2-hour duration except those courses which are assessed by 100% coursework.

Department of Comparative Literature

First-year Courses

CLIT1001. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies I: Film studies (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The course will introduce students to the techniques and practice of film through the study of a historically and culturally varied range of cinematic productions. Both international and local cinema will be studied. The aim of the course is to enable students to read the language of film.
CLIT1002. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies II: Gender studies (6 credits)

Feminism, gender and sexuality, masculinity and femininity – indeed, even what we mean by ‘men’ and ‘women’ – are all areas of contemporary debate and always topical. This course introduces you to the subject of Comparative Literature by introducing the issues, which will remain important throughout your three years of study. We will look at what is meant by ‘gender’ through critical readings of some crucial texts, and we will support examination of these texts by reference to some critical theories.

CLIT1003. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies III: Digital culture (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.) Information technology nowadays has become such an encompassing cultural phenomenon that no one, not even the avowed technophobe, can ignore it. For a university student, competency in computer technology does not guarantee that she/he can comprehend the theoretical implications of the new technology. Against this backdrop, the present course aims at providing students with an up-to-date overview of the technology-imbued society that we live in. Although the course is based upon literary and cultural approaches, it is also designed to be beneficial to students majoring in other disciplines. Advanced knowledge of computer technology is not a prerequisite for this course. Instead, students can take advantage of the workshop sessions to learn or refine skills in web surfing, web-related research, and the design of simple web-sites.

This course meets the University’s IT requirement.

CLIT1004. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies IV: Colonial and postcolonial culture – Hong Kong and beyond (6 credits)

The course explores the importance of the cultural representations of colonizer and colonized in forming the way we imagine the world today. Through film, fiction and other texts, students will study colonial practices, and the responses of the colonized. Hong Kong, China and Chinese people will form an integral part of the course.

CLIT1005. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies V: Disney and global capital (6 credits)

Disney is the name of an American business, and a world-wide phenomenon which is now coming to Hong Kong. Disney’s animated feature films, starting with Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs (1937) and Pinocchio (1940) and Fantasia (1940) through to The Lion King (1994), Pocahontas (1995) and Mulan (1998) have dominated cinema through their spectacle and visual pleasure as well as through the songs and the soundtrack. The trend in the latest Disney films has been to deal with subjects from outside America - Africa, China, or America’s Amerindian population. Disney theme-parks, whether in Los Angeles or Florida, or Paris or Tokyo (and now Hong Kong) raise the question of how much Disney has been responsible for globalization, and for making globalization the same as Americanization.

In this course, we will look at Disney films and cartoon characters as examples of American ideology and of the presentation of the American way of life; we will analyse how the pleasure that they give works; we will look at Walt Disney as the originator of a business corporation and at the politics of global capitalism; we will ask how to read a Disney film, and examine what globalization means in the context of different Disney theme-parks.
CLIT1006.  Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies VI: Cultural studies (6 credits)

This course introduces students to some of the fundamental issues which are raised when we ask what “culture” is and how it forms us and creates our ways of thinking, talking and creating. To study a text or a film, a painting, or a piece of music, is not just to attend to the individual work, but to think about its context, and what permits its existence in that culture. To begin to read a text may mean to read a culture. There are three emphases in this course. The first thinks about the relation of culture to ideology. How do the narratives that we read, the films we see, present us with an unconscious ideology? And why is the study of culture as ideology so important? The second is the plurality of different cultural voices that we are surrounded by: “high” and “low,” “elitist” and “popular.” Is it useful to distinguish these? How can “cultural studies” read both types of cultural products adequately? The third emphasis is on how different cultural forms or expressions contest and perhaps subvert official cultures, and ideological positions.

CLIT1007.  Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies VII: Ways of reading (6 credits)

The course aims to teach students how to approach critically different forms of texts: short stories, poems, films, photographs, fashion statements, architecture, the city and urban spaces, and to show that there are a variety of ways to do these, and a number of techniques that can be learned. The course goes on the assumption that what Nietzsche called ‘slow reading’ is important, that so is ‘close reading’, and critical reading, and what psychoanalysis calls ‘reading otherwise’. Else, as Roland Barthes, says, ‘those who fail to re-read are doomed to read the same text everywhere’. To learn strategies for becoming a good critical reader, and to learn the many ways in which texts may be read: that is what the course aims to inculcate.

Second or Third Year

CLIT2001.  Comparative studies in narrative fiction: reading narrative (6 credits)

“The narratives of the world are numberless” – so Roland Barthes begins a crucial essay which argues that we can study different narratives and find underlying assumptions at work in them. These assumptions tie different stories back to culture and ideology and to history. This course will look at a variety of different narratives, novels, and short stories both to discover what is of value in them, and how they may be best analysed.

CLIT2003.  Modern European drama: drama and the modern subject (6 credits)

The course is one of two that may be taken together or singly. In the first, we read plays by Ibsen, Strindberg and Chekhov, and by Shakespeare, Calderón and Racine, to look at the way in which drama looks at the history of the modern subject.

CLIT2005.  Literary and cultural theory (6 credits)

This course is aimed at introducing some basic concepts of contemporary Western literary and cultural theory. We will examine the postmodern polemics against truth and objectivity, and see how this is related to our reading of literary and cultural texts.
CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course focuses on the construction of meaning in cinema and the development of film language. It first investigates the major structural components of the narrative film text, such as narrative structure, mise-en-scène, the camera eye, editing and sound, then proceeds to introduce the major cinematic movements in film history and discuss some film classics in relation to the topics covered.

CLIT2008. Film culture II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course seeks to investigate critical methodologies for reading film texts with a particular emphasis on psychoanalytic, feminist, and postcolonial theories. The approach will be cross-cultural and inter-disciplinary. Film texts will be examined in relation to questions of gender, sexual difference, sexuality, and subjectivity. The films to be examined may include films from Hollywood and Asian cinemas.

CLIT2014. Feminist cultural studies (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will examine the complex and often contradictory ways women and modern femininity are represented in popular culture. It will introduce you to some of the key concepts in feminist cultural studies and use them to critique cultural productions and practices associated with women such as romance narratives, film melodrama, soap operas, fashion, and shopping.

CLIT2016. The body in culture (6 credits)

This course will explore various theoretical approaches as we attempt to develop discourses to address the notion of ‘the body’. There will be an emphasis on issues of corporeal identity, movement, and performance. We will present and discuss texts from the fields of philosophy, critical theory, psychoanalysis, architecture, literature, dance, theatre, film/media studies, gender studies, anthropology, technology, science, performance art, and cultural studies. Participants will develop their own projects in a medium of their choice (writing, visual art, video, performance, internet, interactive technology/cd-rom, etc.). These projects will not only present and elaborate upon the chosen concepts and topics, but also examine theoretically the medium in which they are presented. Specific foci of discussion will be based on participants’ interests.

CLIT2017. A new introduction to modernism (6 credits)

This course attempts to rethink the concept of modernism by looking at many different forms that it took (literary, filmic, musical and artistic), and interrogating its politics, its relationship to bourgeois culture, its gender-bias, its view of past and traditional and non-traditional texts, and its place in critical theory. In the light of what remains of ‘postmodernism’, it asks how the term ‘modernism’ is now to be read.
CLIT2018.  Critiques of modernity (6 credits)

This course will examine cultural critiques of, and reflections upon, modernity and its consequences in ‘the West’ and the non-West (primarily China) over the past century or so. While the course will be informed by theoretical consideration of capitalist modernity and ‘alternative’ modernities, the central texts discussed will be primary cultural texts that are foregrounded within their specific cultural contexts by the acuity and consciousness of their critique of modernity. Texts will be read as a metacommentary on modernity’s contradictions.

CLIT2021.  Reading the nineteenth-century: revolution, romanticism and realism (6 credits)

This course is one of two looking at the nineteenth-century in Europe and America through a reading of its texts: novels, poetry, painting, music, philosophical speculation, and psychoanalysis. Both courses are complete in themselves, but make most sense taken together. The first part looks at texts from the time of the French Revolution (1789) on to the Great Exhibition of 1851 - the triumph of bourgeois culture and of consumption over revolutionary aspiration.

CLIT2022.  Reading the nineteenth-century: reaction and modernity (6 credits)

This is the second of two courses reading texts from the nineteenth-century. Fastening on the three ‘masters of suspicion’ in the nineteenth-century - Marx, Nietzsche, Freud - it reads the triumph of realism and of bourgeois culture, and examines ways in which this culture was critiqued. Teaching will look at literary texts drawn from European cultures - Russia, France, Germany, Britain, and America.

CLIT2023.  Heterologies: the discourse of the other (6 credits)

‘Heterology’ is ‘the science of what is completely other’. It, and the course, looks at a range of ways in which the ‘other’ appears in literary texts - as the colonial savage, as mad, as mystic, as criminal, as sexually deviant, or in relation to fascism.

CLIT2024.  Reading comedy: Dante and Boccaccio (6 credits)

There are two texts derived from the Italian Renaissance to be used for this course: Dante’s *Comedy*, which divides into three - *Inferno*, *Purgatory* and *Paradise*, and Boccaccio’s *Decameron*. These are crucially important and formative texts, the second a response to the first, which deserve re-reading both in order to confront texts of the past, and in the light of contemporary theoretical approaches from new historicism, from feminism, from work on the body and on sexuality and the city. We will examine the new forms of narrative that emerged with the urban and bourgeois culture of fourteenth-century Florence, with its new attention to the subject as individual and as communal. Above all, we will be considering what is meant by ‘comedy’ and why both Dante and Boccaccio work within its terms.

CLIT2025.  Visual cultures (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

It has often been said that ours is pre-eminently a culture of the visual, a ‘Society of the Spectacle’. This course introduces students to one of the key developments in cultural theory today: a study of how visual cultures are formed, and how they inform the ways we see, feel and think. There is
indeed ‘an optical unconscious’ made up of the criss-crossings of desire, ideology and reproductive
technologies (or Freud, Marx and SONY), which manifests itself from ephemeral fashions to the
permanencies of architecture. What the course will focus on, however, are specific examples of
changes and innovations in visual culture found in art, photography, cinema, architecture, video, and
urban life; and in particular, all the examples of visual material that problematize visuality. We will
also attempt to draw out the implications of such problematic visualities for critical and cultural
theory.

---

**CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)*

This course examines the interactions between contemporary critical and cultural theory and digital
culture. We will discuss theoretical and compositional approaches in the work of international new
media artists (via World Wide Web, CD-ROM, video, exhibition and slide formats as available), and
create new media projects ourselves, in order to expose possible modes of critical interpretation and
creation for these media. Issues of identity construction, gender, corporeal vs. psychic presence,
interactivity, bodily motion and motion capture, community, interface, performativity, and
representation will be discussed.

---

**CLIT2027. Digital culture and new media technologies II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)*

This is a continuation of Digital Culture I.

---

**CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)*

If contemporary cities are becoming more ‘invisible’, it is because the effects they have upon us are
indirect and displaced. Our experience of cities becomes more problematic as cities themselves
become more complex. This course explores the changing cultural space of cities mainly through
major works of fiction and of cinema, though it will include other forms like painting and architecture
as well as theoretical texts. Topics for discussion include: How is urban experience transformed
by colonialism/imperialism, technology, information? What are ‘world cities’ and ‘third world
cities’, cybercities and colonial cities? Is Hong Kong a ‘Chinese city’? How can the city be read as a
cultural text?

---

**CLIT2031. Fashion theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)*

Fashion lies somewhere between ‘art’ and ‘consumption’, and for mysterious reasons (according to
historian Eric Hobsbawn) often anticipates future cultural tendencies better than both. We will
discuss the relation of fashion to art, media, spectacles, and marketing; to questions of identity and
self-fashioning; to images of the body and ideas of femininity and masculinity; to notions of style and
anti-style (e.g. jeans as degree zero fashion); to looking and having ‘the look’. Throughout, the
focus will be on the surprising impact of fashion on culture, particularly contemporary culture.
CLIT2034. Advanced film theory (6 credits)

Adaptations from literature to film provide an extremely fertile ground for a) exploring the different possibilities of the two media involved and b) cross-cultural studies. Why is Kurosawa so obsessed by Shakespeare? Bresson has adapted Dostoevsky, and everybody has had a go at *War and Peace*. Are they successful and why? We will try to answer these questions through a comparative study of the original texts and the films. Students will also be encouraged to adapt their favorite short story or novel into film-scripts as an exercise.

CLIT2035. Writing madness (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Drawing on recent critical theory, the course will use both texts which have been described as mad, including those by Sylvia Plath, Charlotte Gilman, Holderlin, Blake, and Artaud; as well as look at representations of madness, e.g. in the writings of Gogol, Lu Xun, Dostoyevsky, and Henry James, or in films like *Psycho* or *Seven*. It will ask whether it is possible to think of writing a history of madness, without misrepresenting madness as ‘other.’ It will also distinguish between melancholia and manic states, hysteria and schizophrenia, while recognising that these terms themselves, instrumental in the construction of madness, are part of the problem.

CLIT2037. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of the course is twofold: to serve as an introduction to some representative works in contemporary Chinese literature and film, and to analyze the representation of women in contemporary Chinese culture through these works. A key characteristic of contemporary Chinese literature and film is its obsession with gender and sexuality. Since the end of the Mao era and the beginning of the market reforms in the late 70s, “sex” has replaced “class” as one of the most frequently circulated motifs in the mass media and a new trend has thus emerged in contemporary Chinese literature and film with exclusive focus on issues of gender and sexuality. We will discuss this new phenomenon through two groups of writings: patriarchal representation of women and women’s self-representation.

CLIT2042. Reading confessing (6 credits)

The objective of this course is to examine the relationship between literature and confession by examining some important works of literature produced in the West and the East. The nature and significance of the discourse of confession and how it inflects literary textuality is central to the purpose of this course.

CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)

This course studies a number of topics central to colonial/postcolonial studies such as Orientalism and Occidentalism, colonial and postcolonial identities, sexuality and colonial discourse, and gender and imperialism. These issues will be examined from a cross-disciplinary and comparative perspective and the primary sources used include travel narratives, novels, films, advertisements, and tourist brochures.
CLIT2050. **Globalization and culture (6 credits)**

When Michael Jordan becomes the most popular sports figure in Mainland China and South Africa, does this mean that we are all becoming more alike? Or are we splitting apart, as the rise of new nationalisms in Yugoslavia and India would seem to indicate? Why has rap music become globally popular? This course will look at a variety of contemporary phenomena from pop culture to nationalism in terms of the global processes of circulation and transformation that are changing the world we live in. Special attention will be paid to Hong Kong culture and its changing role in Asia and the world.

CLIT2051. **Jane Austen and popular culture (6 credits)**

This course will read Jane Austen’s novels through the visual medium of television series, film adaptations and the internet. It will consider the successful translation of Austen from high to popular and to global cultural form. It will study the ways in which her novels have been re-invented to reflect issues of contemporary importance such as feminism with its critique of marriage and masculinity and its call for more open expression of desire and sexuality. It will historicize this revision by analyzing the status of women, the role of the family and the importance of courtship in Austen’s original novels.

CLIT2052. **Chinese urban culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

With specific reference to major Chinese cities, for example Beijing, Shanghai, Taipei, and Hong Kong, the course is designed to examine how forces of modernization, colonialism and globalization have drastically transformed these cities. It explores problems of urban culture and the changing meaning of ‘Chineseness’ through major works of fiction, cinema, architecture and other relevant cultural texts. Although no prerequisites are required, students are advised to study CLIT2028 ‘The City as Cultural Text’ before taking this course.

CLIT2057. **Carnival versus tragedy: Reading renaissance culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course looks at how we can read the ‘early modern’ period in Europe – from the fifteenth century (the period of planning the ideal city and designing the ideal body, of the development of the printed book and of the colonization of America) to the seventeenth centuries. It uses the twin concepts of carnival and tragedy to look at the theatre, at representations of the body, monstrous and grotesque, and for an examination of state power and resistances to it. Texts include works by Machiavelli, Rabelais, Shakespeare and Racine.

CLIT2058. **Histories of sexuality: Freud and Foucault (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course compares the theoretical approaches of Freud and Foucault to sexuality – a history of repression versus a history of the production of the subject – by looking at a number of literary and cultural texts whose interest for us is how they make problematic and fascinating either theory of the subject.
CLIT2060. Fiction and film in contemporary Chinese societies (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course studies modern Chinese culture as it is expressed and understood in contemporary stories and films. It aims to explore relationships between narrative arts and society. It also examines literature and film in relation to each other, as well as literary and aesthetic theories, themes, genres and expressive modes.

CLIT2061. Narratives of the past in contemporary culture (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Organized around different kinds of narratives of the past in contemporary culture, this course raises basic questions about historical representation: What is ‘history’? How is it differentiated from ‘memory’ and ‘nostalgia’? In what way is a spatial critique of culture pertinent to the study of historical representation? With reference to a range of texts such as literature, film, museum narratives, architecture and music from different cultures, the course explores the politics and poetics of historical representation in contemporary societies. Topics for discussion may include: tensions between official history and personal memory, different styles and forms of imagining and narrating history, and the role of the media and other cultural means such as oral narratives in the mediation of ‘history’.

CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: Popular culture (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course explores the various aspects of popular culture in Hong Kong from the perspective of Cultural Studies. Major media and other popular forms of expression to be discussed include: television, radio, newspapers and popular magazines, popular music, popular literature, cartoons, youth, and fan culture. Theories of Cultural Studies will be introduced and discussed in relation to critical readings of such texts in order to expand the students’ horizons in understanding and interpreting Hong Kong popular culture.

CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: Representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course traces the formation of identities in Hong Kong history and analyzes different perspectives in understanding these identities. It focuses on various forms of colonization and their influences on the construction of cultural artifacts and relationships. Various theoretical approaches and debates on postcolonialism, capitalism, and urban culture will be adopted to examine selected texts of literature and film.

CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

We are constantly bombarded with images by the media day and night. MTV is equally popular in the developed as well as in the developing countries. The old distinction between high culture and
popular culture is breaking down. Literary and cinematic genres are being constantly mixed, resulting in composite and hybrid works. More and more Hong Kong Chinese live in Toronto, Melbourne, London and San Francisco while more and more Filipinos come to Hong Kong as housemaids. The postmodern world is full of fascinating phenomena. In this course we plan to study postmodernism by focusing on literature, cinema, art, and other cultural productions. The aim of the course is not to define postmodernism but rather to evoke and question it as we seek to make sense of the radical changes taking place in ideas and experiences related to technology, entertainment, art, everyday life and the problems of representation.

CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)

This course ‘replaces’ Shakespeare not by removing his work from the agenda, but by reconsidering his place in contemporary criticism and popular cultural practice. Some of the topics the course may deal with are: feminist, psychoanalytic and literary historicist re-readings of Shakespeare’s texts; comparisons of how international film directors, with their differing multi-cultural perspectives, have handled the problems of filming Shakespeare; and the way that Shakespeare has been adapted and re-imagined by innovative and influential modern artists.

CLIT2069. The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)

Using cross-cultural materials taken from a wide range of media such as films, fiction, magazines, paintings, TV and advertising, this course engages in a multidisciplinary study of the formation of different types of masculinities in the modern world.

CLIT2070. Heidegger and everydayness (6 credits)

As one of the most important Western thinkers of the 20th century, Heidegger addresses fundamental questions of human existence in ways that speak directly to our everyday experiences. For instance, why do we sometimes feel that life is meaningless, and how do we try to avoid this feeling? This course will introduce you to some of Heidegger’s core ideas through a study of his masterpiece *Being and Time*, which has had a profound impact not only on philosophy but also on literary theory. Students will learn both about Heidegger and the intellectual traditions he challenged.

CLIT2072. Deconstruction (6 credits)

This course examines the method of deconstruction around such issues as truth, power, subjectivity, modernity, postmodernity, and so on. Readings include texts by Derrida himself and by some other thinkers (e.g. Nietzsche, J. L. Austin, Habermas).

CLIT2073. Deleuze on cinema (6 credits)

Though not a film-maker or theorist, Deleuze’s writings on cinema (which combine film theory and analyses, philosophy and cultural criticism) may prove to be as seminal as Eisenstein’s or Bazin’s. The course will introduce students to what is innovative about Deleuze’s two books on cinema. This includes his radical manner of analysing films: instead of focusing on ‘film language’, he focuses on the kind of cinematic image each film constructs. Thus the books offer at one level a classification of different types of cinematic images. However, underlying the analyses is also a very provocative thesis about the ‘history’ of cinema, which Deleuze argues has undergone a crucial mutation: from different forms of ‘the movement-image’ pioneered by the classic cinema, to the much more elusive forms of ‘the time-image’ which characterize the contemporary cinema - with Hitchcock as the
fulcrum around which the history of cinema turns. Finally, and most significantly, Deleuze relates both the ‘movement-image’ and the ‘time-image’ to developments in thought and culture; and this enables him to formulate, through the analyses of cinema, ideas like ‘any-space-whatever’, ‘the crystals of time’, ‘the powers of the false’, and ‘the thought of the outside’ - which take us way beyond the limits of film criticism. The great directors, Deleuze says, have to be compared to thinkers. The implication is that understanding cinema is understanding modern thought itself - its crises, ruptures and possibilities.

CLIT2074. Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)

This course offers (a) a survey of contemporary Chinese film, especially the most recent productions of mainstream cinema, and (b) a critical examination of post-Mao ideology in the context of market reforms. Topics include the following. (1) The meaning of wealth: We will look at how wealth is represented in post-Mao film, and whether this representation coheres with the Party's political program and serves the purpose of interpellating the general public. (2) The identity of the post-Mao hero. In post-Mao China, there is no longer any cinematic representation of the working class as hero and thus no more ideological interpellation of the working class as the central constituent of the Party. The entrepreneur has replaced the proletarian as the new hero of the reform era. (3) The re-sexualization of the population. The practice of Marxism in China after 1949 led to the disavowal of gender and sexuality as a suitable object of cultural representation. The population was de-sexualized, in the sense that no cultural ‘signifiers’ were available in the Maoist discourse to inscribe men and women as sexual beings. In post-Mao China, ‘sex’ has come back with a vengeance through the re-discovery of patriarchal sexual conventions, and ‘woman’ of a particular class has become the signifier of sexual difference.

The course will pay special attention to film language. Films will be treated as a collection of cinematic signifiers that contribute to the meaning of the texts rather than serving as transparent vehicles for plots.

CLIT2075. Reading modern poetry (6 credits)

This course will do two things: It will study some fine examples of poetry, asking the following questions: what is poetry? How does it work? Why should we read it, and how? Where should we start? What is the good of poetry? Its time-span is the moment when Europe and America defined themselves as modern, as part of the modern world. So, it will begin with two examples of Romanticism, will continue with the urban poetry of Paris and the modernism it produced; it will look at three very different examples of American poetry, some of it obsessed with the question of how this poetry should relate to anything traditional and European; it will conclude with the Europe of the political crisis of two world wars, after which, as Adorno said - ‘Auschwitz made lyric poetry impossible.’ Adorno is not necessarily to be agreed with, and much poetry would question his formulation, but his voice is important in a debate over the functions of poetry, and where it comes from.

There will be then, a mixture of English, French, American, German and Russian poetry: all of it will be looked at in English.

CLIT2076. Fashioning femininities (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces students to the writings of some major contemporary feminists and their critical analysis of the construction of the images and roles of women. Cross-cultural materials taken from both print and non-print media will be used to illustrate feminist issues.
CLIT2078. Childhood, feminine roles and cultural myths (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will begin with ‘liminal’ works which chart a traumatic rite of passage for women from childhood to adulthood or suggest that there might be a dynamic interplay between the two states. It will focus, in particular, on texts in which women directly challenge prevailing social myths of human development, family organization, and sexual relations. It will be especially interested in texts which proceed to deconstruct the social codes governing women, their relationships, and their scope for defining and expressing themselves.

CLIT2079. Traumatic events (6 credits)

This course will observe the workings of trauma (the enactment and working-through of collective and individual symptoms of trauma), memory, and witnessing in various modes of everyday life. We will examine notions of catastrophe, disaster, accident, and violence, and explore the possibilities and impossibilities of bearing witness in many forms of cultural production. We will examine the representation of traumatic events in fiction, poetry, architecture, critical theory, visual art, philosophy, science, cartoons, film, video, television reportage, newspaper documentation, and performance, on the internet and World Wide Web, and in the public and domestic spaces of Hong Kong.

CLIT2080. Walter Benjamin as writer and cultural critic (6 credits)

The course is an introduction to the seminal work of Walter Benjamin. His essays - on literature, translation, photography and film, culture and politics, the experience of cities - develop a theory of reading and a style of argument that are indispensable to the understanding of contemporary cultural debates.

CLIT2081. Becoming post-human: animal bodies and virtual bodies (6 credits)

We study ‘Humanities’, but is there a relationship between humanist values and the global crises currently being experienced in environmental damage? What differences have cinema and even more, digital technologies made to perceptions of space, time, embodiment and human presence? That our cinematic and electronic lives have transformed us as subjects is apparent, but how they have altered consciousness and identity is for discussion. These changes have redefined the human, and ‘nature’ and ‘human nature’ and the course assumes a current overthrowing of the human within critical theory and within digitalization, and the appearance of the ‘non-species’ (Derrida). It looks at ‘ecocriticism’ and explores the posthuman body as this has come into question in relation to new technologies.

CLIT2082. Literature and ‘queer’ theory (6 credits)

‘Queer theory’ has been developed over the past fifteen years in order to deal with the expanding subject of lesbian and gay writings and film, and the increasing representation of lesbian and gay writings and film, and the increasing representation of homosexuality within modern cultures. This course will discuss a number of the texts of ‘queer theory’ by Foucault, Judith Butler and Eve Sedgwick, and will study a variety of texts, contemporary and historical, which in literal of in allegorical terms have represented male and female homosexuality, whether directly or indirectly. It will study how these changes of representation, and new critical theories have repositioned the subject of gender studies.
HIST2082. Europe and its other (6 credits)

This course is an interdisciplinary exploration of European perception and understanding of non-European peoples and cultures from the 18th – 20th centuries. The objective of the course is to show how Western representations of non-Europeans were shaped by the various political debates, scientific theories and colonial ideology that dominated European societies of the time. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze a wide range of primary materials that include visual documents, travel narratives, fiction, scientific texts, philosophical treatises, and documentaries.

HIST2083. Gender, sexuality and empire (6 credits)

This course investigates the ways in which concepts of gender and sexuality have been used in British and French imperial discourse during the 19th and 20th centuries to manage their relationships with the colonized peoples and to showcase the superiority of European civilization. Part one of the course examines how the male colonial identities were constructed through the sexualization of the colonized subjects while the second half of the course focuses on the multiple roles of European women in the colonies. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze different types of historical narratives ranging from archival documents, personal memoirs and correspondence, travel accounts to autobiographical texts.

HIST2084. Sexing the spirit: the history of the modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)

Surveys of mainstream feminism have generally omitted the subject of faith. They have taken as a given wholesale feminist hostility to Christianity and have concluded that religion has little importance in the life of modern women. Recent global events are a reminder however that religion remains a passionate if volatile force in contemporary culture and politics. This course will consider a history that has been overlooked – the critical engagement of modern feminism with Christianity. The course will begin with two mid-twentieth century events that have proved to be crucial catalysts in the active feminist response to Christian religion. The first was the ordination of Florence Li Tim Oi as the first Anglican woman priest in Hong Kong in 1944. The second was Simone de Beauvoir’s publication of the *The Second Sex* in 1949. Li’s courageous war-time decision to pioneer female entrance into the all-male clerical establishment constitutes a reformist engagement with Christianity, while de Beauvoir’s rejection of Christianity as a patriarchal institution oppressive to women reflects a more radical and uncompromising stance. Their two positions can be read as representational of the compatibility/incompatibility, reform/revolutionist debate that feminists have had with Christianity since the rise of second wave feminism in the 1960s.

HIST2085. The history of modern sexual identity and discourse (6 credits)

This course will focus on two ‘new sciences’ arising in the late nineteenth century that have shaped the modern understanding of sexual behaviour – sexology and psychoanalysis. It will look at some of the key thinkers who pioneered sexology – such as Havelock Ellis, Edmund Carpenter, Richard von Krafft-Ebing, and Maria Stopes – alongside the acknowledged founder of psychoanalysis Sigmund Freud. It will investigate primary sources in sexual science that have subject to censorship and not generally unavailable, until recently, for comparative study with Freudian discourse. Though the texts of sexology and psychoanalysis often start from different premises, all have been instrumental in the development of modern sexual language, assumptions and practices. It will contextualize their collective thinking by considering the impact of the emergent women’s movement, of Darwin’s evolutionary theory, of urban culture, and of secular modernity. It will study the historiographical
debate (particularly among gay and feminist theorists) as to whether these early investigators of sexology and psychoanalysis formulated progressive or repressive, revolutionary or conservative definitions of sexuality. It will explore the far-reaching consequences that these thinkers have had on attitudes to the body and people in the form of reproductive control, eugenics, race, homosexuality, the ‘woman question,’ and the politics of sexual identity.

Department of English

First Year

ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies (9 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces students to the study of English writing. Students will be introduced to the basic elements of literary analysis and theory in English, and to intellectual issues relevant to the study of the language and its culture. No previous experience of literary studies or linguistics is assumed, but at the end of this introductory course students will have a grasp of the basic concepts and skills needed to make advanced studies in English interesting and enjoyable. The course will also offer guidance and practice in reading, discussion, group work, writing and basic research, including the use of the library and the internet.

First Year Examinations

ENGL1009 will be examined by a two-hour written paper.

First Year Coursework Assessment

Coursework assessment marks for ENGL1009 are based on tutorial assignments and class performance. The final grade is based on the student’s performance in the written examination (50%) and in coursework (50%).

Second and Third Year

Second- and Third-Year Examinations

Modes of assessment vary from course to course. Please check the course description for details of how each course is assessed.

If staffing arrangements permit, the following second- and third-year courses will be offered:

ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)

This course will provide an introduction to the study of ‘sociolinguistics’, which deals with the relationship between language and society. Topics will vary, but may include the following: multilingualism, language varieties, language planning, language change, English in contact with other languages.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.
ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)

This is a course about language origins and language change. It investigates the social, political and linguistic reasons that English has developed into the global superpower language of today, and introduces basic tools and methodologies for studying language change in English. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2004. English syntax (6 credits)

This course introduces the structure of English by investigating approaches to grammar, models of grammatical analysis, and the grammar of contemporary English. It is interested in the relationship between morphology and syntax, and grammar and linguistics. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)

This course uses linguistic techniques to analyse literary texts by examining both the devices that literary authors employ and the literary effects they create in different styles and genres. It employs methods of structural linguistic analysis (looking at the syntax and phonology of texts) as well as socio-historical and pragmatic methods. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)

In the late 20th century, developments in critical thought had a major impact on literature and criticism. Relations between literary production and language, politics and history were radically re-examined by and through what has become known as ‘theory’. As a body of thought, theory includes such diverse and conflicting schools and movements as Marxism, poststructuralism, feminism and gender theory, new historicism, postcolonialism and postmodernity. As well as exploring the institution of theory in the academy, students will put theory into practice in readings of selected literary texts. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)

This course will explore questions of identity and difference as expressed in women’s writing. It will provide a general introduction to feminist literary theory and the on-going range of feminist interventions in literary and cultural studies. Assessment will be by 100% written coursework.
ENGL2027.  Text and discourse in contemporary English (6 credits)
This course will examine how writers exploit the resources of English for creative and communicational purposes in contemporary writing in different genres. Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

ENGL2030.  World Englishes (6 credits)
This course will survey the English language throughout the world, with reference to the use of English in Britain, Asia, and Hong Kong. This course will focus particularly on the development of ‘new Englishes’ in Asia and Hong Kong. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2031.  The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)
This course introduces the study of meaning in the English language. We will examine semantic meanings – meanings encoded in the language system itself – and also pragmatic meanings – meanings inferred from the communicative context of language use. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2033.  English novel III (6 credits)
A study of narrative fiction, and of its developments in the twentieth century. Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

ENGL2035.  Reading poetry (6 credits)
An advanced reading course for students interested in specializing in poetry. Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

ENGL2036.  Advanced literary linguistics (6 credits)
This course extends the linguistic analysis of literary texts begun in ENGL2007. Literary linguistics. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2037.  Science fiction (6 credits)
This is a survey of the genre of science fiction from late 19th century literature by H.G. Wells through to recent movies such as Blade Runner and The Matrix. As well as formal and historical study of the SF genre, the course will be concerned with fictional presentations of scientific possibility and the moral and political strategies that underlie representations of utopia and dystopia. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.
ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)

This course examines the relationship between cultural attitudes and language, how gender socialization is reflected in the structure and use of language, and the effectiveness of political and social forces in “legislated” linguistic change. Stereotypes and biases about the sexes, standard and vernacular norms will also be examined in the course. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)

This is a survey of European travel writing as a literary genre from the medieval period to the present day. The writings of travelers and explorers such as Marco Polo, Christopher Columbus and James Cook are examined, as well as those of modern travel writers such as Freya Stark, Graham Greene, D.H. Lawrence, Paul Theroux and Jan Morris. European travel writing is explored formally and thematically with the aim of introducing students to its many strategies and subtexts, and especially its historical role in articulating ‘otherness’ for the European imagination. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2046. English words (6 credits)

This course explores the structure, meaning, history, and usage of English words from a linguistic point of view. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)

This course will provide an introduction to the analysis of English discourse from a linguistic perspective. Students will learn rhetorical methodologies and examine their effects on readers and listeners. Units include: spoken and written English discourse, global organization and cohesion, discourse markers, information structure, narrative, and non-verbal structures and strategies. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)

This course looks at specialized sub-languages used by different social groups. For example, drug addicts, criminals, butchers, and dog-breeders all have their own specific languages or jargons. The various reasons that have been advanced for the formation of these languages are discussed, and their role in the wider language culture of different societies is examined. The course also looks at the history of the treatment of specialized sub-languages by official agencies, lexicographers and linguists. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2049. The history of English: sociolinguistic perspectives (6 credits)

This course will have a specific focus on the history of the English language from a sociolinguistic perspective. The course will discuss issues related to language contact, standardisation, variation, and varieties of English. Particular reference will be made to the role of attitudes and ideologies in the development of the language. Assessment will be by 100% coursework assessment.
ENGL2050. English corpus linguistics (6 credits)

Corpus linguistics is a rapidly-developing methodology in the study of language. It exploits the power of modern computer technology to manipulate and analyse large collections of naturally-occurring language (“corpora”). This course will introduce students to the use of computers and computerized corpora as tools for exploring the English language. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)

This course looks at different notions of identity and the origins of modern understandings of ethnicity. It focusses on the contribution made by ideas about language to theories of group identity, including nationalism, and the tensions between linguistic, racial, religious and cultural notions of identity. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2055. American Gothic: Haunted Homes (6 credits)

In this course we will examine the gothic as an important genre in American literature and trace its tradition across two centuries. As a response to dominant ideas and conventions that shaped American literature, the gothic offers us a challenging perspective on the mainstream as well as on what it excludes. Beginning with some classic examples of the genre, we will seek to identify the elements and the rhetoric of the gothic text in order to appreciate the specific use that later writers have made of the gothic form. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2057. Text and image (6 credits)

This interdisciplinary course explores relations between literature and various forms of image-based representation. It begins with 'painterly' descriptions in novels and poetry, and common strands in art and literary criticism, and proceeds to discussion of relations between film and literature, such as the presence of cinematographic form in modern literature. In the concluding module, we consider the shift in emphasis from text-based to image-based culture and its impact on postmodern society. Course material consists of critical essays, and examples from literature, the pictorial arts and the moving image. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2058. Narrative prose: a linguistic investigation (6 credits)

This course examines the linguistic techniques by which narrative writing in English works. With a focus on literary texts, the course will consider topics such as co-reference and cohesion, syntactic style and patterning, place and time deixis, the handling of conversation, modality and point of view, and more generally, the linguistics of ‘realism’, and the linguistic basis of irony. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2059. American drama and American film (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will introduce American drama and American film: developing stories of America in performance. We will emphasize performance, as well as analysis: casting, acting, directing, staging, special effects, and audience. As centers of industry, education, and culture moved across the country, form and innovation shifted accordingly. Looking at competing histories and narrative strategies, we will see how American plays and American films participate separately and together in remaking American myths and literary patterns, while assimilating and rejecting inherited models. Considerations of American English, silence, the loner’s staged resistances, and audience participation will be included. We will read plays such as: Eugene O’Neill’s *The Hairy Ape*, Tennessee Williams’s *The Glass Menagerie*, Arthur Miller’s *All My Sons*, Sam Shepard’s *True West*, and Ishmael Reed’s *Hubba City*. We will see films such as *Casablanca, High Noon, The Way We Were, Hair*, and *Boyz N the Hood*.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2061. British and American literary culture (6 credits)**

This course will focus on representative American or British literary and cultural texts. After attending lectures and workshops in the department, students will have an opportunity to travel to relevant places in the United States or Britain, and will be given related background tuition or lectures at a North American University or a British university. Students will be required to present portfolios including essays, presentations, and field-trip reports to the department. This course will only be offered to students majoring in English.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2062. The history of Western linguistics (6 credits)**

This course will trace the history of ideas about language and its relationship to the mind and the world, from ancient to modern times.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2063. Advanced English phonetics and phonology (6 credits)**

This course will provide further instruction in the theoretical underpinnings and practical applications of phonetics to the study of English and general linguistics. Topics may include the following: the history of phonetics, problems of phonological analysis, current trends in phonetics, systems of transcription, and advanced transcription exercises.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)**

This course will introduce students to a number of questions about linguistic meaning and examine various definitions of metaphor. Among the questions considered are: What role does metaphor play in human language? In what way (if at all) do languages create or embody particular culturally-specific world-views?

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)**

This course studies linguistics as a branch of what Edward Said has termed ‘Orientalism’, i.e. western models of Asian language, literature, culture and society created within European colonialism. It looks at the ways western linguists of the 19th and 20th century have ‘imagined’ or categorized Asian
languages, relating those categories to debates within western linguistics.
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2067. American English (6 credits)

This course addresses the problems (theoretical and practical) inherent in defining a variety of English as ‘American’. Issues treated include the history of American English; dialectology; sociolinguistics; Black English; and the politics of American English. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2069. Form and meaning (6 credits)

An investigation into the relationship between English structure and meaning (semantics and pragmatics), considering how meanings are encoded and inferred. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2070. Advanced topics in sociolinguistics (6 credits)

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of language and society. The course requires the student to participate in sociolinguistic fieldwork and to complete a written project on an approved topic. Students will be required to work independently. There will be no formal lectures and no final written examination; students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance. One or more short field trips may be organized to places of sociolinguistic interest. Assessment will be by written project incorporating the results of original fieldwork.

ENGL2074. Postcolonial readings (6 credits)

This course examines important works of literature in English from perspectives opened up by recent debates on ‘nation’, ‘narration’, and ‘hybridity’. Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)

An examination of English representations and interpretations of China in a selection of writings from the 18th century to the early 20th century. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)

The course studies the Romantic era, and traces its history through a selection of its main texts. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2077. Varieties of English (6 credits)

This course will survey English accents, dialects and other ‘varieties’ of English, with reference to the description and analysis of sociolinguistic variation in English. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.
ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)

This course examines developments in the novel by studying a representative sample of recently published fiction in English. Innovations in narrative technique, such as metafiction and postmodern poetics, will be one strand of enquiry. Thematic strands will depend on the novels selected for study but are likely to include, gender, representation, globalism, postmodernism, race and ethnicity, and identity.
Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)

This course will explore some of the themes and form of Shakespeare’s drama, and will consider how his work has been interpreted in modern times.
Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)

This course will explore the often difficult relationship between women and what has been traditionally known as the ‘feminine sphere’. Women have commonly been associated with the feminine sphere of love, marriage and family and this course will consider how modernity and feminism have challenged and disrupted this assumption.
Assessment will be by 100% written coursework.

ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)

This course introduces students to a selection of major texts in literary criticism from the early 19th century to the 1960s. It examines principal critical concepts and methodological principles formulated in these texts and traces the developments of critical thought within this period.
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2084. Modernism and short fiction (6 credits)

This course studies the re-invention of traditional forms of writing in the modernist revolution that ushered in the twentieth century in Europe. Concentrating on short fiction, it investigates how modernist writers found ways to ‘make it new’.
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)

This is a course about rhetoric, in which students will explore ways in which language can be used to convey, reinforce or change ideas. The objective is to help students to understand, analyse, and develop the arts of discourse in English, and the critical skills on which they depend.
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will be an introduction to American literature primarily through fictional and non-fictional accounts of exemplary lives. Our focus will be on how successive generations of immigrants and settlers have constructed and transformed a vision of “America” as process and promise. The course aims to introduce students to the diversity of writing that constitutes American literature, to guide them in the development of critical reading and writing skills and to provide them with opportunities to build, present and respond to arguments about the texts and topics under discussion. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2090. The moving production of America: reading recent films (6 credits)

In this course we will look at recent American movies and examine the ways in which they generate visions of American reality. Our inquiries will be guided by three focuses: 1) looking at movies, we will ask where they locate American life and how they represent it; 2) looking through movies, we will ask how they feel the pulse of an American public, what assumptions they make about their audience and how they seek to move it; 3) looking into movies, we will try to understand how they review and reconfigure the world of American movies itself. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2091. Comedy and Asian American drama (6 credits)

In this course we will look at Asian-American drama in two ways: through humor and an abbreviated history of drama in America. Topics to be addressed include Asian-American humor, oral and written developments of “character” in America, American tall tales, questions of youth and tradition, American story-telling on stage. The course involves students in several ways: as readers, as writers, as voluntary participants in short stage pieces, as collectors of data on humor in popular and literary settings. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2092. Postcolonial English (6 credits)

For many creative writers - writers of poetry, fiction, drama - from outside the Anglo-American world, English has a complex history and often an uneasy relationship, with native languages. The decision, or the choice, to write and publish in English, is an issue they have reflected upon and debated, nationally and internationally, with other writers. Such reflections and debates constitute one of the dynamic contours of “Global English” as a discourse. Critical questions often raised in the debate concern the English language as the bearer of cultures. They include the changing roles of English as a colonial or postcolonial language, as the language of the unitary or pluralistic nations, as a dominant or minority language, as the language of ‘English literature’ or ‘Literature in English’. In this course, students will be introduced to these questions through discussions of essays by writers who have considerable practical experience using English as the language of creativity, and who are active contributors to debates about English in their own locations. Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

ENGL2093. Literary islands: English poetry and prose from the South Pacific and the Caribbean (6 credits)

In this course we will read and discuss literary texts mainly poems and short stories from two cultural regions that received the English language as colonial cargo between the 17th and 19th centuries. Looking at the different histories of the insular cultures of the South Pacific and the Caribbean, we will consider how these histories have shaped the emergence of Anglphone literatures, and how these literatures in turn challenge our expectations of English literature. We will pay special attention to
the forms of communication these texts represent and establish as they construct a sense of place, and parallels will perhaps be drawn to the case of Hong Kong. Topics: history and politics of English in the South Pacific and the Caribbean, the emergence of English-language literatures and the development of indigenous traditions, the relationship between writing and place, distance and insularity, the relationship between literature and vernacular culture (conversation, song, storytelling, oratory)
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2094. Cultural approaches to second language varieties of English (6 credits)

In this course, we will look at second language varieties of English and what they can tell us about the cultural background of their speakers. After an introduction to the relation of language and culture in general (*Linguistic Relativity Principle*), and some modern adaptations of this principle with respect to the role of English in the world, the students will be acquainted with specific methodologies from cognitive linguistics/cognitive anthropology and computer corpus analysis, which allow them to systematically analyze language from a cultural perspective. The students are required to conduct independent research, utilizing these methods of investigation. Some prior knowledge about varieties of English (World Englishes) is of help, but is no requirement. Due to the restricted number of workstations in the computer lab, not more than 40 students can be admitted to this class.
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2095. The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)

Interpretations of the Orient in modern western writings, from the colonial to the postcolonial period.
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2096. Creative writing (12 credits)

(*This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*)

In this year-long seminar, students will study the craft of writing. As developing writers, they will find their attention directed toward elements of design in language. Practice will be offered in training the eye and ear for recognizing, developing, and editing elements of voice. In the first semester, stories and poems will be the focus. The second term will introduce the writing of plays, along with editorial work on the journal *Yuan Yang*. Continuous practice is emphasized, as is reading.
Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2097. Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)

(*This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*)

In this course, students will read selections of fiction, poetry, essays, and journalism from earlier moments in the twentieth century to post-1997. Questions of modernity, urbanization and the urban subject, and cross-cultural identities will be discussed from perspectives opened up by postcolonial theories, and with reference to historical change both locally and in Hong Kong’s geopolitical situation in the last fifty years.
Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.
ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)

This interdisciplinary course explores the relationship between language and identity with a special focus on Asian Americans and linguistic issues relevant to Asian Americans. With particular attention to the linguistic practices of Asian Americans, we will examine such questions as: What attitudes are associated with being bilingual? Do Asian Americans speak with an accent? Does accent determine whether Asian Americans are perceived of as ‘white’? Do any Asian Americans speak ‘black’? We will also explore the position of Asian Americans in social, political, and educational discourses in order to understand how an ‘Asian American’ identity can be constructed through language practices. Although the course focuses on Asian American identities and experiences, students will be encouraged to discuss issues of social identity and language in general. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2100. Language and social interaction (6 credits)

This course provides an introduction to the analysis of social interaction (in English) and explores the relationships between macro- and micro-level approaches to the study of language and social interaction. We will examine how language both reflects and contributes to the organization of social order by close analyses of naturally occurring interactions. Students will learn the fundamentals of data collection and transcription, explore ways of interpreting talk as a form of social action, and conduct original research on the analysis of data that they will collect for the course. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2101. Culture and society (6 credits)

What is culture? What is Cultural Studies? Why should we consider cultural formations in literary studies? Focusing on the cultural critic Raymond Williams (1921 – 1988), this course introduces students to British Cultural Studies and discusses the importance of Cultural Studies in the changing landscape of literary studies. More specifically, we will discuss the historical transformation of literary studies from a text-based practice into a broad critical engagement with human experience and examine the critical energies within literary studies that have brought about such a transformation. Students in this course will read a selection of seminal writings by Williams with close reference to the literary examples he cites from prose fiction, poetry and drama. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2102. Theories of beauty (6 credits)

The idea and experience of the beautiful are inseparable from literary art. This course provides an introduction to literary aesthetics. Focusing on British tradition of aesthetics, we will examine the disciplinary establishment of aesthetics as a historical formation in relation to literary, cultural, and intellectual modernity and discuss developments of major aesthetic concepts in history. There will be weekly lectures and workshops, in which we will read closely major aesthetic texts and discuss important debates in aesthetics with reference to our studies of literature and our everyday experience of the beautiful. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ENGL2103. Language and new media (6 credits)

Language is strongly influenced by the medium through which it is presented. When the medium itself is in wide use, norms emerge which determine not only the form that language can take, but also the pragmatic effects of any language use that either exploits or deviates from these norms. The
nature of public language—that is, language generated by or for the public at large through various media—in turn influences public discourse (i.e., what is being talked about large-scale, and how it is talked about). When the nature of the medium is expressly exploited linguistically, then this change can achieve overwhelming and widespread effects. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

**ENGL3032. Advanced topics in English studies (12 credits) (for students in their third year of study)**

This is an advanced tutorial course which allows the student to follow an in-depth programme of research under the guidance of a member of staff. There are no lectures, and the course aims to encourage the student to pursue independent research. Students should choose a topic which falls within the broad area of the English Department's curriculum. This should be done in consultation with a member of staff. The student and staff member should agree a programme of study, and the student can opt either to produce a single extended piece of work (a dissertation) or four essays on related topics. The student should have regular meetings with the tutor. Admission to this course is conditional on good examination performance, and the subject matter and scope of the course requires the approval of the department.

**Special Topics**

The following or other special topics will be offered from time to time:

**ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)**

This course presents a survey of Asian American literature through literary texts from Asian American communities, including Japanese, Chinese, Korean, Filipino, and Southeast Asian Americans. We will touch on major themes explored in these texts, such as concepts of dislocation and relocation as well as finding and/or inventing a usable past. The readings span a range of genres and historical periods. The course will attempt to contextualize these texts both historically and culturally. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

**European Studies Programme**

**First Year Courses**

**EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.) This first year course serves as an introduction to European Studies. It is a core requirement for students wishing to major in European Studies, but it is also suitable for anyone seeking a broad understanding of European society and culture. The principal focus of the course is the development of the “idea of Europe” in the 20th century, with some attention also given to earlier periods. Emphasis is placed on the states making up the European Union; eastern Europe and Russia are included where relevant. The main theme of the course revolves around heterogeneity and homogeneity in Europe and the approach is multidisciplinary, embracing politics, economics, history, culture, and religion. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination
Second and Third Year Courses

EUST2010. European identity (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their second year, will introduce
students to the linkages between modern Europe, its historical foundations and its various national
identities. Issues of identity will include history, politics, society and culture in the modern and
contemporary periods. Selected highlights and case studies of European countries will be treated in
the lectures, tutorials, and student projects.
Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination

EUST2020. European Studies in Europe (6 credits)

This summer course, conducted during up to four weeks in Europe, is offered to European Studies
majors between their second and third years of study. It consists of guided visits to key sites relevant
to European politics, economics, and culture in at least two countries, in combination with lectures in
English on specific topics related to current European affairs and the countries visited. This will
give students the opportunity to convert the theoretical knowledge gained from their core courses into
direct experience within the European context.
Assessment: 100% coursework

EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)

(This course is offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is an introduction to the modern imagination and changing aesthetic sensibility in the late
nineteenth and early twentieth centuries in Europe. It emphasizes some of the major stylistic
innovations and intellectual currents that have transformed the way in which Europeans (and now
increasingly the world at large) perceive and shape the world around them. The course combines
examples from literature (including drama), visual art and film. We will explore how the styles,
currents and works we are studying have emerged as creative responses to the great upheavals that
have taken place in European society with the rise of modernity.
Assessment: 100% coursework

EUST3003. European Studies dissertation (12 credits)

Students in this course will be expected to submit a written dissertation based on research into an
aspect of European politics, history, culture, or economics. The dissertation must be supervised by a
teacher, either in European Studies or in another department of the university. Students enrolled in
this course may not enroll in EUST3004.
Assessment: 100% coursework

EUST3004. European Studies research project (6 credits)

Students in this course pursue independent research and produce a research paper under the
supervision of a teacher, either in European Studies or in another department of the university.
Students enrolled in this course may not enroll in EUST3003.
Assessment: 100% coursework
EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their third year, will further familiarise students with the major international economic and political institutions in Europe such as the European Union and NATO. The structures will be explained along with the process by which decision making and change can be introduced. Included in the syllabus will be an examination of Europe in the international setting. Taught within a seminar type framework, students will be encouraged to select, in consultation with a staff member, subject areas within the area of focus for deeper examination.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

BUSI0090. The European business environment (6 credits)

This course is intended for those who wish to study the evolution of the European Business environment and the processes by which it operates. It investigates the broader political, cultural, economic, legal and philosophical basis of the business milieu mostly in western Europe but with reference, when appropriate, to the non-European Union eastern European states. It includes the typologies of businesses as conducted in selected states where the free market operates, systems with the remnants of state control and regional and global influences. Teaching will be based on lectures, case studies and simulations with visiting lectures from various consulates to enrich content.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination

Department of Fine Arts

First Year

FINE1001. Introduction to western art history (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will introduce students to the art of Europe from the periods of ancient Greek and Roman civilization to the art of the twentieth century. Major developments in painting and sculpture will be studied, with the aim of giving students an understanding of the main characteristics of the art produced, and the relationship of art to the culture in which it was created. No previous knowledge of art history is assumed.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

FINE1004. Introduction to Chinese art history (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course gives an overview of the development of different forms of Chinese art in history. Students are introduced to the concept of visual analysis and art appreciation. Discussions are based on several generic themes, such as the nature of the pieces, the effects of ideology, and the influence of the ruling dynasties. In the course of the study, the social context under which the art pieces were made is constantly highlighted. No previous knowledge of art history is expected.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

FINE1006. Art and society (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces visual and critical skills for interpreting the art of different cultures from both
the past and the present. We examine a variety of themes related to the techniques and functions of art, and we study the way art expresses various moral, social, political, and religious ideas. Students will gain a better understanding of cross-cultural communication and will learn how to analyze the powerful visual culture of the contemporary world.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

FINE1007. Introduction to photography theory and practice (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims to introduce students to principles of contemporary photography theory and a critical practice of the photographic medium. In addition to the teaching of basic photographic techniques, the course will also discuss how we can assess photographs with critical tools such as aesthetics and cultural theories.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

Second and Third Years

The following courses are open to both second and third year students. Prerequisites, if required, are stated in the course descriptions. If staffing arrangements permit, the following courses will be offered:

FINE2003. Early Chinese painting (Warring States to Southern Song) (6 credits)

This course will cover the history of Chinese painting from the Warring States to Southern Song dynasty. With an emphasis on methodology and connoisseurship, it will explore the transformation of forms of expression and styles of periods and individuals, as well as ideological and social factors behind the changes. The relationship of Chinese painting theory to Chinese philosophy, aesthetics, and literature will also be discussed.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

---

FINE2004. Later Chinese painting (Yuan to Qing) (6 credits)

This course will cover the history of Chinese painting from the Yuan to Qing dynasty. With an emphasis on methodology and connoisseurship, it will explore the transformation of forms of expression and styles of periods and individuals, as well as ideological and social factors behind the changes. The relationship of Chinese painting theory to Chinese philosophy, aesthetics, and literature will also be discussed.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

---

FINE2005. Twentieth century Chinese art (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Taking a general view of the major trends in Chinese art of this century, this course will explore how political, social, and cultural changes have affected the artists’ thoughts and practices. Most of the important artists and art schools of this century will be covered.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
FINE2006. A history of Chinese calligraphy and seals (6 credits)

Chinese calligraphy and seals are two traditional art forms that have a unique history of over three thousand years. This course will provide students with a basic knowledge of how to analyze these art forms, as well as their historical development. The ability to read in Chinese is advantageous for this course.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2007. Connoisseurship (6 credits)

The discrimination of authenticity and quality in works of art is essential to the study of art history. This course will lay equal stress on both theoretical study and practical training, and on both class discussion and outside investigation. Through demonstration and discussion of specific cases involving varied media and topics, students will learn how to make a judgement by inference on the authenticity and quality of an art work.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

FINE2008. The poetics of Japanese narrative painting (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course examines the origins and emergence of peculiarly Japanese artistic codes in Japanese narrative painting. Topics under review include the tensions born from accommodation of Chinese painting materia, definition of Japanese narratology in painting and its texts, the birth of 'mono no aware' (the ‘ah!-ness of things’) and its place in court and Buddhist painting, the dialectics of ‘female’ and ‘male’ modes, the functions of light humour, satire and the grotesque. In the case of works produced by groups of designers, editors and painters (such as Illustrations of the Tale of Genji), students will be encouraged to experiment with deconstructive analysis.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2009. Genji’s dream: the courtly arts of Heian Japan (6 credits)

This course highlights the world of the Shining Prince Genji as revealed in the courtly arts of Heian Japan, especially in the 11th and 12th centuries. The princely accomplishments of the romance hero Genji included painting, calligraphy, waka poetry (a medium for social intercourse), design of his mansion and gardens for his various ladies. The course locates the various arts, their history, ideologies, and artistic codes, and proposes a symbiotic relationship among them as a further code. Students will study - as beginners - the manner in which classical waka poems are produced as artistic calligraphy, and encouraged to evaluate certain works. No knowledge of Japanese language is necessary.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2011. Japanese art: the interactive dimension (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The course explores certain aspects of artistically defined environmental art, and its associated arts. This includes in particular architecture and garden art in the early and medieval periods of Japanese history, analysis of the nature of exhibitions of art, and exploration of tea-oriented environments and gardens. In all of these situations, it is proposed, a certain kind of audience participation is
anticipated, inherent, or built into the overall structure. The course interrogates response to such environments, particularly in garden art, and examines the relevance of aesthetic codes, their social implications, and their myths, metaphysics, or philosophy.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2012. Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will examine the painting and sculpture of Italy from about 1300 to 1550. Beginning with Giotto’s new approach to painting, the course will explore artistic developments in Italy throughout this period, concluding with a study of the art of the High Renaissance. The impact of the Antique and the interest in mathematics, characteristic of the Italian Renaissance, will be among the topics discussed.
Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

FINE2013. Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will examine the art produced in Flanders, France, and Germany between about 1300 and 1550, focusing primarily on painting and printmaking. It will begin with early 14th century illuminated manuscripts and the subsequent development of the International Style. It will then consider Flemish 15th century painting in some detail, concluding with a study of Flemish and German art of the 16th century.
Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

FINE2014. Baroque art of Italy and Spain (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will examine the art of the Mannerist and Baroque periods in Southern Europe from about 1520 to 1700. The main attention will be placed on 17th century art in Italy and Spain. Particular attention will be given to discussion of the features of naturalism in Baroque art and the impact of the Counter-Reformation on the art of this region.
Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

FINE2015. Baroque art of Flanders, the Netherlands, and France (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will examine the art of the Baroque and Rococo periods in Northern Europe from about 1600 to 1750. The main focus will be on 17th century art in Flanders, the Netherlands, and France, with particular attention being paid to the varied subject matter, styles, and conditions of patronage characteristic of each country. The course will conclude with a discussion of Rococo painting in France.
Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.
FINE2020. American art (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course surveys painting, sculpture, photography, and architecture in the United States from European settlement to 1945. The underlying theme will be the ways in which art in the United States has helped project various new ideologies and values associated with this young and unique nation. Issues to be considered in relation to art will include Protestant values, democracy, wilderness, racial conflict, capitalism, popular culture, and America’s gradual rise to power. Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2026. The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the radical transformation in European art from the age of kings to the age of revolutions, c.1750-1840. Painting, sculpture, and printmaking will be discussed in relation to various historical developments, including the decline of aristocratic culture and Christianity; the rise of science, industry, and democracy; and new, Romantic notions of nature, individuality, nationalism, and primitivism. Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2027. The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the early formation of modern European visual culture, from Realism to Impressionism. The underlying historical theme will be the rise of bourgeois society. Painting, sculpture, printmaking, and photography will be discussed in the context of related ideological issues such as industrial capitalism, mass media, urban leisure, tourism, new gender roles, and European imperialism. Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
In art, as in other fields of knowledge, the late 19th century and the early 20th century was a time when pre-existing assumptions were challenged in a radical way. To certain artists in Europe, for instance, illusionistic realism or the conventions of perspective no longer seemed adequate tools for representing the world and our experience of it. Amongst the factors provoking this crisis of vision was an increasing awareness of other cultures and their differing modes of visual representation, and many non-Western artists shared with their Western counterparts this new sense of the relativity of cultural knowledge, although they tended to respond to it in different ways. Vision in Crisis will examine this moment of great artistic change, focusing primarily on European examples, with Chinese art being taken as the main non-Western case for study. Artists whose work may be discussed in depth include Van Gogh, Gauguin, Cézanne, Picasso and Matisse. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.
FINE2029.  Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Although certain 20th century artists can be taken as celebrating the modern, many artists offered instead a critical engagement with the newly-emerging forms of experience they were encountering, or sought various forms of escape from them. While the response of European artists to the modern condition is most well known, artists from other parts of the world were equally engaged with the task of creating an art adequate to the new environment in which they found themselves. Both will be considered in this course, which will focus primarily on European art of the first half of the 20th century. Chinese art will provide the main non-Western case for study. Abstract art, Futurism, Expressionism, Dada and Surrealism may all be considered.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

FINE2030.  Towards the global (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Paris has been described as the capital of the 19th century, and indeed one can talk of a European cultural hegemony that lasted until the outbreak of the Second World War. The postwar period, however, saw a migration of cultural authority across the Atlantic to the United States, and with the ending of the Cold War American cultural dominance seemed to become even more deeply entrenched. If the close of the colonial era did not then eliminate the asymmetry of power between Western and non-Western cultures, it did at least alter the conditions for artistic production in the latter. Furthermore, with an increasing pace of globalization at the end of the century, the opportunities for non-Western artists to reach new audiences have expanded enormously. This course will begin with a consideration of Pollock and Abstract Expressionism, and later developments in American art will be a major focus of the course, which will also be concerned to document the contribution of non-Western artists. A thematic approach will be adopted, with tendencies such as Pop Art, Minimal and Post-Minimal art, Environmental and Installation Art, Performance Art, Conceptual and Neo-Conceptual Art being amongst those which may be considered. A wide variety of artworks dating from 1945 to the present day will be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

FINE2031.  The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Tracing the development of Western architecture from ancient Greece onward, this course focuses on the 19th and 20th centuries, from Neoclassicism in Washington, D.C. and Haussman’s renovation of Paris to the Bauhaus in Germany and the international spread of Modernism and Postmodernism. Emphasis is placed on the way buildings express institutional ideologies, as well as on construction technology and architectural theory. Hong Kong architecture figures prominently throughout.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2032.  Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will consider the representation of women in Western art. The approach will be thematic, and examples ranging from medieval to modern will be considered. Topics will include ‘good’ women (virgins, saints, mothers, wives) and ‘bad’ (fallen women, temptresses, witches), as well as the nude and the portrait. Both religious and secular images will be considered.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Tracing the rise of global visual cultures, this course examines artistic interactions between Western and non-Western cultures brought on by colonialism, war, trade, and scientific exploration in the period 1750-1900. We study how European and American artists viewed the cultures they encountered in China, Japan, India, the Near East and elsewhere, as well as how non-Westerners viewed the West. Emphasis is placed on the varied processes of cultural interaction and on the importance of such interaction for the development of modernity in different cultural contexts.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)

This course will introduce Hong Kong art and related aspects of Hong Kong visual culture. It will be taught in a workshop format, and will provide the opportunity for students to develop skills in art criticism as well as an understanding of Hong Kong art history.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: At least one Fine Arts course.

FINE2035. Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course studies the history of photography in the nineteenth century: its invention and technological evolution, its various early practices, and its interactions with other cultural practices. In discussing these topics it also investigates the social, cultural and ideological problems to which the medium gave rise especially in the Western world and the era of modernity. Some introductory practical lessons and field trips are included so that students can have a better understanding of the actual photographic process.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course investigates the history of photography in the twentieth century. It charts how earlier photographic practices evolved and were transformed in the new era, and traces the workings of new practices such as photojournalism and fashion photography. As modernism and avant-gardism have pervaded twentieth century culture and arts, this course also focuses on how photography responded to these tendencies in different countries. Finally, it considers the medium’s role in the age of global culture and digital imaging.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE2035.
**FINE2039. Ink painting Muromachi Japan (6 credits)**

This course will examine the impact of anti-orthodox, monastic and amateur painting styles, as they emerge in Japanese ink painting in early modern Japan (14c to 16c). Under discussion will be questions of ideology and aesthetics, contrasted against those of China, the roles of the promoters of art and its exhibition, and counter-movements by rebellious painters writing a new identity and social role for artists. The rise of the curator/taste-maker, and his successor, the tea-master, will illustrate the passage towards a new Japan, and a sense of “Japaneseness” in art.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2041. Japanese art: an introduction (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will outline some of the highlights of Japanese art from its early emergence to modern times. We will discuss how and why Japanese art became so distinctive and so rich a tradition. We will look at the major trends, and masterpieces, in painting, sculpture, architecture and garden art. We shall discuss the aesthetics of Japanese art, and its transformation of foreign arts. We shall also touch on the arts of tea ceremony, and premodern art in various media, including painting, Japanese prints, the hybrid \textit{nihonga} (Japanese painting), and developments in 20th century Japanese painting, applied arts, pottery, and architecture. There will be some field work, in the form of trips to local art galleries.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2042. Chinese material culture I: Neolithic to Tang (6 credits)**

China is considered to have at least five thousand years of continuous cultural development. This course will be a chronological survey of the material culture of China from the Neolithic period to the Tang dynasty. Students will explore the factors contributing to China’s rich and unique visual culture through the study of early Chinese painted pottery, jades, bronzes, ceramics and sculptural works. The course will also address the impact of historical, philosophical and religious developments in China during this period on the production and uses of art. Students will be encouraged to consider how the relationship of art to personal and cultural identity has evolved from the development of archaeology in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

**FINE2043. Chinese material culture II: Song to Qing (6 credits)**

This course will be a survey of the development of material culture in China from the Song dynasty to the fall of imperial China in 1911 and will focus in particular on the influence of imperial taste on art production. Ceramics in particular have reflected the aesthetics of the Court, from austere Buddhist-influenced expression to the highly decorative western-influenced wares of the Qing court, and so will feature prominently in the objects to be considered. Also included will be the iconography of tomb figurines and stone sculpture in imperial mausoleums as well as religious sculpture, bronzes, and carving in jade, wood, lacquer and bamboo.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.
Third Year

The following courses are open only to third year students and will be taught in a seminar format except for FINE3005 and FINE3007.

FINE3001. Perspectives and methodology in Chinese and Japanese art (6 credits)

This course will focus on art historical methodology and strategies in the fields of Chinese and Japanese art. Students will prepare a seminar paper drawing on knowledge of a certain area, but will further be encouraged to demonstrate a critical approach to broader methodological and theoretical issues.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least one first year Fine Arts course, and at least two Fine Arts courses (in any subject area) in their second year.

FINE3003. Museum studies workshop (6 credits)

This course aims to give students an introduction to the principles and practises of working in an art museum. The course will be conducted at the University Museum and Art Gallery, and students will be given the opportunity to develop curatorial skills by completing projects relating to an art exhibition or other curatorial work. Students majoring in Fine Arts will be given first preference, but other third year students fulfilling the prerequisite may apply.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006.

FINE3004. Museum studies internship (6 credits)

The internship will allow a limited number of students to work with senior members of the staff of the University Museum and Art Gallery on a project relating to a current exhibition or the Museum’s permanent collection. Preference will be given to students who wish to develop skills taught in FINE3003. Admission will be by interview.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: FINE3003.

FINE3005. Dissertation on special topic (12 credits)

Students with a focus of interest and the approval of a teacher may undertake independent study to produce a paper of some ambition under the supervision of a teacher.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

FINE3006. Art history methodology workshop (6 credits)

This course is taught in the form of seminars. It requires active participation from students, and is intended for those in their third year who have already engaged seriously with art history during their previous study. It aims to deepen students’ understanding of the methods used by art historians by introducing various debates about interpretation. Students are expected to write a paper concerning an area of art history or visual culture of their own choice, in which they demonstrate their sensitivity to questions of method.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least one first year Fine Arts course, and at least two Fine Arts courses (in any subject area) in their second year.
FINE3007. Independent research project (6 credits)

Students with a focus of interest and the approval of a teacher may undertake independent study to produce a research paper under the supervision of a teacher. 
Assessment: 100% coursework.

Department of Geography

Level 100 Courses

GEOG1002. Hong Kong: land, people and resources (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course provides students with a fundamental understanding of the physical and human environment of Hong Kong with its larger geographical and regional setting. After an introduction to the major physical features, a range of contemporary issues such as demographic structure and changes, economic development, industrialization, urbanization, housing and planning will be examined. It will conclude with a discussion on Hong Kong’s future development problems and their possible solutions. This is an independent course which can be taken by students from various disciplines.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG1003. Contemporary global environmental issues (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Recent decades have been characterized by increasing awareness of environmental issues and the need to come to terms with them. The course will examine, in turn, many of the current major environmental issues related to the atmosphere the hydrosphere and the biosphere as well as looking at major threats posed by the environment itself in the form of natural hazards. In addition, the issue of the nuclear threat and the ever-increasing demand for energy are explored. Finally, the matter of sustained development and intelligent management of the planet for this and future generations is addressed.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG1005. Map use, reading and interpretation (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Maps have been used for centuries to describe spatial patterns and portray association and correlation. Recent developments in digital spatial data handling have changed the environment where maps are used. Maps are no longer confined to the printed format. The objective of this course is to provide an integrated discussion of standard planimetric maps, their uses, and the basic skills necessary to take full advantage of these maps. The lectures will cover fundamental concepts underlying different mapping/analytical techniques, their strengths, limitations, and application settings. The practicals will be devoted to imparting essential computer operating skills to visualize spatial data.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG1006. Natural resources and conservation (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The consumption of the Earth’s resources has reached an alarming intensity and variety in modern times. The objective of this course is to survey the major issues related to the tenure of human-nature interactions, their current status as well as the prognosis for the future. A synoptic view on the cultural roots of the exploitative utilization of our planet sets the backdrop for a systematic assessment of the different but interrelated components of the resource system. Various abiotic, biotic and abiotic-cum-biotic segments are discussed in the light of their diversified uses and misuses in different human societies, and the possibility for a more enlightened approach towards a more sustainable future. Adopting a non-technical approach, this course appeals to students with a background in different humanity or science disciplines.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**GEOG1011. Introduction to human geography (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This is an introductory course about the processes and spatial patterns of human activities in a globalizing world. Important subjects to be discussed will include the main themes of human geography as a spatial science, geography of population and migration, technological innovation and cultural diffusion, the changing cultural landscape, human impacts on the natural environment, and changing geography in major world regions. Emphasis will be placed on the interaction between human society and the natural environment.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**GEOG1012. Economic and social development in an urbanizing world (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces students to the processes and spatial patterns of economic development and social changes in an increasingly urbanizing world. Important subjects to be discussed include the geographical dynamics of economic development, the trend of economic globalization versus local development, the location issue in various economic sectors, geopolitics and the new world order, as well as social and environmental concerns in the urbanization process. Emphasis will be placed on the geographical explanation of economic development and emerging urban issues in this fast changing world. This course can be taken as an independent course or, for students intending to focus on the human dimensions of geographical matters in their second- and third-year studies, it can be taken as a complement to another Level 100 course ‘GEOG1011 Introduction to human geography’.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**Level 200 & 300 Courses**

# Courses to be offered on alternate odd-year basis, i.e. in 2005-06, 2007-08.
* Courses to be offered on alternate even-year basis, i.e. in 2006-07, 2008-09.

**GEOG2001. Economic geography # (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course gives an introduction to competing theoretical interpretations of why economic activities are located where they are. Emphasis is placed on the processes of globalization, their geographical implications, and various theoretical attempts to understand the dynamics of the new economic landscape. Both topical and regional issues of economic geography are discussed and economic development at the global, national, and local scales are examined.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

China’s space economy has undergone profound transformation over the past half a century. This course offers a selective evaluation of a number of issues that are critical to understanding China’s ongoing economic and spatial transformation. Emphasis is placed on development strategies, agriculture, industry, transport, trade, and urban and regional development since 1949. The driving forces operating behind the scenes of economic transformation and the (un)intended consequences are critically evaluated. Students wishing to take this course must take or have taken the co-requisite/pre-requisite course GEOG2062. China: the land and the people.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2003.  Japan, Korea and Southeast Asia # (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is designed to provide an overview of contemporary geographical issues in the major sub-regions of the newly emerging ‘Pacific-Asian’ region: Japan, Korea, and Southeast Asia from the historical, geographical, social, economic, and environmental perspectives. Principal topics of discussion include population growth, economic development, and problems associated with rapid industrialization and urbanization such as environmental degradation and regional disparities.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2004.  Atmospheric environment and global climate * (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is divided into three major sections. In the first, the basic characteristics and features of the atmospheric environment are examined from the viewpoint of the basic physical and dynamical processes which occur in the atmosphere and between the atmosphere and the underlying surface. In the second both the spatial and temporal dimensions of the resulting climate are explored at a range of scales to provide an understanding of the link between the processes occurring in the climate system and the diversity of climatic conditions which occur on Earth. A special section is devoted to the climates of China. In the last section, various means of reconstructing and modelling the climate system are explored with a view to understanding the nature of past climates and the variety of potential future climates that might be possible.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2005.  Biogeography and ecosystem modifications * (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The course introduces students to the basic concepts of biogeography by studying the structure and functioning of natural ecosystems and their extensive modifications by human activities. It provides a comprehensive foundation on basic ecological concepts, including structure and organization of ecosystems, energy flow and nutrient cycling, evolution of the biosphere, and ecosystem succession and changes. Some special issues of ecosystem management of relevance to nature conservation and protection are then expounded, including species interactions, biotic dispersal and migration, fire as a natural-cum-anthropic factor, continental drift and Pleistocene Glaciation, domestication and
agricultural origin, the pervasive ecological impacts of modern agriculture and urbanization, and the
application of island biogeography theory to habitat and species conservation. This is a course of
general appeal to students with different backgrounds and dispositions.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2006. Earth surface processes and landforms (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)
This course is a core element in physical environmental study. The course provides a systematic
description and analysis of earth surface landscapes and the processes that create them. Since earth
landsurface is located at the interface of the Earth’s lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere and
biosphere, this study is closely related to a wide range of disciplines of natural environments. Topics
discuss the landforms and their processes in different environments, including slope, fluvial, coastal,
glacial and arid locations. The landforms created by tectonic movement and the techniques in
geomorphology are also studied.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2012. Survey and statistical techniques in geography (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)
The course introduces students to the use of surveys and (spatial and non-spatial) statistics in
geography. The aim is to provide students with a basic understanding of the research methodology
and techniques commonly used in the discipline. Following a discussion of the uses, implementation
and limitations of surveys, various descriptive and inferential statistics of spatial concentration,
associations and autocorrelation are introduced. Underlying concepts and theories are illustrated
with practical applications drawn extensively from both physical and human geography. Classroom
teaching is supplemented by computer laboratory sessions and project work. Abilities to evaluate
survey reports critically and to apply spatial and non-spatial statistics appropriately are emphasized.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

GEOG2013. Sustainable development (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)
This course evaluates the links between environmental protection and economic development. The
world must manage its natural and environmental resources to meet the human needs of the present
while at the same time preserving these resources for future generations. The course introduces
students to different views on how human society can achieve the goal of economic growth without
depleting the Earth’s capital and jeopardizing the planet’s life support system. It aims to enhance
students’ understanding of the issues relating to sustainable development. Although the course
cannot provide complete answers to the issues, it helps develop students’ ability of critical thinking
and suggest promising directions in which answers may be sought.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2014. Countryside recreation and management (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
purposes.)
Expansion in leisure time has led to an associated increase in recreation. The countryside can provide a range of activities and attractions. The course examines the countryside as a resource and looks at management issues. The provision of leisure will also be examined, as will how to 'value' the countryside. Special case studies of National Parks in the USA and UK, along with Country Parks in Hong Kong will be undertaken. The environmental impact of recreation will also be studied. Competing claims for rural land and tensions resulting from countryside recreation will also be examined. Factors influencing participation in countryside recreation are examined.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2015. Environmental monitoring and assessment (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The course is divided into two parts. The first part deals with basic environmental monitoring methodology and techniques, which are how to obtain and analyse information on the existence and concentration of substances in the environment, either naturally occurring or from anthropogenic sources. It also examines natural hazards monitoring. The second part provides a basic concept and nature of environmental assessment (EA or EIA), an exploration of best practice in EA and a description of EA procedures.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2018. Transport geography (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course provides an understanding of the spatial structures and development of transport systems from a people-oriented geographical approach. This approach emphasizes the role of people in determining the evolution and use of transport systems and the role of the transportation systems in serving and changing our daily life through improving accessibility and mobility. The course will cover the fundamentals of geographical analysis on transport, the analysis on transport demand, supply and regulations, and the relationship between transport and development. Case studies of airports, ports, and urban transport networks provide explanations about the mechanisms and dynamics of transport systems in different geographical situations, and how they interact with local and global development.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2019. Environmental GIS (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces students to the methods of overlaying and merging of spatial data layers in environmental monitoring and decision making. The principles of such an approach will be discussed focusing on the nature of environmental data (particularly the raster data structure and remote sensing images), data transformation and geocoding, modeling techniques, and accuracy evaluation of spatial databases. Students must complete a simple project embodying the application of the GIS concept in an environmental situation.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2020. Geography of wine # (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening
There is an intimate relationship between geography and wine - where a wine comes from determines its quality, style and taste. This is principally because of the importance of the site and size of the vineyard, its soil, slope, rainfall, sunshine; as well as the nature of the cultivation practices, choice of grape and methods of winemaking. This course first examines the history and evolution of winemaking and the fundamentals of the art and science of oenology to provide the student with a firm foundation for understanding the differences among the wide variety of wines produced worldwide. The remainder is dedicated to exploring the different wine regions of the world and the unique characteristics of each which give their products their distinctive features.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**GEOG2021. Physical environment of China (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The course firstly provides an explanation of basic natural environmental elements of China. Based on understanding and distribution of these elements, Chinese physical environment is then regionalized and the individual environmental regions are discussed in detail. The course also covers the utilization and transformation of natural environment since civilization and the major environmental problems in different regions.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**GEOG2028. Population geography (6 credits)**

This course aims to provide the student with a basic understanding of the forces bringing about population change. Students will be introduced to the three fundamental demographic variables, fertility, mortality and migration, and how these interact to generate changes in population structure. Marriage patterns and family formation are considered in intercultural contexts. The basic factors accounting for population distribution and redistribution will be outlined. The relationship between population and the environment is a central theme and due consideration will be given to ideas of overpopulation on the one hand and to population growth as a necessary condition for human development on the other. Models of the demographic transition and of the interaction between migration and fertility will be examined. Specific attention will be paid to the ageing of human populations, to population policies and to the impact of diseases such as HIV/AIDS to give a comprehensive introduction to the major issues facing the world’s population as it moves into the 21st century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**GEOG2030. Global development (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course explains the processes of globalization and discusses its important implications for national and regional development. Special emphasis is placed on the interactions of modern transnational corporations (TNCs) and the nation states. Case studies are drawn from different sectors of the economy and different regions of the world. Major issues such as international trade and resource transfer, circuit of capital, product life cycle, technological innovations, the new international division of labour and transnational integration are addressed. This course is valuable to students who are interested in development studies, urbanization and public policy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
GEOG2037. Soils and the environment * (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces students to soils as an integral component of the environment and a pertinent natural resource. It provides a broad foundation to basic concepts of soil as a natural body by assessing systematically the mineral and organic composition as well as their related properties. The physical organization of soils in the form of structure and its manipulation by humankind in the form of tillage are elucidated. Topics on the ability of soils to supply nutrients for plant growth, the use of different forms of chemical and organic fertilizers, and contamination of soils by pollutants, are covered. The importance of soil moisture and their maintenance at an optimal state are explained in the context of drainage and irrigation. The general degradation of soils due to human-accelerated erosion and other unsustainable activities are evaluated together with the prospects for proper ecological rehabilitation and conservation. The course contents and presentation are designed to cater to students with either arts or science backgrounds.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2038. Climate change and the environment # (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course has as its primary concern climatic conditions on Earth and their interactions with life and human activities. It will focus on climate change, since to deal sensibly with questions raised concerning future climatic conditions and evaluation of their impact on environment and society, it is essential to understand the nature of the climate system and what causes it to change. In particular, the impact of human activities on the climate system will be set in perspective alongside the background of natural changes in the climate of our planet. Issues associated with societal decisions taken today and their potential impact on climate over the next century will also be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2042. Urban hydrology and water quality # (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course aims to provide students with appropriate knowledge about water in the city. It starts with an introduction to the two water cycles in the city: the natural and man-made systems. The modification of the hydrologic cycle in the urban system is discussed along with the water supply and drainage systems. Access to water, as a scarce resource, and its geographic contrasts are studied. Hydrologic problems in the city such as flooding and subsidence are also examined. Water quality of both natural and man-made water cycle systems are also investigated.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2045. Retail location * (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces the basic principles and components of the retail system with the emphasis on the spatial pattern of demand and the value of location to various actors - the economic basis of location decision. The spatial structure of commercial activities are described and explained at both the settlement and the metropolitan scale with an eye on the location decisions of retail chains and developers. Students will be introduced to the most widely used procedures in store location studies and are urged to evaluate these techniques in terms of the retail chain’s strategies and requirements in...
a local setting.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2048. Environmental hazards * (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines a range of environmental hazards of geological, geomorphological, atmospheric, biological and human origin focussing on their origins, characteristics and impacts on human society. It will also deal with the responses available to different societies to deal with these hazards including disaster relief, loss sharing and event modification adjustments as well as comprehensive hazard planning and management principles. Where practicable local and regional examples will be used as illustrations.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2050. Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course presents an introduction to environmentalism, which encompasses a set of beliefs and activities which inform and flow from a concern with the environment. Environmentalism has begun to assert itself globally (since the 1960s/1970s) and locally (from the late 1980s) as a significant force in response to, and sometimes influencing, patterns of development. This course will trace the emergence of environmentalism at both the global and local levels. It will examine the evolving linkages between environmentalism and some central societal issues such as social justice, poverty, and gender. The responses of the business sector to increasing public concern for the environment, as well as mounting opposition to environmentalism, will be considered. The course will conclude with a discussion on various manifestations of environmentalism in Hong Kong to illustrate the complex relations between society and environment in a compact and high-density metropolitan milieu.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2051. Port and airport development # (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Port and airport are regarded in transport geography as two nodal development forms in multi-modal transport systems. Through a series of seminar-like discussions, this course provides a basic understanding of port and airport operations, and how these two forms of nodal transport infrastructure interact with other transport components and with urban and regional development. Examples drawn from different parts of the world will be discussed in detail and students are required to examine the local cases through field trips.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2054. Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
On the understanding that students have already acquired some knowledge on urban planning (especially its basic theory and principles) and have keen interest in the work of the profession, this course will concentrate its discussions on selected aspects on urban planning in practice in Hong
Kong. It will outline the actual functions and work of urban planning in real life and analyze the more important factors affecting urban planning in Hong Kong. A number of specific significant urban planning issues will be considered. The planning system, the planning legislation and other matters in the implementation mechanism will also be explained. The course will end with glimpses into the future development of Hong Kong and its planning-development relationship with neighbouring development areas.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2055. Water resources and management * (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course begins with an introduction to water as a resource, and the drainage basin hydrological cycle. The second part of the course focuses upon changing demand for water and explores possible solutions to the water problem. It also examines the issue of access to water. The human impact upon runoff and groundwater by means of land-use change is studied. Finally, water quality including pollution and its impact upon water supply is examined.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2056. Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course provides a comprehensive introduction to the tourism system in the global context. With a balanced coverage of the whole range of components within the tourism industry, it explores all aspects of both the private and public businesses related to tourism, such as theories, planning, environmental concerns, operations, and the interrelationships among the many tourism businesses. The material covered is intended to offer students knowledge of the tourism system, enable them to apply basic tourism concepts to various projects and problems, and help them to develop a career in the tourism industry.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2057. Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is an overview of the broad field of recreation and leisure, emphasizing the understanding of various leisure phenomena. As such, it aims to provide the students with an introductory understanding of the nature and scope of leisure, leisure behaviour and affiliated recreation activity. It also reviews relationships between leisure and space, place, time, play, work, family, education, ethnicity, gender, and environment.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2059. Geography of information technology (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is about the spatial implications of ‘convergent information technology’ (IT), broadly defined as computers and telecommunications. It begins by exploring the historical roots and geographical spread of the Internet throughout the world. The course proceeds to examine the IT industries as spatial systems. The geographical concept of ‘innovation milieu’ and open windows of
locational opportunities are introduced as the theoretical framework for analyzing the experiences of the Silicon Valley in the United States, the technopolis programme in Japan and the cyberport project in Hong Kong.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

GEOG2060. An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
How do you know where you are going until you know where you have been? This course will introduce students to the role archaeology has played in the construction of humanity’s history and prehistory. It is intended to be a broad survey of the discipline, its discoveries, scientific and analytical tools and applications. The course will assist students in recognising new cultural dimension within the landscape around them and provide a sound basis for further study here or abroad.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2061. Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Understanding the relationship between cultural heritage management and tourism is important for planning and managing tangible cultural heritage in a sustainable manner. The course examines the underlying principles, goals and concepts that drive current cultural heritage management and tourism activity around the world. It will provide students with a framework for analysing the complementary and competing demands made by conservation and tourism of tangible cultural heritage. How such demands arise during the planning and development of a heritage attraction will be discussed throughout the course using examples from five continents.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2062. China: the land and the people (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This is an introductory course about the evolving physical, cultural and political landscape of China. Emphasis is placed on (a) the natural environment and physical setting for development; (b) historical geography and evolution of the landscape; (c) the political system and post-1949 development; and (d) the growth and spatial distribution of population. This course is the co-requisite/pre-requisite for GEOG2002. China development issues.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2065. Urban planning: principles and practices (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course introduces students to the subject of urban planning. It will first discuss the significance and objectives of urban planning, relating the rise of this profession to the changing configurations of our increasingly urbanizing world. Then, drawing upon primarily the experiences of the United States, some of the major concepts and issues relating to contemporary urban planning practice will be deliberated. These include competing planning theories on the planning process, the legal basis of planning as well as the interrelationships between planning, politics and social issues. The
questions of land use planning, urban design, urban renewal, and environmental planning will be highlighted and experiences from the United States and Hong Kong will be discussed and contrasted to illustrate the complexity of urban planning issues in different geographical, political and social settings. Students are strongly encouraged to take one of the basic foundation courses on urban geography before enrolling in this course.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**GEOG2070. Coast and slope environments * (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*
The course brings together material vital to any attempts to understand and manage our coasts and slopes and will be of interest to all those concerned with the environments. The aim of the course is to develop a basic understanding of coast and slope systems. It involves a basic study on the natural processes, including their landscape formation and evolution, and the physical, ecological and cultural systems of slopes and coasts. The current issues and problems in coastal and slope areas will be discussed, such as landslide, coastal erosion and land reclamation. The management methodology in the areas will be introduced with a focus on Hong Kong and regional cases.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**GEOG2072. Environmental management: impact assessment (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*
The purpose of this course is to discuss the role of Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) studies in the environmental decision-making process and as a means for better environmental management. The major components, processes, and attributes to EIA systems will be discussed throughout the lectures. The course will also introduce different methodologies in planning and managing an EIA study. Applications of EIA system in the local context will be discussed in detail and illustrated by real-life examples mainly from Hong Kong.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**GEOG2073. Principles of environmental management (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*
The purpose of this course is to highlight some major aspects in environmental decision-making and to provide means for better environmental management. The course will introduce a range of concepts and methods in studying environmental management. The major components, processes, and attributes to the environmental management process will be discussed in the course. The market and government regulations associated with environmental management will also be presented. Considering the complex and dynamic nature of the environmental management process, applications of environmental, social, and economic methods in environmental management are discussed in detail and illustrated by real-life examples mainly from Hong Kong, and mainland China. Integrated approaches for identifying desirable policy options in environmental decision-making are also introduced.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.
GEOG2078. Urban geography I: growth, function and pattern of cities (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Human beings and their activities are increasingly concentrated in cities. A holistic examination of the city involves understanding its role, internal physical and social structure, and systems of activities. This is one of the two basic courses on urban geography. It covers basic topics of the forces and patterns of urbanization, central place theories, functions of cities, rank size rule, primacy and urban systems, and new urbanization features such as the world city and Extended Metropolitan Regions. It is basic to the understanding of the city and related urban issues and problems.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2079. Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Human beings and their activities are increasingly concentrated in cities. A holistic examination of the city involves understanding its role, internal physical and social structure, and systems of activities. This is one of the two basic courses on urban geography. It deals with conventional urban land use models and the cultural and modern forces that shape the urban internal structures of different regions of today. It covers the conventional urban land use models, social areas, CBD, urban industrial location, urban renewal and the rural-urban fringe, urban structures of colonial cities, African cities, Islamic cities, Latin American cities, Chinese and Soviet cities, as well as the new city in the Information Age. The course will be useful for urban administration, planning and marketing.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2080. Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Whereas physically Europe could arguably be regarded as just a part of Asia, it distinguishes itself culturally. So, the course first tries to define Europe and describe its characteristics. It does this by looking at cultures, landscapes and especially the cities. The fascinating thing about Europe is that as diverse historically, culturally and economically as it is, it chose to overcome differences and to actively engage in an unprecedented integration process. In its second part the course looks at this process and its political, economic and spatial implications. It links the European experience to globalisation and to integration processes in Asia. The last part of the course then explores the recent development of selected regions within Europe. Apart from introducing a unique continent to the participants the course provides an understanding of interrelated political and regional developments.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2081. Sustainable urban transport (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces a new approach to apply the concept of sustainability to urban transport. It provides basic knowledge about the operation of urban transportation systems, urban transport planning and policy. Trends in population and urbanization will be associated closely with the patterns of travel behavior and demand, transport technology, and energy use. Personal mobility and accessibility in the urbanized developed and developing worlds will be explained with case studies from around the world. An introduction of trends in intercity travel and freight mobility bring this
course further with a regional context, and examples are drawn from the Pearl River Delta as well as other mega-city regions.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2082. Economic development in rural China (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
China is still largely an agricultural country with an overwhelmingly rural population. This course examines China’s rural and agricultural development issues from both developmental and geographical perspectives. It focuses on three parts of knowledge: basic theories in rural and agricultural development, existing condition and situation of Chinese agricultural production and the rural economy, and hot topics of debates on contemporary reform and development in Chinese countryside. Agricultural and rural problems, government policies and the associated impacts will be analyzed along with natural environment and condition. The course emphasizes the training of critical thinking and comprehensive analytical skills, as well as practical problem-solving ability. The course is primarily organized into three parts: lectures, seminars and a fieldtrip. Part I are lectures, Part II are seminars presented by students, by topics and in groups, and Part III is a field excursion to China.
Assessment: 40% coursework; 60% examination.

GEOG2083. Sustainable cities: theory and praxis # (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
There has been a rapidly increasing literature, since the latter half of the 1990s, on how cities and urban development in general could be made compatible with sustainable development goals. This course will examine key issues, both theoretical and practical, pertaining to this topic—such as the relationship between cities and environmental justice, health, transport, industry, agriculture, planning, designing with nature and waste management. Discussion will also extend to the problem of how best to assess, measure, and monitor progress towards the achievement of sustainable development goals at the city and national levels. Comparing and contrasting various policy and planning approaches exemplified by a range of urban projects introduced and implemented in both developed and developing countries, an overall emphasis will be placed on how ‘sustainable cities’ need to be considered within a regional and global context.
Assessment: 40% coursework; 60% examination.

GEOG2084. Trees in urban landscape and design # (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims to introduce students to trees as the most dominant element of the natural-green compartment of an urban ecosystem. As prominent landscape features and ecological contributors to diversities in human settlements, trees are surveyed with respect to composition and structure, environmental conditions for their existence, multiple benefits and functions that they can bring to city inhabitants, and general pattern of greenspaces in cities. Various stress factors dampening tree vigour in the trying urban environment in the above- and below-ground realms, and the resulting arboricultural problems, are considered. The practical management of trees in the urban landscape is elaborated with reference to species composition and selection to match different site conditions, tree planting techniques and subsequent care, tree preservation and transplanting, and the assessment and valuation of urban trees. By adopting a non-technical approach, students with a science or an arts background with an interest in the natural aspects of cities and practical landscape management are
targeted.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2085. North America * (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Regions are collections of places defined and connected by physical and human characteristics through the process of human observation and analysis. They thus exhibit both unity and diversity in their constituent elements which is dynamic both in time and place. This course provides a basic understanding of the geographical mosaic that is the continent of North America using a regional construct. The basic approach taken is to provide pertinent information on the nature of and our understanding of the topic being examined – North America’s geographic profile, people, culture, economy, urban system, and its relationship with the rest of the world. The key points covered in this course will permit students to grasp enough of the fundamentals to enable further, more detailed, exploration of the issues through self-guided use of materials provided on the course web page. These materials include Supplementary Information, a Glossary of Important Terms, Questions to Ponder, Recommended Reading and hyperlinks to Web sites where additional information can be found.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2086. China’s tourism resources and management (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course provides a comprehensive introduction to China’s tourism resources and management. Through the study of the works by a multidisciplinary group of scholars, it explores China’s burgeoning tourism industry. Students are encouraged to trace the historical evolution of China’s development policies regarding the country’s tourism resource and management, as well as the organisations of the industry, including the hotel business and hospitality.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2087. GIS in transport planning and management # (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The increased complexity and rapid development of transport networks warrant the use of computerized techniques to undertake traffic control, monitoring, and analysis and planning. GIS is emerging as a valuable tool in transport-related areas that involve logistics and use of transportation services. This course covers the requirements and basic methods of constructing a transport database for the management of infrastructure or logistical problems, and for transportation-related services such as delivery and emergency routing. Extensive information and hands-on training in event routing, address matching, hotlinking and the use of data libraries using selected software are presented.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

GEOG2088. China: environment and sustainable development (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Due to its geographic characteristics and its large population size, China is prone to natural resources degradation. Environmental problems have been accelerated by the rapid economic growth of recent
years, high intensity of energy use, particularly in the industrial sector, and economic and pricing policies that did not take into account the intrinsic market value of the resources. These factors combine to cause over-exploitation of natural resources. This course comprises three main sections. Following the introduction, Section I provides an overview of the state of the natural environment of the country. Section II focuses on the institution, legislative and administrative framework for environment protection and nature conservation. Finally, Section III discusses the government’s strategy for the environment and sustainable development as spelled out in recent Five-Year plans and China’s Agenda 21.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**GEOG2089. The Pearl River Delta: development and interaction with Hong Kong (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

With the cross-boundary relocation of Hong Kong manufacturing activities, the Pearl River Delta (PRD) has experienced rapid economic growth, industrialization and urbanization since China’s Opening and Reform initiated in the late 1970s. The PRD and Hong Kong have become inextricably linked together through the increasing cross-boundary movements of capital, people, goods, information and other activities especially since the 1990s. The objective of this course is to shed light on the significant changes in the PRD and economic restructuring in Hong Kong over the past two decades, as well as the socio-economic interaction between them. It examines the evolution and changing patterns of the regional integration under the unique framework of the “One Country Two Systems” (OCTS) and the newly established “Closer Economic Partnership Arrangement” (CEPA) between the Mainland and Hong Kong. Emphasis is placed on the nature, underlying factors and mechanism that account for the promising development and intensive interplay in the region.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**GEOG2090. Introduction to geographic information systems (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course introduces students to the computer-assisted techniques of geographic data analysis, collectively known as GIS, which involve the overlaying and merging of spatial data layers. The principles of such an approach will be discussed focusing on the nature of the spatial data, raster and vector data structures, data transformation and geocoding, modeling techniques, and accuracy evaluation of spatial databases. Students must complete a simple project embodying the application of the GIS concept in a real-life situation.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**GEOG2091. Principles and practice of ecotourism (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Ecotourism is the result of increasing interest amongst consumers in exploring the natural world as an alternative to more conventional holidays, along with a desire to reduce the environmental and cultural impact of their activities. This course introduces to students the basic principles and practices of ecotourism, including its prospects and problems from the points of view of host populations, tourist guests, environmentalists and tourism organisations. It leads students to examine the delicate interactions between tourism and the ecosystem by studying cases from five continents. It also encourages them to explore the prospects of ecotourism development in China through examining ecotourism practice in the country.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.
GEOG3030. Advanced urban geography (6 credits)

The course examines the divergent forces shaping urbanization and growth of different parts of the world and the responses of various national governments to such dynamics and their consequences. It will cover the uni-dimensional and multi-dimensional schools, world city concept, the extended metropolitan region and exo-urbanization. It provides a good foundation for advanced and professional studies in human geography, planning and social sciences in general.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Department of History

First-year Courses

HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies (3 credits)

This course will satisfy the requirements for the Information Technology component of the first-year curriculum. Students will learn a range of information technology skills within the framework of the historical discipline and will consider how best to apply information technology developments both critically and creatively in the pursuit of their historical studies. Students will be exposed to a variety of learning situations, especially workshops in computer laboratories. Students enrolling in HIST1003 must also enroll in another history course in the same semester.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST1008. The world at war (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
By the end of 1941, the entire world was engulfed in war, a war from which the world would emerge in ruins and permanently altered. This course surveys the origins and the course of the Second World War. Here we will examine fascism, national socialism, and German and Japanese expansionism policies. Much attention will focus on the military struggle between 1939 and 1945: tactics, strategy, and major battles. Then we will also examine the occupation policies of the New Order, collaboration and resistance, mass bombings, social change, the concentration camps and the Holocaust in some details. The course will conclude with an analysis of war-time diplomacy, which was the origins of the Cold War.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST1010. An introduction to European history and civilisation (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course introduces students to the development of European civilization from its earliest beginnings in the Fertile Crescent through the classical age of Ancient Greece, and the Roman Empire, to the Middle Ages, the Renaissance, the Reformation, the Enlightenment and the French Revolution. Selected highlights from these topics will be treated in the lectures and seminars and coursework assignments will seek to establish linkages between modern western civilization and its historical foundations. This course is valuable for history students, but should also appeal to others studying literature, art, music or philosophy. It will be especially useful for European Studies Majors. All students are welcome.
Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST1012. From imperial to colonial: nineteenth century Hong Kong (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course starts with looking at Hong Kong under Qing rule. It then goes on to examine the impact of British colonialism on this tiny outlying Chinese territory. Attention will be given to the colonial administration, the social scene, and the economic development of the new British colony until the end of the nineteenth century.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST1013. Doing history (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course teaches basic methods of historical research to students who intend to be history majors in their second and third years. Lectures will introduce the context in which have developed the methods that historians use to study documents, process information, organize information, and write historical papers. Seminars will investigate each of these topics in detail. Lectures and seminars will take place in the first 5 weeks of the semester. At the end of the semester, mentoring sessions focusing on the process and final production of a portfolio will guide students as they write an essay for any other 6-unit history course. Students enrolling in HIST1013 must also enroll in anther 6-credit history course in the same semester.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST1014. The early modern world (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course offers a broad historical survey which aims at introducing students to the various interactions between the major civilizations of the world from the time of the European Renaissance until the early phase of the Industrial Revolution. The geographical coverage of the course will include Europe, Asia, the Middle East, Africa and the Americas. The course will adopt a comparative approach where possible and will be particularly concerned with the theme of globalisation. This course does not aim to be a comprehensive survey of all aspects of the history of the early modern world, but it does range widely in attempting to acquaint students with important developments in the areas of culture, religion, politics, society, and the world economy.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST1015. Foundations of modern China: Dimensions of Qing history (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course starts with a series of survey lectures that cover political, institutional, social, economic, intellectual, and diplomatic trends from 1644 and 1912. These survey lectures will be followed by an in-depth study of two particular themes of Qing history, to be decided each year by the teachers who lecture this course. The historical significance of early, mid, and late Qing will be highlighted. Learning will be facilitated by the use of a web-based “electronic textbook”. Students will be required to write an essay, do a document study, and work as a team on a project related to Qing history.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST1016. The modern world (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course focuses upon providing a broad, non-specialized introduction to the nineteenth and
twentieth-century world, and assumes no previous historical training on the part of its clientele. It will be organized around such themes as: industrialization, liberalism, conservatism, socialism, communism, nationalism, the impact of major wars, revolutions, the rise and fall of fascism and communism, the decline of the Western empires, the growth of popular democracy, urbanization, globalization, the changing status of women, cultural and environmental change.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Second and Third Years

Survey Courses. Survey courses will normally be offered by the Department in each academic year. Students should consult the Department to find out which surveys are to be offered each year.

CHIN2225. History of the Ming period (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the fourteenth century to the seventeenth century.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

CHIN2226. History of the Qing period (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the seventeenth century to the twentieth century.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the political, social, economic, intellectual and diplomatic history of China from the last decade of Manchu rule to the Communist victory in 1949. Attention will be drawn to the historical forces of continuity and change, and to the themes of nationalism, modernization, militarism, democracy and revolution.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, Part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the consolidation of Communist power, the dynamics and constraints of revolutionary ideology, and the PRC’s quest for modernization and great-power status. Attention will be drawn to the Chinese Communists’ methods of thought and work, and to the historical forces of continuity and change.
Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST2005. History of Hong Kong, Part I (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Beginning with the pre-British situation, the course proceeds to examine the establishment of colonial rule, the development of Chinese social institutions such as the Tung Wah Hospital, the emergence of Chinese revolutionaries led by Sun Yat-sen, the anti-colonial boycotts culminating in the general strike of 1925-26, and the events leading up to World War II. Throughout, emphasis is placed on thematic and interpretive concerns.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2006. History of Hong Kong, Part II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the extraordinary development of Hong Kong after World War II. Hong Kong’s relations with China, rapid industrialization in the 1950’s and post-industrialization in the 1980’s, the interdependence of real estate and financial development, immigration and cultural identity, social problems and riotous disorders, contrasts between modernization and westernization are major thematic concerns. Emphasis will be placed on developing interpretive understanding of historical events.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The Meiji leadership centralized Japan after centuries of decentralization. This course attempts to assess the quality of the leadership, identify the problems of centralization, analyze the effectiveness of the solutions, and appraise Japan’s achievement at the end of the period especially in terms of its international standing.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is a general survey of the domestic political, economic, and social history of Japan since 1912. Some of the developments covered will be industrialization, changing systems of international relations (including World War II and the subsequent Allied Occupation), and rapid political change and economic growth in the postwar era.
Assessment: 100% coursework


(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The modern Spanish philosopher Jorge Santayana once declared: ‘Those who do not know the past are forever condemned to repeat its errors’. Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have their origins in the nineteenth century: urbanization and industrial change; rapid and misunderstood social development; the centrality of Germany; nationalism, which threatens to pull
apart nations and the multi-national empire of Russia; new alliance patterns that are not so new; revolutionary political change; the development of a true civil society; and the threat from ultra-right-wing populist groups.

In this course we will cover European developments from the origins of the French Revolution through the Revolutions of 1848. Major topics discussed will include the Industrial Revolution, the ‘isms’ such as liberalism, conservatism, and nationalism, the Revolutions of 1848, and foreign affairs.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2012. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have had their origins in the nineteenth century. Today Europe has to deal with several of the problems World War I either failed to resolve or in itself caused.

In this course we will cover European developments from the unifications that transformed Central Europe up to World War I. Major topics will include the second Industrial Revolution, socialism, social and cultural changes, reaction to those changes (anti-semitism and proto-fascism), imperialism, nationalism and liberation movements in Eastern Europe, fin-de-siècle Europe, the decline of the multi-national empires, and the origins of World War I.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2013. Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: The European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This period can be seen as a Thirty Years’ War fought over the problem of Germany, beginning with the First World War, 1914-18, and climaxing with the total defeat of Germany at the end of the Second World War, 1939-45. Tensions between the Great Powers were exacerbated by new ideologies such as Fascism, Nazism and Communism, which appeared in Europe as part of a general crisis in Western Civilisation after the First World War. An attempt will be made to evaluate the debate between different schools of historians on what Fascism, Nazism and Communism signified. Finally one of the main aims of the course is to describe, and explain, the mass murders involving the deaths of millions carried out by a new breed of leaders such as Adolf Hitler and Joseph Stalin.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2014. Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

After the Second World War, Europe was divided into two camps, with Germany itself split into Western and Communist portions. The survey of the Western camp will focus on British, French and West German politics, social change, student revolts, and the growth of the consumer society and mass culture. In studying the ‘Other Europe’, the course will concentrate on the way Communism evolved and changed in the Soviet Union and its Eastern European empire, concluding with the dramatic popular revolutions that so suddenly toppled the Communist regimes in Eastern Europe in 1989 and the even more momentous collapse of Communism in the former Soviet Union in 1991. As the pace of change in the whole of Europe increased so dramatically in 1989, the course ends with a series of questions. What are the prospects for European unity, economically and politically? What role will the new unified Germany have in Europe? What are the prospects for Russia and the
other republics that have emerged from the ruins of the Soviet Empire? Students studying this course would find Part I: The European Civil War, 1914-1945 very useful. Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2015. The United States before 1900 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.) This is a general survey history of the United States from the colonial era up to 1900. Emphasis will be primarily on the nineteenth century. Key areas of focus include: industrialization and economic growth, urbanization, frontier communities, immigration, slavery, the Civil War, socio-political reform movements, and the Spanish-American War. This course is continued by The United States in the twentieth century, though the two courses can be taken separately. Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2016. The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.) This course continues the survey of United States history begun in The United States before 1900, though it can be taken separately. It traces the United States’ response to its adjustment from an agrarian, small-scale society to a large-scale, urban, industrialized nation, characterised by large organizations. Concurrently, it covers the development into a global power with interests throughout the world. Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2018. The foreign relations of China since 1949 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.) This course studies the development of China’s foreign relations after 1949 with reference to historical influences, ideological premises and practical political, strategic, and economic considerations. Special attention is given to the interaction between theory and practice in China’s foreign relations, the evaluation of the impact of China’s foreign policy on international politics and vice versa, and the assessment of the major approaches to the study of the topic. Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2021. Nineteenth century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.) This course surveys developments within the Russian Empire from the duel between Alexander I and Napoleon through the Revolution of 1905, the dress rehearsal for the Revolution of 1917 which destroyed Tsarism. This course focuses on internal developments, rather than on foreign policy; and thus includes topics such as Slavophilism vs. Westernizers, the tsarist reaction, and then reform under Nicholas I and Alexander II, the revolutionary movement from the Decembrists to the Bolsheviks, industrialisation, the Nationalities Question, and the peasantry before and after Emancipation. This course requires no prior knowledge of European history. Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST2024. A century of business in Hong Kong, 1842-1949 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course traces the business history of Hong Kong after it became a British colony until the Communist Takeover of China in 1949. The topics covered in the course include Hong Kong as a centre of opium trade, the development of Western businesses, the mode and practice of Chinese businesses such as the Nam Pak Hong, relations between Western and Chinese businesses, the impact of Chinese nationalism, the world wars, the Great Depression, and communist control in China on Hong Kong business.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2025. British Hong Kong and China 1895-1945 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course follows the development of the relations between British Hong Kong and China from 1895 to 1945. On the one hand, it was a relation of confrontation, with Chinese governments increasingly using the slogan of anti-imperialism as a political weapon against foreign powers. This affected China’s policies towards Hong Kong. On the other hand, it was a relation with benefits for both sides. When China was in political turmoil, people from the mainland migrated to Hong Kong. This had significant effect on Hong Kong’s economic and cultural developments. This course analyzes the interaction between these two seemingly contradictory relations, with special emphasis on the rise of the position of the Chinese in the colony.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2026. Interpreting Japanese history through movies (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will view films, mainly Japanese and some Western, and study the interpretations of Japanese history and tradition present in the films. In addition to being a historiographic exercise, the course will examine popular attitudes toward the past.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The modern economic world of international trade and finance is the result of developments which took place in Europe from the early Renaissance through to the Industrial Revolution. This course will examine the foundations of these developments focusing particularly on the pre-modern industrial base of Europe, the change in European trading patterns from a Mediterranean to an Atlantic dominance during the Renaissance, the growth of banking and other financial institutions in the early modern period, and the role of urbanisation as a background to the major economic advances which took place during the Industrial Revolution. This course is open to students from all faculties.

Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination
HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course looks at the manner in which film has portrayed events in history, considering the degree to which film can enhance or be detrimental to our understanding of history. Students may expect to gain some appreciation, not just of the films themselves, but of the degree to which any movie is the product of a certain historical period and reflect its values and preoccupations. This course should be particularly enlightening to students who taking other United States history courses and American Studies majors.

Students are expected to produce one term paper, a comparative study of at least two films, to participate in class discussions, and to make at least one presentation in class.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2034. An Introduction to the history of education in Hong Kong (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The course will provide students with the opportunity to relate educational developments in Hong Kong to contemporary opinion and other socio-economic pressures. It has been designed to introduce students to the perspectives, methods, and resources of history as they can be applied to educational matters and not merely to present a set of non-dispute-worthy “facts” about past Hong Kong schools. As such, it is essentially a form of social history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2035. The Bauhinia and the Lotus: Culture and history of the two SARS (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Prior to the Opium War, Macao was the major theatre for the first encounter between China and the West. After Hong Kong had been ceded to Great Britain by The Nanjing Treaty, Hong Kong soon replaced Macao as the centre for Sino-Western cultural and technical interchange. Even though before 1997 and 1999 both Hong Kong and Macao were under the administration of Western countries, both have remained a predominantly Chinese society with their own unique heritage and history.

The aim of this course is to introduce to the student the development of Hong Kong and Macao’s history and cultural heritage. It emphasizes the role and function of Hong Kong and Macao history in modern and contemporary Chinese history and its cultural interactions with the West.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2037. Germany between the two World Wars: The rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

The inter-war years between 1918 and 1945 were a time of traumatic upheaval in the history of modern Germany. After World War I freedom and democracy in the Weimar Republic were threatened by nationalism, fascism, socialism and communism. These pressures were intensified by economic tensions and high unemployment rates. The miserable conditions contributed to the rise of the Nazis and Adolf Hitler, an extreme nationalist who wanted a reawakened, racially united Germany to expand eastward at the expense of the Slavs. After finally seizing power in 1933, Hitler installed a totalitarian state wiping out all democratic institutions. The Nazi persecution of the Jews and occupation, exploitation and domination of much of continental Europe in World War II became one
of the blackest chapters in the history of Europe. With the fall of Berlin and the suicide of Hitler in 1945, the German people were able to gain freedom and democracy again. In our course we will not concentrate on Hitler alone but study the outcome of World War I and the revolutions of 1918-19 on the mentality of the German people, consider the problems of the fledgling Weimar Republic, and discuss the era of fascism in Germany and Italy, the nazification of culture and society, the Holocaust, and German aggression against Europe in World War II.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2038. Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)**

*This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*

Germany, the largest country in Western Europe, needed a long time to build up a sovereign national state and to develop a common national identity. After the unification was achieved in 1871, internal and external political struggles led the country in two devastating wars in 1914 and 1939. Following the Second World War two independent German republics, controlled by their respective superpowers USA and USSR, developed into a capitalist and communist society. Reunification was finally achieved in 1989/90 by the collapse of the Soviet power in Central Europe. The course surveys the most important developments within the German Imperial Empire, the Weimar Republic, Nazi Germany, and the Federal Republic and German Democratic Republic. We will study topics such as conservatism, liberalism, nationalism, imperialism, and socialism, the two World Wars, and concentrate on the developments and changes of the different political and economic systems in modern German history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2039. War and peace: Conflicts and conflict resolutions since 1945 (6 credits)**

*This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*

War is an extension of politics. True or false? The objective of the course is to understand a) the nature of military conflicts, war and warfare and b) the ways and means of maintaining and keeping peace without resorting to war. In-depth case studies of major conflicts and conflict resolutions will be provided.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2040. Life in Tokugawa Japan, 1603-1868 (6 credits)**

*This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*

Tokugawa society was colourful, interesting, multidimensional and full of energy. The period witnessed great urban expansion and advancement in rural technology. Students will enjoy looking at the ways of life of Tokugawa lords and merchants living in the great cities and castle towns, and that of the peasants in the countryside. The rich cultural life of the period also makes fascinating study.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2042. The history of sport (6 credits)**

*This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*
The course will focus on the development of modern sport in Europe (with a strong British focus), and develop historical themes of class, gender, age, ‘race’ and locality. Particular emphasis will be given to the history of sport in relation to themes such as nationalism, empire and public health, in addition to the role of the state, the media and business in shaping and controlling the nature of contemporary sport. In brief, the course examines how and why sport has been located at the interstices of gender, race and class and has produced, and been generated by, multiple and contested social identities.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)
(108x569)Over the past century and a half, the majority of Europeans have become urban dwellers. On an individual, civic, national and international level, every aspect of social life has been influenced by this evolution. Consequently, the study of cities provides a powerful perspective upon European history. An essential part of the process of urbanisation involved the allocation of urban open spaces to specific social and cultural functions. A key focus for public and private life, the city’s open spaces – parks, gardens, streets and squares – had a fundamental influence upon the nature of urban living. As those in positions of power influenced the provision and purpose of these areas important developments in European social, economic, cultural and political life were linked closely to the evolution of open spaces in cities.
In this course the changing use and allocation of urban open spaces and the evolution of meanings of public and private space will provide a lens through which the development of modern European cities will be analysed. The importance of open spaces will be addressed with recourse to a number of key themes, including the ‘greening’ of cities of the nineteenth century, the construction of ideal Fascist and Socialist cities in the 1930s, functionalism and post-war reconstruction, and the ‘sustainable city’ of the 1990s. By the end of the course the students will not only be more familiar with historical approaches to urban ‘space’ but will also have received an introduction to the evolution of European cities and the changing cultural importance of public and private open spaces.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2062. From empire to EU: Culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).
The course explores British politics, culture and society from the eve of World War I to the dawn of the third millennium. We will analyze and seek to understand some of the fundamental transformations that have occurred over the last century examining a number of prominent themes, including party politics, Britain and Europe, empire and decolonisation, and domestic social transformations. Additionally, we will look closely at how the fortunes of different social groups evolved across the period, focussing in particular on ethnic minorities, women and young people.
This will be an issues-based course, exploring themes of 20th century British history in relation to the wider European context and exploring how they have had an impact on the nature of British and European society today. The subject matter of the course will be shaped around the study of the evolving political system, the effect of industrial (and post-industrial) change on contemporary society, and the relationship of Britain to its former empire, to Europe, and the rest of the world.
Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST2063. Europe and modernity: cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).

In this course we look at key social and cultural aspects of European ‘modernity’ in the nineteenth and twentieth century, exploring in particular the way Europeans from all kinds of backgrounds were defined and defined themselves in relation to work, leisure, race, gender, regions and cities. We look at the impact of new forms of cultural expression such as advertising, cinema, sport and leisure, as well as the identities (of age, class, gender, race and ethnicity) which Europeans adopted and rejected in their pursuit of ways of belonging within the cultural parameters of urban modernity. In relation to this we will consider expressions of enthusiasm for ‘the modern,’ as well as outbursts of dissatisfaction or irritation with modern civilization, expressed not just in aesthetic forms but also in violence against those identified as ‘outsiders.’

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2064. Sweat and abacus: Overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).

This course provides a broad survey of Chinese business development in Southeast Asia from the 15th century until modern times. Through four key themes of migration, diaspora, entrepreneurship and network, this course traces the evolution of the Chinese business communities overseas and examines the growth and expansion of their networks in Southeast Asia. The social, economic and cultural aspects closely associated with the Chinese business history, such as early Chinese migration, dialect organizations, guilds, occupational structure, Chinese merchant culture, as well as the transformation and globalization of Chinese business will also be discussed.

Students will be provided with an opportunity to understand the growth of Chinese business in Southeast Asia from a historical perspective. They will also have the opportunity to examine Chinese migrant and business experiences in a comparative sense with case studies being drawn from various countries of the region.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2065. Workshop in historical research (6 credits)

The research skills and methodologies used by historians are based on the critical analysis of primary and secondary sources. Competency in these skills and an acquaintance with the various methodologies of the historian are central to advanced studies in the historical discipline, but these skills and methodologies are also highly transferable to the workplace. In this course, students will work in small groups on a research project. Learning will be through directed group discussions and coordinated individual research tasks. The course will introduce students to a wide range of historical sources, equip them with the skills to analyse and interpret those sources, and will also encourage students to develop leadership and team-work roles in solving real historical problems.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2066. Narcotic culture: A history of drugs (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).

The course will examine the global history of psychoactive substances from roughly the sixteenth to the twentieth century with special emphasis on opium in China. The first sessions will trace the spread of tobacco, tea, coffee and alcohol across the globe after the fifteenth century, before the uses of opium in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries are elucidated in greater detail. We will also
look at the rise of semi-synthetics, including morphine, heroin and cocaine, in the early twentieth century. The emphasis will be on the social dimensions and cultural meanings of substance use, as we look at context and consumption rather than at questions of policy and supply only: the intricate and diverse ways in which drugs interact, collude and even collaborate with human beings in a range of diverse social contexts give psychoactive substances their particular historical interest. The rise of prohibition in the twentieth century will be critically examined in the light of new scholarship, in particular in the case of China, where the anti-opium campaigns constituted the cornerstone of a growing international movement against ‘drugs’.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2067. Sex, gender and modernity in China (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).
This course is designed to provide the student with the basic knowledge necessary to assess the different theories and problems of gender history and sensitively and electrically to apply these skills to the China-field. We will concentrate on the first half of the twentieth century, although frequent excursions will be made into the late imperial period in order to question the presumed disruption between ‘tradition’ and ‘modernity’. As the course adopts a comparative perspective, it will also provide specific examples from European history, with an emphasis on France and England. A number of case studies will be critically examined in order to highlight the strengths and pitfalls of gender history.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2068. The intellectual history of twentieth-century China (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).
This course follows the thematic approach, with attention paid to both the intellectual leaders and the intellectual developments in China during the twentieth century. The leaders include Liang Qichao, Cai Yuanpei, Chen Duxiu, Hu Shi, Li Dazhao, Lu Xun, Gu Hongming, Lin Shu, Liang Shuming, Tao Xisheng, Chen Yinke, Chen Lifu, Xiong Shili, Zhang Wentian, Qian Mu, etc. The discussion of the intellectual waves focuses on such themes as traditionalism, cultural conservatism, liberalism, westernization, modernization, and Marxism.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2069. The history of American popular culture (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).
From its inception as a nation, the people of the United States have been educated and entertained via modes of vernacular or popular culture. This course moves chronologically from the 18th century to the present looking at various expressions of popular culture as they developed and gained in popularity among the American public. As the course progresses, we will look for connections between popular culture in the U.S. and Asia, particularly in Hong Kong. Drawing on diverse samples of historical evidence (newspapers, magazines, advertisements, circus and vaudeville playbills, political cartoons, radio and television programs, films, and Internet materials, etc.) we will explore difference and common ground between various historical eras and their use of popular culture. Issues to be considered include: The definition of popular culture; Connections between popular culture and the construction of national identity, race, class, gender, ethnicity, and religion; The significance of popular culture in processes such as Americanization/globalization; The
importance of looking historically at the way popular culture helps shape and is shaped by particular events.
Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2070. Stories of self: History through autobiography (6 credits)**

*This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*

Autobiographies – stories of self – have been published in all cultures for centuries and they are still very popular today. In the recent past, autobiographical narratives have become a powerful tool for authors who wish to express their individuality, interrogate and transcend cultural constraints, protest political oppression, heal childhood wounds, run for public office, or pay the rent. Historians looking for “evidence” of the past contained within the autobiography face a variety of fascinating (and often complex) issues. This course, designed for students who are interested in links between autobiography and history, explores the following questions: What can autobiographies teach us about the past? What are the uses/pitfalls of using autobiographies for purposes of historical research? How has the autobiographical form changed over time? What are the links between memory and identity (gender, ethnicity, religious background, caste/class, etc.) in various autobiographies? What how are autobiographies shaped by/reflections of culture? How do historians approach autobiography differently from scholars in other fields? During the term students will read, write, and critique various autobiographical narratives. Text selections will be drawn mostly from the U.S., Hong Kong, and China.
Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2071. Joseph Stalin: His life, policies and historical assessment (6 credits)**

*This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*

This course will focus on the life and policies of Joseph Stalin, leader of the Soviet Union from 1929 up through 1953. He is one of the most significant figures, not only for Russian and European history but for the entire world. His policies impacted on all countries. On a possibly positive side there was the “Stalin Revolution”, which made Russia an advanced and powerful industrial state, able to withstand the Nazi juggernaut. On the negative side, there was the Great Purges, and forced migration of entire peoples. Through repression, Stalin made the Soviet Union into one of the world’s most tightly controlled societies, and the course will examine how and why this occurred. The German invasion of the Soviet Union made Stalin a Generalissimo, and the course will examine Stalin as a Commander of Soviet forces. After the war Stalin contributed to causing the Cold War, and the course will examine how and why. Another section in the course will cover the issue of whether or not there was a Stalinism, and whether it directly resulted from Marxism-Leninism.
Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2072. A history of modern European warfare (6 credits)**

*This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*

This course will survey the evolution of modern warfare through the study of selected episodes in European (an Europe’s two extensions – Russia/Soviet Union and the United States) military, naval, and aerial history from the dynastic and commercial wars of the eighteenth century, the French Revolutionary and Napoleonic Wars, the limited wars during the nineteenth century, the colonial wars, World War I, World War II, the proxy wars during the Cold War, Korea, Vietnam, through the war in Iraq earlier this year. While emphasis will be given to the larger conflicts, such as the two World Wars, attention will be given to less familiar but still important conflicts, such as the Crimean War,
the Boer War, the Russian Civil War, the Spanish Civil War, Algeria and Palestine, and the Afghan Wars. The topics discussed will include causes of wars, technological changes, military strategies and tactics, social and economic changes, genocides, intelligence and espionage, and the use of ideology and propaganda in the conduct of warfare.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2073. Prussia in the age of absolutism and reform, 1648-1815 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).

Brandenburg-Prussia and the Hohenzollern Dynasty dominated the period of German history between the end of the Thirty Years’ War and the French Revolution. Under the Great Elector and the Prussian Kings, Prussia became a military and political power within Europe, demonstrating its strength in many European wars. It also practiced mercantilism, religious toleration and an enlightened absolutism. The reign of King Frederick the Great (1740-1786) is marked by wars, economic initiative, and promotion of Enlightenment ideas. Prussia’s capital Berlin became a European centre of science and culture in those years. During the Napoleonic period, the country was able to start a reform movement that paved the way to a modern German nation state.

The course will be organized around such themes as: political rivalries and wars in the 17th and 18th centuries; economic, social and intellectual changes in early modern Europe and their effects on Brandenburg-Prussia; mercantilism; enlightenment; absolutism and enlightened absolutism; religious toleration; promotion of sciences by academies; the development of Berlin and Potsdam as royal residences; the defeat of the Prussian army by Napoleon; the Prussian Reform Movement of Stein and Hardenberg; and the war of liberation.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2076. Germany and the Cold War (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).

During the Cold War period, Germany was divided into two independent states for more than forty years: The western-oriented Federal Republic of Germany (FRG) and the eastern-oriented German Democratic Republic (GDR). Under the auspices of the respective superpowers, USA and USSR, the Bonn and the East Berlin governments developed their own political and economic systems but also a distinct way of life in society and culture. In the international scene, the FRG was a founding member of the European Communities and became one of their staunchest supporters, while the GDR found itself reduced to satellite status inside the Soviet-dominated Eastern Bloc. The ‘German Question’ remained open until the sudden downfall of the socialist-communist East Berlin regime in 1989 and the peaceful reunification in 1990, events, which also marked the end of the Cold War in Europe.

The course will not only treat Germany as a case study of the Cold War period but will also deal extensively with important phases, milestones and persons in the history of the divided country in a comparative approach.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2077. Eating history: food culture from the 19th century to the present (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).

This course is an introduction to selected aspects of the study of food culture through historical analysis. We will discuss examples of food preparation, distribution, marketing, and consumption from the early 19th Century to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST2078. Renaissance Europe 1453-1648 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The Intellectual upheavals of the Renaissance and Reformation changed the cultural and religious outlook of the whole European continent and opened the way for the emergence of the modern European state. This course therefore begins by considering the classical background to the Renaissance in Europe and seeks to explain how the intellectual changes of the fifteenth and early-sixteenth centuries contributed to the awakening of religious dissent in the 1520s. These developments are placed in the context of the general political history of the period and the course traces their impact through to the end of the Thirty Years’ War.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2079. Early modern Europe 1648-1789 (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines a crucial period of European history in which the emergence of the modern state, the birth of capitalism, and the expansion of European influence into the American and Asian hemispheres laid the foundations of the modern world. While the course concentrates primarily on political changes in Europe between the Thirty Years’ War and the French Revolution, considerable attention will also be paid to social, economic and cultural developments in this period. This course therefore provides a backdrop to the events of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries which have helped to shape modern Europe.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2085. The history of modern sexual identity and discourse (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will focus on two ‘new sciences’ arising in the late nineteenth century that have shaped the modern understanding of sexual behaviour – sexology and psychoanalysis. It will look at some of the key thinkers who pioneered sexology – such as Havelock Ellis, Edmund Carpenter, Richard von Krafft-Ebing, and Maria Stopes – alongside the acknowledged founder of psychoanalysis Sigmund Freud. It will investigate primary sources in sexual science that have been subject to censorship and not generally available, until recently, for comparative study with Freudian discourse. Though the texts of sexology and psychoanalysis often start from different premises, all have been instrumental in the development of modern sexual language, assumptions and practices. It will contextualize their collective thinking by considering the impact of the emergent women’s movement, of Darwin’s evolutionary theory, of urban culture, and of secular modernity. It will study the historiographical debate (particularly among gay and feminist theorists) as to whether these early investigators of sexology and psychoanalysis formulated progressive or repressive, revolutionary or conservative definitions of sexuality. It will explore the far-reaching consequences that these thinkers have had on attitudes to the body and people in the form of reproductive control, eugenics, race, homosexuality, the ‘woman question,’ and the politics of sexual identity.
Assessment: 100% coursework

Seminar Courses. Except for the Theory and Practice of History and the Dissertation elective, the seminar courses listed may not be offered every year. Students should consult the Department to find out which Seminars are to be offered each year.
CHIN2235. **Sources and methodology (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course intends to provide a thorough training in research methodology related to the study of Chinese history. The ideas of noted ancient and contemporary Chinese historians will be drawn on. Particular emphasis is placed on the use of reference works and information search through internet. Assessment: 100% coursework

---

GEOG2060. **An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

How do you know where you are going until you know where you have been? This course will introduce students to the role archaeology has played in the construction of humanity’s history and prehistory. It is intended to be a broad survey of the discipline, its discoveries, scientific and analytical tools and applications. The course will assist students in recognizing new cultural dimension within the landscape around them and provide a sound basis for further study here or abroad. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination

---

HIST2032. **Case studies in women’s history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This seminar course will explore themes and issues in women’s history/gender history in the 19th and 20th century. By focusing on Hong Kong and the U.S., students will work within a comparative framework to explore difference and common ground between societies and selected historical periods. Topics include: varieties of women’s reform movements, gender and World War II, and gender and economic transformation in the late 20th century. Assessment: 100% coursework

---

HIST2048. **The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Responses to and representations of young people provide a valuable insight into the values of the society and the culture which generated them. The aim of this course will be to compare changing experiences of growing up with evolving representations of the life-stages used to identify the young (childhood, adolescence and youth) in nineteenth- and twentieth century Europe. It therefore considers what it has meant to be young in different times and places. Through comparison of experiences and representations the course will reconsider the validity of terms used to describe the young, highlight the social, political and cultural motives for advancing different roles and representations young people and generate a broad insight into regional patterns of similarity and difference in the European history of this demographic group. This course aims to teach students the importance of the historical context in shaping young people’s lives by addressing variables such as class, gender and race. It will also introduce students to a variety of different methodological and theoretical approaches to the topic. Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST2052. Social issues in Hong Kong history (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Based on the reading and analysis of documentary sources, this course will explore social problems such as the survival of Chinese customs, poverty, social mobility, housing, immigration and emigration, and professionalization during Hong Kong’s colonial period.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course focuses upon the emergence and development of the Cold War in the 1940s and 1950s. It takes into account the new scholarship based on evidence from former Soviet, Eastern European, and Chinese archives since the early 1990s. Students are expected to make extensive use of documentary sources.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2074. Historical studies using computers (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Computers and information technology play an increasingly important role in historical research and teaching. This course will take up a problem in contemporary history and investigate it using information technology to the fullest extent. The course is run in conjunction with a course taking place at The College of William and Mary, Williamsburg, Virginia, USA, and most classes will use internet video conferencing so that teachers and students at W&M and HKU can continuously interact. The course offers a range of skill-learning opportunities for students who intend to pursue historical studies at advanced levels. It will also be valuable to students who wish to teach history in the schools where information technology has become common under government initiatives.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2075. Directed reading (6 credits)
The aims and objectives of this intensive reading course are to provide the opportunity for students to pursue a specialized topic with a faculty member. Throughout the semester, the student and teacher will consult regularly on the direction of the readings and on the paper or papers (not to exceed 5,000 words) that will demonstrate the student’s understanding of the material. This course cannot normally be taken before the fourth semester of candidature and subject to approval by the Head of Department.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2080. Classroom across the Pacific: American history and anthropology (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will study aspects of American history, culture and anthropology. Like HIST2074 Historical Studies Using Computers, this course is an internet-based classroom: all lectures will use internet video conferencing and other technologies to link classrooms and students at HKU and The College of William and Mary. At the end of the teaching period, HKU students will take a field trip to the United States to complete research projects through cooperative field work with their American
counterparts. The students will conduct independent research projects in consultation with each other on an issue of central focus relevant to American history and culture, to be determined each year.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2081. Gender and history: Beauty, fashion and sex (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
How do societies define what it means to be a man and a woman? Everyone, whatever their age, sex or social status, has an opinion on this issue, even if this is not always articulated consciously. Often, in fact, ideas about gender - the relations between the two sexes - are assumed to be ‘natural’ or ‘normal’ and timeless. However, by analysing the question of what being a ‘man’ and being a ‘woman’ means at different times and in different places this course sets out to illustrate how these identities are socially constructed. HIST2081 aims to introduce students to the various ways through which scholars have sought to understand gender over time. Beginning with the earliest efforts to write ‘women’s history,’ selections from the recent deluge of historical writing and new research on gender will be highlighted.

The topics to be covered will include beauty norms, dress reform, prostitution, women’s suffrage, the impact of War on constructions of manhood and womanhood, permissiveness in the ‘swinging’ sixties and so on, down to the present day. A comparative geographical focus will be used, and the course will draw on a wide variety of material from the Early Modern period to the 21st Century, to facilitate the study of changing gender norms.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2082. Europe and its other (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is an interdisciplinary exploration of European perception and understanding of non-European peoples and cultures from the 18th – 20th centuries. The objective of the course is to show how Western representations of non-Europeans were shaped by the various political debates, scientific theories and colonial ideology that dominated European societies of the time. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze a wide range of primary materials that include visual documents, travel narratives, fiction, scientific texts, philosophical treatises, and documentaries.
Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST2083. Gender, sexuality and empire (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course investigates the ways in which concepts of gender and sexuality have been used in British and French imperial discourse during the 19th and 20th centuries to manage their relationships with the colonized peoples and to showcase the superiority of European civilization. Part one of the course examines how the male colonial identities were constructed through the sexualization of the colonized subjects while the second half of the course focuses on the multiple roles of European women in the colonies. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze different types of historical narratives ranging from archival documents, personal memoirs and correspondence, travel accounts to autobiographical texts.
Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST2084. Sexing the spirit: The history of the modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Surveys of mainstream feminism have generally omitted the subject of faith. They have taken as a given wholesale feminist hostility to Christianity and have concluded that religion has little importance in the life of modern women. Recent global events are a reminder however that religion remains a passionate if volatile force in contemporary culture and politics. This course will consider a history that has been overlooked – the critical engagement of modern feminism with Christianity. The course will begin with two mid-twentieth century events that have proved to be crucial catalysts in the active feminist response to Christian religion. The first was the ordination of Florence Li Tim Oi as the first Anglican woman priest in Hong Kong in 1944. The second was Simone de Beauvoir’s publication of The Second Sex in 1949. Li’s courageous war-time decision to pioneer female entrance into the all-male clerical establishment constitutes a reformist engagement with Christianity, while De Beauvoir’s rejection of Christianity as a patriarchal institution oppressive to women reflects a more radical and uncompromising stance. Their two positions can be read as representational of the compatibility/incompatibility, reform/revolutionist debate that feminists have had with Christianity since the rise of second wave feminism in the 1960s.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST3015. The theory and practice of history (6 credits)

(This course is open to third-year students only.)

This course aims to acquaint students with some of the theoretical and practical considerations which underlie the study and writing of history by considering the development of the discipline of history from its beginnings in the ancient world through to the postmodernist critique. The course is especially recommended to those who wish to pursue history at the postgraduate level. All students taking the Dissertation elective are required to take The theory and practice of history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST3017. Dissertation elective (12 credits)

(This course is open to third-year students only.)

This is a research course which requires submission of an extended written dissertation. All students taking the Dissertation elective are required to take The theory and practice of history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

HIST3022. History by numbers: quantitative methods in History (6 credits)

(This course is open to third-year students only.)

This course seeks to introduce students to the various quantitative approaches used by historians in their research and to provide an opportunity for students to learn to use some of these methodologies in a workshop environment. Its focus is therefore both theoretical and practical, and students will learn skills which will be readily transferable to the workplace. This course is available only for History majors in their final year of study.

Assessment: 100% coursework
HIST3023. History research project (6 credits)

(This course is open to third-year students only.) Students who wish to undertake a research project on a specialized historical topic in either semester of their final year of study may enroll in this course with the approval of the Head of Department. The course aims at providing an opportunity for intensive research leading to the production of a long essay (not exceeding 7,000 words) which will be supervised by a faculty member with expertise in the chosen area of study. This course is open only to History majors and minors.
Assessment: 100% coursework

Department of Japanese Studies

First Year

Compulsory Courses

JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.) Introduction to Japanese studies aims to provide a broad-based description of Japanese society and culture. The course will cover various different aspects of Japan, such as history, geography, politics and government, religion and literature. Students will be assigned to a tutorial group either in the first or second semester. This course is available primarily for those Arts Faculty students who enrol in Japanese language, but students from other faculties may also take the course subject to available places.
Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations, essay assignments, etc).

JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)

This introductory course is designed for total beginners in the study of the Japanese language. The fundamentals of the Japanese language are presented through a carefully graded syllabus. To cultivate overall Japanese-language ability, emphasis will be placed equally in developing all the four basic skills in speaking, listening, reading and writing.
Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, assignments/class performance and final oral test).

N.B. For pedagogical reasons, some of the classes in this course will be taught in Cantonese. Non-Cantonese speakers should ensure that they are in a class taught through the medium of English. Since Chinese characters will not be specifically taught but will be an integrated part of the course, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should seek the advice of their teacher at the beginning of the semester.

JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)

This elementary Japanese course continues to focus on proficiency-based foreign language learning, developing the students’ overall Japanese-language ability established in Part 1. While the focus is on a thorough understanding of basic Japanese grammar, it also aims to develop communicative competence in a diversity of situations. At the end of the course, the successful learner’s proficiency level should reach a level of proficiency adequate for the transition to higher-level Japanese studies in the second year.
Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, assignments/class performance, and final
oral test).
Prerequisite: JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1)

N.B. Since Chinese characters will not be specifically taught but will be an integrated part of the course, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should seek the advice of their teacher at the beginning of the semester.

Optional Courses

JAPN1009. Introduction to Japanese linguistics (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The course is an introductory linguistics course with particular reference to the Japanese language. The language will be viewed from both diachronic and synchronic perspectives and frequent cross linguistic comparisons are made with Cantonese, Mandarin and English. The purpose is to stimulate interest in this particular language and facilitate the acquisitional process while promoting general understanding of human language behaviour, which is deemed important to the interested second language learner.
Assessment: 100% coursework (reading assignment summaries, test, presentation, midterm paper and term project).

JAPN1066. Japanese language I(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)

(This course is offered to first and second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is open to first and second year non-BA students with no previous knowledge of the Japanese language. It aims to provide the fundamental knowledge of Japanese language and is intended to help students build basic linguistic and communicative skills in Japanese.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester.

JAPN1077. Japanese language I(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)

(This course is offered to first and second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is continuation of Japanese language I (a) (Part 1) and provides a balanced training in reading, writing, speaking and listening to develop students’ Japanese language ability established in Part 1.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.
Prerequisite: JAPN1066 Japanese language I(a) (Part 1)

Second and Third Years

Second Year Courses


This tutorial-based language-intensive course is primarily a reading course only offered to second-year students who have successfully completed JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1) and JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2). The course aims to develop the students’ reading skills
through guided readings on Japanese culture and society. As the students learn to read more fluently, they also become aware of and enhance their knowledge of Japanese culture, and improve their linguistic skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework (weekly assignments, vocabulary quizzes, comprehension tests, project work (short report and presentation)).

Prerequisite: JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2)

JAPN2007. Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)

This is a tutorial-based language-intensive course for second year students. It aims to introduce students to the richness of Japanese literature, through careful study of a number of modern short stories. Students will be required to read original Japanese texts written by representative writers. Themes and ideas in the stories will be thoroughly discussed. Literary styles and techniques of different writers will be analysed and contrasted in order to enhance students’ analytical power and critical thinking. Another aim of the course is to improve students’ reading and speaking skills through literary appreciation and discussion. Grammatical explanation will be given in class in order to facilitate understanding.

Assessment: 100% coursework (tests, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

Prerequisite: JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2)

JAPN2008. Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This language-intensive course aims to provide students with skills in translating Japanese texts into English. Students will have the opportunity to learn how to analyse Japanese sentences in detail and translate them accurately into idiomatic English. We start with simple texts which are chosen to demonstrate a variety of sentence structures, and gradually we progress to more complicated texts, dealing with topics studied in some of the content courses. Various types of special vocabulary and style will be introduced as the course progresses. Students will be expected to prepare for class by working on the texts before coming to class. There will be a number of written assignments in which the students will have to analyse sentence structures and prepare written translations of short texts.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1) and JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2) or JAPN2020 Japanese language II(a).

Corequisite: JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1) and JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2) or JAPN3066 Japanese language III(a) (Part 1) and JAPN3077 Japanese language III(a) (Part 2)


This language-intensive course aims to provide students with basic skills in translating Japanese texts into Chinese and vice versa. Students will translate short, simple texts, chosen to illustrate various sentence patterns in Chinese and Japanese. Texts with more complex structures with a variety of vocabulary and style will gradually be introduced to build up students’ skills. Students will be familiarised with a number of reference tools useful in Chinese/Japanese translation and will use them in their work.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Corequisite: JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1) and JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)
JAPN2032. The changing image of Hong Kong in Japanese writings (6 credits)

This is a tutorial-based language-intensive course for second year students. Throughout the 19th and 20th centuries, numerous Japanese travellers visited Hong Kong for various purposes. As a highly modernized city with a colonial atmosphere, Hong Kong made a very strong impression on these travellers. Japanese records and articles about Hong Kong are thus abundant. In this course, representative passages will be selected and studied in their original texts.

Through reading these materials, we aim to enhance students’ understanding of Hong Kong-Japan relations. Typical images or views of Japanese people on Hong Kong will be investigated in association with their background. Events such as anti-Japan riots, the Diaoyutai issue and the phenomenon of the popularity of Japanese culture among youngsters, which have significant influence on Hong Kong-Japan relations, will be looked at and discussed.

As a language-intensive course, we also aim to improve the students’ reading capacity by exposing them to various styles of writings. Writing techniques and the presentation of argument will also be noted to strengthen the students’ analytical power and critical thinking.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

JAPN2036. Japanese text analysis (3 credits)

The course will use a variety of samples of short Japanese texts which will be read and explained in interactive tutorials. The course objectives are to train students in grammatical and textual analysis of Japanese texts. The aim is to enhance students’ understanding of complex grammatical structures, to enable students to analyse and differentiate among different text types, and to grasp the textual elements that ensure the cohesion and coherence of a text. The course has no text book apart from material prepared (and put on Web CT) by the teacher. Students are however expected to use reference works on Japanese grammar as well as dictionaries. This course is a prerequisite for taking JAPN3007 Translation II - Japanese –English in the third year.

Assessment: 100% coursework (50% participation, 50% tests and assignments).

JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)

This course is a continuation of JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2), and covers elementary Japanese grammar. It is a balanced course involving reading, writing, speaking and listening comprehension. The course aims to provide students with fundamental Japanese language ability.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, and assignments).

Prerequisite: JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2) or equivalent

N.B. This course is designed for students who have studied only part of elementary Japanese grammar. Students with special/additional Japanese language background (e.g. Those who have attended language courses outside the university, have lived in Japan, or have Japanese parents) should consult the teachers first to determine the suitability of taking the course. Students may be required to take a qualifying examination.

JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)

This course is a continuation of JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1), and basic grammar will be completely covered. More training will be provided to enable the students to successfully use the basic grammar already learnt to express themselves in natural and fluent Japanese. Real everyday learning materials will be used to encourage autonomous learning. At the end of the course, the successful learner should have acquired the necessary Japanese language ability and study skills to
lead to intermediate level of Japanese proficiency and increased autonomous learning in the third year. Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, and assignments).

Prerequisite: JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1)

N.B. This course is designed for students who have studied only part of elementary Japanese grammar. Students with special/additional Japanese language background (e.g. Those who have attended language courses outside the university, have lived in Japan, or have Japanese parents) should consult the teachers first to determine the suitability of taking the course. Students may be required to take a qualifying examination.

Third Year Courses

JAPN3003. Selected readings in Japanese studies (6 credits)

This tutorial-based language-intensive course provides an opportunity to read and discuss prescribed Japanese texts in a specific field of Japanese Studies, and is open to third year students who have successfully completed JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1) and JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2) and at least one language-intensive course. The texts are selected with a view to improving the level of Japanese language proficiency of the third year students.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)

JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)

This interdisciplinary content course looks at selected works of fiction written by postwar Japanese writers. Students will be expected to read, understand and analyse representative works of the writers in their original Japanese. Themes, literary techniques and styles of the various fictional works used in the course will be critically discussed in order to help students understand and enjoy Japanese literature in greater depth.

Assessment: 100% coursework (discussions and essay assignment).

Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)

JAPN3005. Media Japanese (6 credits)

This language-intensive course is designed to further enhance students’ listening ability of the Japanese language by means of intensive listening to the current Japanese news programme – primarily internet television and radio. Heavy emphasis will be placed on current affairs in Japan.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quizzes).

Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)

JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9 credits)

This interdisciplinary content course may be taken only by third year students who have taken at least 54 credits as part of their BA in Japanese Studies, and who wish to specialize in a particular topic. This topic is to be selected, approved, and discussed under the tutorial guidance of a supervisor, before being written up in either English or Japanese as an extended research essay. The minimum length required is 8,000 words in English, or 10,000 Japanese characters.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
JAPN3007. Translation II - Japanese – English (6 credits)

This advanced translation course aims to help students acquire the necessary skills and strategies to be able to render a variety of Japanese texts into appropriate English. The first objective of the course is to improve the students’ competence in both the original language (Japanese) and the target language (English). Students are expected to acquire the necessary grammatical and analytical tools to reach a grammatically and semantically correct understanding of the Japanese text. This objective will be attained through practical exercises in translating Japanese texts into English, both in class and as homework. The second objective is to introduce the students to a number of translation strategies and concepts which can help them evaluate their own translations and those of others. Various approaches to translation and their appropriateness for different types of texts will be discussed. This objective will be reached through lectures, handouts, and practical exercises in evaluating particular translations in terms of the theories introduced.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.
Prerequisite: JAPN2008 Translation I (Japanese into English) and JAPN2036 Japanese text analysis (from 2006/2007)

JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)

This interdisciplinary content course looks at the contemporary Japanese popular music scene since World War Two. The main approach used will be anthropological rather than musicological or ethno-musicological. The course will take a close look at how the Japanese popular music industry was established and developed. It will also examine how the images of particular popular singers and songs were constructed by the music industry, and then revised to take account of the response of audiences. We will also explore the social and historical situation in which the popularity of a particular singer and song reflects.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignment, quiz and test).
Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)
Corequisite: JAPN3088 Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN3099 Japanese language III (Part 2)

JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)

This interdisciplinary content course, introduces contemporary Japanese filmmakers (e.g. Iwai Shunji, Kitano, Takeshi, etc.) and their works. Students will read part of scenarios of their major films, watch the films (with Japanese, English and/or Chinese subtitle) and discuss them all in Japanese.

The course aims to enhance the students’ skills of reading/listening/watching Japanese films and their scenarios, to provide them with the basic knowledge about Japanese films and their makers and to offer opportunities to discuss on Japanese films in Japanese.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentation and discussions).
Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)

JAPN3010. Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)

This language-intensive course is a continuation of JAPN2009 Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese). It aims to further develop students’ skills in translating more complex passages written in Japanese and Chinese. Passages will be chosen from established sources in Chinese and Japanese covering various topics and subjects.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.
Corequisite: JAPN3088 Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN3099 Japanese language III
JAPN3011. Japanese in popular culture (6 credits)

This language-intensive course introduces a variety of Japanese found in fairy tales, children’s songs, TV programmes, magazines, manga, anime, popular songs, poems and others. The course aims to provide the students with an opportunity to expose themselves to the various forms of Japanese and to enhance their Japanese language ability. This is a tutorial-based language-intensive course, taught in small groups.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentations and essay assignments)
Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)

JAPN3014. Project in Japanese business (6 credits)

This interdisciplinary content course is designed to integrate the student’s knowledge of the Japanese language, society and culture, and to apply that knowledge to a practical internship with a Japanese business organization. Through a short-term internship, the student will gain real life experience dealing with Japanese managers while perfecting his or her communication and interpersonal skills in a Japanese business environment. Following the internship, the students will analyse and report in an essay the problems that he or she has encountered in light of theoretical frameworks.

Assessment: 100% coursework (Proposal, Project, and Essay).
Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2) and at least one language-intensive course and two interdisciplinary content courses.

JAPN3015. Business Japanese I (3 credits)

This is a language-intensive course for third year students. There is one class a week. The class will concentrate on basic skills for spoken business Japanese and on the appropriate behavior that needs to accompany it. Students will learn language styles, vocabulary, and phraseology to deal with a variety of business situations. Those who plan to take Business Japanese II (JAPN3016) are normally required to take this course unless they obtain special permission from the course teachers.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignments, quizzes, and oral interview test)

JAPN3016. Business Japanese II (6 credits)

This is a language-intensive course for third year students. There are two classes a week. One class will concentrate on reading and understanding business correspondence and other business documents. Students will learn the formats required in Japanese business correspondence, and how to structure business correspondence on a variety of topics. They will increase their knowledge of formal honorific written Japanese, as well as specialized business vocabulary, in order to allow them to understand and compose these documents. The second class complements Business Japanese I (JAPN3015), which is offered in the first semester. The class will go beyond the basics of spoken business Japanese and focus on more advanced interactive skills. Students will learn appropriate language styles, vocabulary, and phraseology to deal with a variety of business situations.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken.
Prerequisite: JAPN3015 Business Japanese I / permission from the course lecturers otherwise.
JAPN3020. Advanced translation, Japanese to Chinese (6 credits)

This language-intensive course aims to promote students’ skills in translating Japanese texts into Chinese. Through discussions and regular practices, students will learn about the subtleties and complexities of Japanese expressions, and how to render them into fluent Chinese. To familiarize students with different genres of writings, various kinds of Japanese texts, for example newspaper articles, literary works etc. will be introduced. A small translation project will be incorporated to enhance language competence and translation skills.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.


(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This language course is open to students who have successfully completed Japanese language II(a). The course provides further training for the students to obtain a balanced range of language skills. In addition, the course is designed to enhance students’ understanding of Japanese society and culture so that they can use the obtained skills appropriately.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester.
Prerequisite: JAPN2020 Japanese language II(a).

JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a)(Part 2) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is a continuation of Japanese language III(a) (Part 1). It aims to consolidate students’ Japanese knowledge through oral practices and other classroom activities, and further develop their language skills. This course is open to students who have successfully completed Japanese language III(a) (Part 1).

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.
Prerequisite: JAPN3066 Japanese language III(a) (Part 1)

JAPN3088. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)

This language course is a continuation of JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2), and offers a balanced range of language skills, but with an additional emphasis on the applications of linguistic principles and methodology, and on reading skills both general and specialized.

Assessment: 100% coursework (test, quizzes, presentation, homework/portfolio)
Prerequisite: JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2) or equivalent.

JAPN3099. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)

This language course is a continuation of JAPN3088 Japanese language III (Part 1) and again offers a balanced range of language skills, but with an additional emphasis on the applications of linguistic principles and methodology, and on reading skills both general and specialized.

Assessment: 100% coursework (test, quizzes, presentation, homework/portfolio)
Prerequisite: JAPN3088 Japanese language III (Part 1)

Second and Third Year Courses

JAPN2003. Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)

This general survey interdisciplinary content course deals with Japanese novels, poems, and plays. The aim of this course is to provide students with a basic knowledge of the historical development of Japanese literature. The course covers Japanese myth, monogatari, waka, renga, and haiku. Assessment: 100% coursework (tests, presentation(s) and essay assignment). Prerequisite: Basic Japanese language knowledge is required.


(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course - taught by lectures and tutorials - focuses on various aspects of Japanese business. It is particularly concerned with the social organization and culture of the Japanese salaryman, and deals with such varied topics as company socialization, decision-making, management procedures, gender relations, leisure activities, sake drinking, and so on. The course is open to both second- and third-year students of Japanese Studies, as well as to students from other departments and faculties who may have an academic interest in its contents. Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects & final essays).

JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course - taught by lectures and tutorials - is designed to provide undergraduate students specializing in Japanese Studies with a comprehensive introduction to, and understanding of, certain aspects of contemporary Japanese society. As such it will focus on such themes as comics, tourism, sexuality, and TV dramas. Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects & final essays).

JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)

This interdisciplinary content course will examine the history of Chinese-Japanese relations in the context of East Asian world order up to the early twentieth century. Attention will be paid to the fact that the transfer of Chinese culture from China to Japan throughout history has been as much a political process as a cultural one both for China and Japan. The reverse flow of ‘acquired’ Western culture from Meiji Japan to China in the early twentieth century will also be examined in some detail in order to provide a comparative perspective on the modernization of the two countries. Students must be able to read Chinese. A knowledge of Japanese will be helpful. Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations and essays).

JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course - taught by lectures and tutorials - concentrates on the study of
Japanese enterprise groupings. It will start with three major theoretical perspectives on economic organizations - structural, strategic, and institutional - to enable students to theoretically understand Japanese enterprise groupings. The histories of different enterprise groupings, their operation, and the function these groupings serve will then be examined. As such it will focus on such topics as the special roles of main banks, general trading firms, insurance companies, core member corporations of the groupings, and the so-called preferential trading between core large corporations and their peripheral companies. Finally, the discussion of these topics will be placed in the context of Japanese and American trade conflicts so that students can have a general understanding of the conflicts.

Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects & final essays).

---

**JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I**

**Comparative phonology (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course will detail the phonological components of Japanese and Cantonese through extensive reading of current theories and a contrastive analysis. Besides construing both common and specific traits of the sound system of human languages, the course will help students familiarize themselves with the most common sets of transcription used in language studies which include the most important one, the International Phonetic Alphabets (IPA).

Assessment: 100% coursework (a series of transcription tests and a final project on comparative studies).

Prerequisite: JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2), or JAPN2033 Japanese language I(b) or Certificate Japanese Courses

---

**JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course looks at various aspects of art and popular culture in Japan. It will mainly focus on contemporary Japan, looking at (for example) television, manga (comics), music, tea ceremony, and ceramic art. The main approach used will be anthropological/sociological. We will look at the production and consumption of art and popular culture. How is it produced, by whom, and for whom? Who engages in these artistic or cultural activities, how, and why? We will ask what we can learn about Japanese society by looking at the way cultural and artistic activities are organized and engaged in. We will also look at some examples of art and popular culture in contemporary Japan – such as comics and television dramas – and ask what these texts tell us about Japanese society. Possibilities for coursework include the analysis of such texts and their penetration into other East Asian societies, including Hong Kong. However, it should be noted that a high standard of analysis will be demanded and the theoretical content is significant.

Assessment: 100% coursework (two essays, oral presentation and tutorial participation)

---

**JAPN2019. Communication and society (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course explores the social behaviour of Japanese people that is embedded in their language use. A sociolinguistic approach to Japanese culture is promoted through students’ active participation in the empirical analyses of language variation such as dialects, gender difference, and age markers. Coursework also includes the examination of problems that frequently occur in cross-cultural communication.
Assessment: 100% coursework (project, presentation, journal writing, essays).
Prerequisite: JAPN1099 language I (Part 2) or equivalent

JAPN2024. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III
Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course firstly focuses on theoretical discussion of grammatical peculiarities of the two languages in question, from the perspective as two rather distinctively typed natural languages of the world. Next, they are examined and contrasted in relation to potential problem areas when they are respectively considered as the source language as well as the target language in the course of acquisition, i.e. for Cantonese native speakers learning Japanese, and vice versa.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assessment portfolio including lecture and reading summaries, tests presentation and term paper).

JAPN2026. Japanese language III extended (6 credits)

This language-intensive course is designed for students who have spent one year studying in Japan or who have a similar level of proficiency in Japanese*. The course introduces activities that integrate the four language skills, listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Coursework assignments include discussions, role-plays, debating, summarizing written documents, expressing opinions in essays, oral presentations, etc. Some of the topics covered in the course are: self-improvement, cultural comparisons, social issues, and international relations.

(* For these students, a recommendation from a teacher of Department of Japanese Studies is required).
Assessment: 100% coursework (classroom performance, homework, project).

JAPN2027. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II
Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Potential areas of native language interference in the acquisition of the pronunciation system in a foreign language are illustrated by native speakers of Cantonese and Japanese. Theoretical discussions and knowledge in JAPN2016 Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I are used as a basis for training students to predict areas of interference in this interdisciplinary content course. Languages such as English, Mandarin, French and Korean will be cited for relevant reference.

Assessment: 100% coursework (tutorial tasks, test, and a final project on pedagogy).
Prerequisite: JAPN2016 Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I - Comparative phonology

JAPN2029. Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This interdisciplinary content course introduces the way in which Japanese popular music was integrated into the Hong Kong music scene in the 1980s when the influence of Japanese popular
music became highly visible. To do so, firstly we will take a close look at the popular music scene in Japan in the 1970s and the 1980s. Secondly, we will examine how socio-political developments in Hong Kong shaped the characteristics of the local popular music industry and affected the way it has selected, imported, and distributed Japanese popular music. Furthermore, the course will look at the changes in the way Japanese popular music was consumed in Hong Kong from the 1990s to the present. By so doing, it aims to give the students an introduction to the contemporary popular music scene in Hong Kong and Japan. The main approach used will be social scientific rather than musicological.
Assessment: 100% coursework (quiz, test and essay).

**JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This interdisciplinary content course focuses on intercultural communication involving Japanese professionals. We will explore how and why members of different groups misunderstand each other in spoken, written and electronically mediated communication. We will consider the ways in which people use language to claim and to display their own complex and multiple identities. Rather than imposing one style on all Japanese or Chinese people, we will take a situation-based approach to professional communication across cultures.
Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays)

**JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This interdisciplinary content course introduces students to the workings of the electronic media in Japan. We will focus on the following three areas: coverage of the Hong Kong handover; TV documentary programmes on international affairs; and Japanese TV entertainment programmes available in Hong Kong. We will examine how the Japanese media covered the 1997 handover in comparison with other international media organisations. Students will then watch and analyse feature-length documentaries that influenced subsequent decisions of Japanese Government officials. In addition, we will consider how Hong Kong Chinese have distributed and consumed Japanese cartoons, dramas and entertainment shows since the 1970s.
Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays)

**JAPN2034. Education in contemporary Japanese society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Education in contemporary Japan has been both praised for being child-centred and humanistic, and criticized as pressurized and exam-focused. This course tries to sort out the myths from the realities. We look at education from preschools to high schools, and find out how serious problems like bullying and exam pressure really are. We also ask if Japanese education gives all children an equal chance, and look at how Japanese children who have lived overseas cope when they return. A visit to the Japanese schools in Hong Kong is arranged as part of the course, allowing those who take the course to see Japanese education with their own eyes.
Assessment: 100% coursework (two essays, oral presentation and class participation)
JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course aims to provide students with an overall knowledge of gender issues in contemporary Japan and Hong Kong. It aims to help students develop an awareness of gender issues in daily life in their own society, as well as to gain knowledge of the historical and cultural background for modern gender roles. The course encourages students to form independent opinions and ideas and to present them cogently and persuasively in speech and writing. Students are also expected to reflect on their own gender role and their assumptions about gender differences, as well as gender discrimination in their own society. Through lectures and tutorials we shall explore various sides of women’s lives in Japan while comparing with Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework (a research project, reflections, presentations, participation in group discussions)

JAPN2066. Japanese language II(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)

(This course is offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is a continuation of Japanese language I (a). It aims to provide a quick and effective way to learn essential Japanese, thereby establishing a solid foundation for study of Japanese at a higher level. To make the most of the course, students must commit themselves to working outside the classroom, for example, memorizing the new vocabulary and doing the weekly written and listening exercises. The course is open to the second and third year students of all other faculties.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour examination at the end of the first semester.

Prerequisite: JAPN1007 Japanese language I(a)

JAPN2077. Japanese language II(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)

(This course is offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is a continuation of Japanese language II (a) (Part 1). It aims to consolidate what students have learned in Japanese language II (a) (Part 1). To make most of the course, students must commit themselves to working outside the classroom, for example, memorizing the new vocabulary and doing the weekly written and listening exercises. The course is open to the second and third year students of all other faculties who have completed and passed the examination of Japanese language II (a) (Part 1).

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: JAPN2066 Japanese language II(a) (Part 1)

Programme in Language and Communication

First Year course

LCOM1001. Introduction to language and communication (6 credits)

In this course, students will be acquainted with two central concepts of language and communication, the concept of a “linguistic situation” and the concept of a “communicative situation.” The former relates language(s) to broader social factors in a given geographical unit and touches upon a number of fields of sociolinguistic investigation (e.g., language and power, bi- and multilingualism, contact
languages, language policy and language planning, language and culture, language attitudes, language and ethnicity/identity). Students will research one specific area of a particular linguistic situation and present their findings in class. In turn, the concept of a communicative situation applies to actual linguistic encounters. It is constituted by numerous interrelated variables, as, among other things, the type of communicative situation, the social organizations, the location, the ‘players’ involved, their roles, etc. Students will explore different kinds of communicative situations. They will learn to evaluate the corresponding linguistic behavior and to identify potential sources of conflict, for example in intercultural encounters, where different expectations and conventions regarding a specific kind of communicative situation may collide.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Second and Third Year courses

LCOM2001. Theories of language and communication (6 credits)

The core course following LCOM1001 widens the scope to include theoretical discussions of language and communication. First, we will look at assumptions about language and the philosophical positions they are based on, their merits and shortcomings, as well as possible points of contact between them. Here, students or groups of students will look closer into any one of the assumptions, find exemplary linguistic studies which are based on this particular assumption, and present and discuss them critically in class. Then, we will turn to models/metaphors of communication, for example, the conduit metaphor, the toolmaker model, the notion of ‘language game,’ and a game-theoretical understanding of communication. Students will investigate how these models of communication are expressed in the languages they study. An examination of these different models of communication will also enable the students to understand the difference between subjectivist, objectivist, and constructionist conceptions of communication.

Assessment: 100% coursework

LCOM3001. Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)

This course will look at the interrelatedness of culture and language. First, some influential ideas in the history of linguistics (by Humboldt and Whorf) concerning this topic will be discussed. Then, students will be acquainted with the latest developments in Cultural Linguistics and Cognitive Sociolinguistics, new branches of Cognitive Linguistics that specifically deal with culture-specific realizations in language and language varieties. These methods, which allow for a better understanding of cultural meaning, will be carried over to the field of intercultural communication, where functionalist approaches have dominated so far. In their final project, students will be required to apply some of the methods introduced in the seminar to elicit culture-specific realizations in linguistic varieties of their choice.

Assessment: 100% coursework

LCOM3002. Dissertation elective (12 credits)

Language Centre

Arabic Courses

First Year
LANG1036. Arabic for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims to teach complete beginners the basics of Arabic with respect to the four linguistic skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Students will also be introduced to the cultures and societies of the Arabic speaking world. Vocabulary and grammar will be presented in a communicative way for a variety of situations, e.g. making introductions, leave-taking, giving directions, buying things, making telephone calls and so on. The emphasis will be on the spoken language, as well as on providing a foundation of basic Arabic script.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG1037. Arabic for beginners - Part II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is a continuation of Arabic for beginners – Part I.
Pre-requisite: Arabic for beginners – Part I.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second Year

LANG2052. Arabic II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of Arabic for beginners – Part II. The aim of this course is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate materials and a variety of teaching techniques including work with authentic audiovisual resources. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Arabic and develop further their production and reception skills.
Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Arabic II will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to Arabic II without having previously completed Arabic for beginners – Part II and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.
Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.
Examination: The examination for Arabic II consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Third Year

LANG3049. Arabic III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years’ work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of Arabic language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding the contemporary Arabic-speaking world, as well as the history and cultural backgrounds.
Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Arabic III will be required to attend an intensive
session (Transition 2) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to Arabic III without having previously completed Arabic II and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for Arabic III consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG3050. Arabic in an Arabic-speaking country (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Middle Eastern universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Arabic B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2052 (Arabic II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

French Courses

First Year

LANG1001. French I.1 (6 credits)

This course is intended for complete beginners in French and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills. Classes will be conducted in small groups in order to ensure a high degree of interactivity between participants and teachers. Conversation groups and laboratory groups will also be arranged separately on a regular basis.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG1002. French I.2 (12 credits)

This course is a continuation of French I.1. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students’ linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. As in French I.1, separate conversation and laboratory groups will be arranged to complement classroom tuition. In addition, participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre’s self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as take advantage of resources accessible through various Internet sites.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed French I.1 or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for French I.2 consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

**LANG1035. France today: an overview (3 credits)**

The objective of this one-semester course is to present a broad introduction to contemporary France, its geographical features, its institutions and customs, its people and society. The lectures will be arranged as a series of discussions on selected topics which will include, where needed, insights into France’s history and evolution, so as to enable a better understanding of the country’s identity and characteristics today. France’s current relationship with, and presence in, China and Hong Kong will also be discussed.

This course is essentially intended for First Year students. The medium of instruction is English, no previous knowledge of French is required.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second Year**


This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the first-year work. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition, reading and textual analysis, listening comprehension, composition, translation, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques and materials is used. Small groups are arranged throughout the year to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. All students intending to continue the study of French in their third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in France.

Prerequisites: (i) French II.1 is open to students who have successfully completed French I.1 and I.2.

(ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for French II.1 consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

**LANG2035. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I (3 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to the task of translating French into Chinese and, to a lesser extent, Chinese into French. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, especially at grammatical and syntactical levels, between French and Chinese.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants’ knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with Chinese in key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into Chinese and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide the students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG2035 is open to students who have successfully completed LANG1002 (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG2035 without enrolling in LANG2001.
LANG2036. Introduction to French/English translation – Part I (3 credits)

This course provides an introduction to the task of translating French into English and, to a lesser extent, English into French. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and English.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants’ knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with English in key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into English and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG2036 is open to students who have successfully completed LANG1002 (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG2036 without enrolling in LANG2001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG2037. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part II (3 credits)

This course is a continuation of LANG2035 (Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I) taught in the first semester. The objective is to build on the initial work and to widen the scope of investigation regarding the task of translating French into Chinese and, to a lesser extent, Chinese into French. Particular attention will be paid again to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, especially at grammatical and syntactical levels, between French and Chinese.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants’ knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with Chinese in key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into Chinese and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide the students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG2037 is open to students who have successfully completed LANG2035 (Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I) in the first semester. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG2037 without enrolling in LANG2001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

LANG2038. Introduction to French/English translation – Part II (3 credits)

This course is a continuation of LANG2036 (Introduction to French/English translation – Part I) taught in the first semester. The objective is to build on the initial work and to widen the scope of investigation regarding the task of translating French into English and, to a lesser extent, English into French. Particular attention will be paid again to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and English.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants’ knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with English in key areas, such as verbs and tenses,
syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into English and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2038** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG2036** (Introduction to French/English translation – Part I) in the first semester. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2038** without enrolling in **LANG2001**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG2043. French language and culture I (3 credits)**

This course is designed to review key aspects of France’s contemporary society and culture. The lectures will offer a concise introduction to the country’s present institutions and society (government, education, politics, economy, work, current affairs, etc.), and discuss essential cultural features (festivals, customs, traditions, etiquette, colloquialisms, way of life, leisure, etc.) The investigation will be supported by an array of documentation drawn from the media, video footage and web sources. This course is also meant to prepare students for the period of time they are advised to spend in the country during the summer. The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2043** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1001** (French I.1) and **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2043** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course is taught in the first semester.

---

**LANG2044. French language and culture II (3 credits)**

This course offers a concise description of the main stages of France’s historical development. Key events that have contributed to the shaping of the country throughout its various periods will be presented and their significance discussed. The role and place of the regions within this process will also be discussed, so as to understand the correlation of distinct regional characteristics (e.g., culture, traditions, dialects, architectural heritage, religions) with related historical developments (e.g., invasions and migrations, wars and alliances, social upheavals, regionalisms). The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2044** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1001** (French I.1) and **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2044** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course is taught in the second semester.

---

**LANG2045. French speech and sounds – Part I (3 credits)**

The general objectives of this course are as follows: i. to introduce the fundamental notions of French
phonetics; ii. to account for typical pronunciation difficulties encountered by students due to the interference of French, Chinese and English, and iii. to improve students’ perception and production of French sounds so as to step up their proficiency in spoken French. Class activities and tutorials will be organized in small groups. The course material will be in French, and French will be used as the medium of instruction.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG2045 is open to students who have successfully completed LANG1001 (French I.1) and LANG1002 (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG2045 without also enrolling in LANG2001 (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the first semester.

---

**LANG2046. French speech and sounds – Part II (3 credits)**

The general objectives of this course are as follows: i. to discuss important phonological aspects of the French language which generally cause difficulties of perception among students; ii. to step up students’ proficiency in French with respect to the spoken and aural dimensions; and iii. to prepare students for the period of time they are advised to spend in France during the summer. Discussion topics will cover various phonological phenomena in French connected speech, such as elision and assimilation, liaison and enchaînement, as well as prosodic features and their paralinguistic implications. Class activities and tutorials will be organized in small groups. The course material will be in French, and French will be the medium of instruction.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG2046 is open to students who have successfully completed LANG2045 (French speech and sounds – Part I).

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG2046 without also enrolling in LANG2001 (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the second semester.

---

**LANG2047. French reading course (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to present and discuss a range of genres and styles of writing (literary and non-literary) so as to reinforce reading skills in French. In this process, the participants will familiarize themselves with specific forms and conventions that relate to and/or define these genres. The investigation will also lead to the analysis of how important acts of communication and types of discourses (viz., descriptive, informative, narrative, prescriptive and argumentive) may appear in these various genres and/or mutate across several genres. This course is very practical in nature and will largely rely on small group activities. The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG2047 is open to students who have successfully completed LANG1001 (French I.1) and LANG1002 (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG2047 without also enrolling in LANG2001 (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the second semester.
LANG2048. French songs and lyrics (3 credits)

This course offers a review of key authors who have marked the popular music of the French-speaking world (la Chanson française), from the early 20th century to the present day. Through a selection of representative works, the discussion will focus on the reading of texts, their reception by the public, the social context and how, in many instances, particular song lyrics have interacted with and been incorporated into the French language. The literary nature and the cultural dimension of these lyrics will be emphasized throughout the course. Short biographies of important authors will also be examined. In this course, participants will be able to enhance their proficiency in the language and will gain more understanding of French contemporary popular culture. The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG2048 is open to students who have successfully completed LANG1001 (French I.1) and LANG1002 (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG2048 without also enrolling in LANG2001 (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course is taught in the second semester.

Third Year

LANG3001. French language – III.1 (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year in lectures and tutorials and continues to build on the first- and second-year work. Lectures will make use of literary texts and authentic documents (press clippings, etc.) from France and other French-speaking countries, with the aim of stimulating critical reading. This study of authentic materials will also help students to investigate further French civilization and contemporary culture.

Prerequisite: (i) French III.1 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1

(ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for French III.1 consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG3003. French/English translation: practical skills (3 credits)

The objective of this course is to reinforce students’ language skills in French while making them aware of problems arising from transferring meaning from French to English and conversely. Most of the work will focus on common translation difficulties between the two languages and will propose various ways of dealing with them. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., literature, press articles, movies, bilingual documents, business correspondence etc.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG3003 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1

ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3003 without enrolling in French III.1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.
LANG3004. French/Chinese translation: practical skills (3 credits)

The objective of this course is to reinforce students’ language skills in French while making them aware of problems arising from transferring meaning from French to Chinese, and conversely. Most of the work will focus on common translation difficulties between the two languages and will propose ways of dealing with them. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., literature, press articles, movies, bilingual documents, business correspondence, etc.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG3004 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3004 without enrolling in French III.1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

LANG3005. French and business (3 credits)

This course is an introduction to the use of French in a business context. A variety of topics and situations will be studied, such as the structure of a firm and the way it operates both internally and with its partners, job application etc. The teaching materials used for this course will be drawn from actual sources and discussions will also focus on the local region, with the particular aim to provide the participants with first-hand facts and information on the business relationship between France and Hong Kong.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG3005 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3005 without enrolling in French III.1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

LANG3022. French eastern narratives (3 credits)

This course offers an overview of how French writers and travellers wrote about China, Indochina and Japan over the last three centuries, from the debut of French global travelling (early 18th century) to recent periods. Through the close study of depictions and narrations of encounters, the objective will be to recognize trends, contradictions and invariants in this process of channeling home the Far East, either as a romanticized cultural alternative or as a strong repellent. The extent to which these various accounts and representations have inspired the aesthetics and literary productions of contemporary France will also be examined in some instances. The medium of discussion will be mainly French, and the texts (novel excerpts, press, films, iconography) will be in French or, where appropriate, provided with translation.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG3022 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3022 without enrolling in French III.1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

LANG3033. French media and advertising (3 credits)

The discussion will start with an inventory of the media in France with a particular focus on newspapers and magazines, including web-based publications. It will examine how the press targets
the public, using various areas of specialization (e.g. political affiliation, social and current affairs, women issues, family and domestic sphere, etc.). In a second phase, we shall look into how advertising techniques convey information as well as messages of various natures. While studying a large range of selected materials, we will aim at disclosing the rhetorical devices at work in the process of construction of images, mainly inspired by prevalent social mythologies and stereotyped representations.

The discussion will make extensive use of materials under various forms, such as pictures, posters, advertisements, videos, TV excerpts, press samples, webpages etc. The main medium of instruction is French.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG3033 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3033 without enrolling in French III.1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LANG3034. French essay writing (3 credits)**

In this course, participants will receive tuition and guidance to complete an extended piece of writing in French based on a topic of their choice and in connection with France. Participants will be also encouraged to make use of any materials they may have collected in the course of their stay in the country. The objectives of this course are to increase students’ confidence in their handling of written French, to stimulate creative writing and to enhance composition skills.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG3034 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3034 without enrolling in French III.1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LANG3036. French society and cinema (3 credits)**

This course will make use of films to examine French contemporary society. Cinema will be discussed in connection with social changes brought about since the Second World War. The aim of this course is to use images to analyse how cinema through its language and technical evolution reflected the transformations of modern society.

The discussion will start with ‘conventional films’, e.g., narratives following the nineteenth century literary tradition focusing on plots and characters. The ‘*Nouvelle Vague*’ and its celebrated directors François Truffaut and Eric Rohmer will help to give a better understanding of the revolution triggered by the post-war period and marking the birth of a new film language. Students will use films to discuss social, cultural and gender issues. The role of women in French society will be examined through a series of recent films. The main medium of instruction is French.

Prerequisites: (i) LANG3036 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3036 without enrolling in French III.1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LANG3038. French in France (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several French universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the French B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final
year.  
Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2001 (French Language II.1), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.  
Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.  

---

**LANG3053. French literature: the 19th century (3 credits)**

French writers such as Chateaubriand, Balzac, Stendhal, Flaubert, Baudelaire and Mallarmé were instrumental in shaping new directions in French and world literatures. The 19th century is a period of overwhelming transformation, with literature and arts at the heart of this wave of changes. In this course, we shall provide a concise introduction to the key figures and works that have marked the literary scene, as well as to the main schools of thought to which contemporary writers are still indebted. The course is particularly designed to enhance participants’ reading and analytical skills in the French language and to broaden their knowledge of French life and culture. The discussion will concentrate on texts and excerpts from works in a variety of genres (fiction, drama and poetry) chosen for their representativeness. Biographies of writers will be discussed too. The medium of instruction and discussion will be French, and the texts examined will be in French.  
Prerequisites:  
(i) LANG3053 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, students must provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite course.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3053 without enrolling in French III.1.  
Assessments: 100% coursework.  

---

**LANG3054. French literature: the 20th century (3 credits)**

French literature was the scene of radical explorations and experiences in the 20th century, from the early surrealists to the oulipian generation. Writers were closely connected to social and political developments in France and outside France, as well as open to other forms of art, such as painting and cinema. This course will introduce the participants to the major writers and movements of this period. The course is particularly designed to enhance participants’ reading and analytical skills in the French language and to broaden their knowledge of French life and culture. The discussion will concentrate on texts and excerpts from works in a variety of genres (fiction, drama and poetry) chosen for their representativeness. Biographies of writers will be discussed too. The medium of instruction and discussion will be French, and the texts examined will be in French.  
Prerequisites:  
(i) LANG3054 is open to students who have successfully completed French II.1. Alternatively, students must provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite course.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in LANG3054 without enrolling in French III.1.  
Assessments: 100% coursework.  

---

**German Courses**

**First Year**

**LANG1003. German I.1 (6 credits)**

This beginners course in German language does not require any previous knowledge of German. Students will acquire basic linguistic and communicative skills in German in speaking, listening, reading and writing. Apart from their regular language classes students will be taught in small tutorial groups to ensure an environment highly conducive to practising language skills.  
Prerequisite: Nil.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG1004. German I.2 (12 credits)

This course is a continuation of German I.1. It combines linguistic and communicative skills in German with a balanced emphasis on speaking, listening, reading and writing. Small tutorial groups, which will be arranged in addition to the regular language classes, will provide the students with an environment highly conducive to practising their language skills. The course will also encourage students to exploit resources available on the Internet and in the Centre’s self-practice facilities (Language Resource Centre and Practice Lab) which provide a wide range of materials for language practice, including audio and videotapes, CD-ROMs and computer programmes. Students intending to proceed to the second year will be provided with a range of self-access materials to maintain and enhance their skills during the summer break.

Prerequisite: German I.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to German I.2 without having enrolled in German I.1 previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for German I.2 consists of one written paper of two hours’ duration, an oral examination and a coursework assessment element.

Assessment: Coursework shall count 40% of the grade awarded for German I.2.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second Year

LANG2004. German II.1 (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and builds on the first year work. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition; reading and text analysis, listening comprehension, composition, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques is used. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the year to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. All students continuing their studies in the third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in Germany.

Prerequisites: German I.2 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to German II.1 without having enrolled for German I.2 previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element. In addition, the examination also includes an oral examination.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for German II.1.

LANG2020. German area studies (6 credits)

This course provides an introduction to geographical, political, social and cultural aspects of Germany in the 20th century. It focuses on developments in Germany after 1949 and covers the following topics: From Separation to Reunification, Everyday Life in the Two Germanys, Are the Germans One People Now?, Germany’s Political System, Press, Radio and Television, Foreigners in Germany, and Germany in the Global Economy.

Guest speakers from Hong Kong’s German speaking community will be invited to give talks on selected topics and students will be encouraged to make use of IT to study certain topics in depth.
While most of the lectures will be conducted in English, German will be used in the tutorials to provide students with the necessary vocabulary and structures for the various topics. 
Prerequisites: German I.2 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to German area studies without having taken German I.2 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in German area studies without enrolling in German II.I unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element.
Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 50% of the grade awarded for German area studies.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

__LANG2039. Translation exercise I (3 credits)__

Students will practise written translations from German to Chinese and Chinese to German using a variety of texts written in different styles. The main aim is to make students aware of the major structural differences between German and Chinese and to provide them with additional information on contemporary German topics.
Co-requisites: German II.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to Translation exercise I without having enrolled in German II.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course is taught in the first semester only.

__LANG2040. Translation exercise II (3 credits)__

This course is taught in the second semester only. It is a continuation of Translation exercise I and students will practise additional structures and texts.
Prerequisite: LANG2039 Translation exercise I
Co-requisites: German II.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to Translation exercise II without having enrolled in German II.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

__LANG2041. Representations of contemporary German society in the media (3 credits)__

This course will look at representations of various aspects of contemporary German society in the media over the past 50 years. Topics will include: The changing role of women in advertisements since the 50s, American influences on youth culture and everyday life, society in film, society in music, and contemporary German comedians. For each topic students will study authentic materials in German such as advertisements, TV commercials, newspaper texts, songs, film clips and movies.
Co-requisites: German II.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to LANG2041 without having enrolled in German II.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.
Assessment: 100% Coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.
LANG2042. Producing German texts I (3 credits)

This course will provide students with the skills needed to produce texts of different styles such as postcards, personal letters, formal letters, short essays, etc. It will strengthen their vocabulary base and at the same time improve and enhance their ability to write in German.

Co-requisites: German II.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to LANG2042 without having enrolled in German II.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second/Third Years

LANG0002. Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course provides an introduction to contemporary life in Germany. Topics to be covered include: The German Language, Outline of German History, Geographical Diversity, Housing and Urban Development, Federalism, Germany’s Political System, Festivals, Family, Youth, Education, Arts and Music, Leisure Time and Sports, Protection of the Environment, Women and Society, and Cultural Representations in Advertising. All lectures will be conducted in English.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

Third Year

LANG3007. German III.1 (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of German II.1. It offers a balanced range of language skills, and furthers the exploration of various linguistic aspects of the language. Special attention will be given to language registers and patterns, specific terminology and structures used in a variety of fields (literature, press reports, business documents etc.) with the aim of stimulating critical reading. As in German II.1 small tutorial groups will be arranged to ensure oral fluency and writing techniques as well as the development of oral skills in the context of argumented discourses and presentations.

Prerequisites: German II.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to German III.1 without having enrolled in German II.1 previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element. In addition, the examination also includes an oral examination.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for German III.1.

LANG3008. Reading course (3 credits)

This course will only be offered during the first semester. It enhances and extends the language skills acquired during the first and second year through systematic study in the form of text analysis,
discussion, translation, etc. of contemporary texts and documents written in different styles such as newspaper and magazine articles, songs etc. drawn from current affairs and life in Germany.

Prerequisites: German II.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to Reading course without having enrolled in German II.1 previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in Reading course without enrolling in German III.1 unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for Reading course.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG3010. German project (3 credits)

In this course students will study in depth an approved topic of their choice in German. They will present their findings in class and submit a written project of around 2,000 words in German at the end of the course. Students wishing to enrol in this course are encouraged to make use of their stay in Germany to collect materials for their project.

Prerequisites: German II.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to German project without having enrolled in German II.1 previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in German project without enrolling in German III.1 unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for German project.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

LANG3039. German in Germany (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several German universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the German B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2004 (German II.1), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

LANG3045. Translation exercise III (3 credits)

Students practise translations mainly from English to German using a variety of texts written in different styles. The texts discussed refer to contemporary life in Germany and other German-speaking countries and usually include the following topics: culture, politics and social life. The aim is to make students aware of the major structural and lexical differences between German and English as well as to provide them with some information on contemporary German topics and life-style.

Co-requisites: German III.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to Translation exercise III without having enrolled in German III.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.
Assessment: 100% Coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester only.

LANG3046. Translation exercise IV (3 credits)

This course is a continuation of LANG3045 Translation exercise III enhancing and extending the acquired translation skills. Major topics to be discussed are: German customs and traditions, life experiences of foreigners studying or working in Germany, and integration of immigrants in Germany.

Prerequisite: LANG3045 Translation exercise III
Co-requisites: German III.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to Translation exercise IV without having enrolled in German III.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester only.

LANG3047. Producing German texts II (3 credits)

This course will enable students to produce longer texts such as critical essays, short stories, etc. It will provide students with strategies to structure texts of various styles and topics. Sessions will be divided into two parts: Part I will be a discussion and analysis of texts prepared by the students following the introduction of the topic in the previous session. Part II will introduce the topic of the following session. It will teach students how to approach the topic and how to structure their texts. This will be illustrated by a critical reading of sample texts.

Co-requisites: German III.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to LANG3047 without having enrolled in German III.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester only.

LANG3048. Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics (3 credits)

This course explores one of the most popular periods in German literature - German Romanticism. While this period is well known for its emotional and imaginative descriptions of nature and expressions of feelings, many of its writers also had been deeply affected by the historical, political and social events of their times. The course begins with providing a short overview over the literary and historical developments leading up to and following this period, followed by an in-depth study of authentic texts from various authors representing the two main streams of German Romanticism and it concludes by tracing Romantic influences in modern society.

Co-requisites: German III.1 or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to LANG3048 without having enrolled in German III.1 will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester only.

Italian Courses

First Year
LANG1007. Italian I.1 (6 credits)

This course is intended for complete beginners in Italian and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills.
Prerequisite: Nil
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG1008. Italian I.2 (6 credits)

This course is a continuation of Italian I.1. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students’ linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. Participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre’s self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as to take advantage of resources accessible through Internet
Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed Italian I.1 or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second Year

LANG2010. Italian II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of Italian I.2. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Italian language and develop further their production and reception skills.
Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Italian II will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June.
Students wishing to be admitted to Italian II without having previously completed Italian I.2 and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.
Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.
Examination: The examination for Italian II consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG2031. Italian reading course (3 credits)

This course is offered to the students at intermediate and advanced levels in order to improve their skills in textual analysis, discussion and translation of contemporary texts and documents such as magazines, newspaper, songs and articles related to current Italian life.
Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed Italian I.2 or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.
Students may not enrol in the Italian reading course without enrolling in Italian II.
It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.
LANG2032. Italian and business (3 credits)

This course is offered to students at intermediate and advanced levels. It will focus on a variety of topics, such as commercial correspondence, marketing strategies, advertising campaigns, job applications, banking terminology, etc.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed Italian I.2 or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Students may not enrol in the Italian and business course without enrolling in Italian II. It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

LANG2050. A profile of Italian literature – Part I (3 credits)

This course presents a broad introduction to Italian Literature from the 13th to the 20th century. It will examine works of the prominent Italian writers through the study of excerpts and is particularly designed to enhance students’ reading and analytical skills in the Italian language. The medium of instruction and discussion will be Italian.

Prerequisites: (i) the course is open to students who have successfully completed Italian I.2; (ii) students may not enrol without enrolling in Italian II. It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG2051. A profile of Italian literature (Contemporary Italian literature) – Part II (3 credits)

This course offers an introduction to the major movements and authors of Italian Literature over the last fifty years. The selection of texts will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Italy. The medium of instruction and discussion will be Italian.

Prerequisites: (i) the course is open to students who have successfully completed Italian I.2; (ii) students may not enrol without enrolling in Italian II. It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second/Third Years

LANG0001. Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will give an outline of Italian civilization and contemporary culture in its manifold aspects, ranging from arts, history, music, Italian customs and traditions in the different regions and cities, to cinema and tourism, food, fashion, environment, education, sport and politics with particular focus on the youth world. The teacher will present a variety of subjects making use of videos and authentic materials (music, magazines, advertising, etc.), from which the students will choose topics and discuss
them in discussion groups. Each group will then present, at the end of the course, a project on a particular subject. In case the students should be interested, some basic knowledge of the Italian language will be offered.
Prerequisite: Nil.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Italian is not necessary.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

LANG0006. Italian classical roots of European civilization (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Touching on different subjects such as Latin Language and Philosophy, Architecture and Law, Literature and History, Religion and Politics, the course will examine how Europe was shaped by its Roman heritage and how classical roots contributed to create a multifaced but unique civilization. All lectures will be conducted in English.
Prerequisite: Nil
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

Third Year

LANG3012. Italian III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years’ work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Italian language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Italy, as well as her history and cultural background.
Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Italian III will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to Italian III without having previously completed Italian II and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.
Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.
Examination: The examination for Italian III consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG3040. Italian in Italy (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Italian universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Italian B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.
Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2010 (Italian II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.
Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.
Portuguese Courses

First Year

LANG1025. Portuguese for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The aim of this course is to enable students to reach a basic communicative competence in Portuguese, while developing their listening, speaking, writing and reading skills. Development of self-learning strategies will also be introduced in the later part of the course.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG1026. Portuguese for beginners - Part II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is a continuation of Portuguese for beginners I. Pre-requisite for Portuguese for beginners II: Portuguese for beginners I.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second Year

LANG2024. Portuguese II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of Portuguese for beginners – Part II. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Portuguese language and develop further their production and reception skills.
Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Portuguese II will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June.
Students wishing to be admitted to Portuguese II without having previously completed Portuguese for beginners – Part II and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.
Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.
Examination: The examination for Portuguese II consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Third Year

LANG3026. Portuguese III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years’ work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Portuguese language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Portugal, as well as her history and cultural background.
Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Portuguese III will be required to attend an
intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to Portuguese III without having previously completed Portuguese II and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for Portuguese III consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG3041. Portuguese in Portugal (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Portuguese universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Portuguese B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2024 (Portuguese II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

Spanish Courses

First Year

LANG1010. Spanish I.1 (6 credits)

This course is intended for complete beginners in Spanish and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG1011. Spanish I.2 (6 credits)

This course is a continuation of Spanish I.1. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the aim of expanding students’ linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. Participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre’s self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as to take advantage of resources accessible through Internet.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed Spanish I.1 or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.
Second Year

LANG2011. Spanish II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of Spanish I.2. The course builds further on the first year’s work and widens the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Spanish and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Spanish II will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June and/or September. Students wishing to be admitted to Spanish II without having previously completed Spanish I.2 and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: The examination and coursework elements count 60% and 40% respectively.

Examination: The examination for Spanish II consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG2049. Beyond bullfighting: a look at Spanish society (3 credits)

The aims of this course are mainly two: first, to take a look at Spanish society, its diversity and richness; second, to further improve language skills through the introduction of new vocabulary and structures related to the subjects viewed in class. This course will use a video and supporting materials to give students an overall impression of contemporary Spain and of Spanish people. Classroom discussions will be encouraged. Classroom material will be in Spanish and Spanish will be the main medium of instruction.

Prerequisite: (i) This course is open to students who have successfully completed Spanish I.1 and Spanish I.2.

(ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a comparable standard.

(iii) It is also open to students currently studying LANG3013 Spanish III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second/Third Years

LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course aims to give students an insight into Spanish culture and traditions with an emphasis on Spain. Guest speakers will give talks about different aspects of culture and discussion about the topics seen in the course will be encouraged.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Spanish is not necessary.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG0005. Hispanic film and literature (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The goal of this course is to introduce Spanish and Spanish American Cinema and Literature as well as to improve students’ analytical and critical thinking skills. The course objectives will be tackled in four ways: a) with a focus on Film and Literature as a representation of Hispanic culture; b) by analysing a selection of representative cinematographic and literary texts; c) by considering how Hispanic Literature has inspired films; and d) by brief explorations into the relationship between Spanish and Spanish American productions in both arts. A selection of films and written texts will be presented in class.

Prerequisite: Nil. Students of all faculties are welcome.

Medium of Instruction: English. Knowledge of Spanish is not necessary.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

Third Year

**LANG3013. Spanish III (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years’ work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Spanish language through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Spain, as well as her history and culture.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Spanish III will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June and/or September.

Students wishing to be admitted to Spanish III without having previously completed Spanish II and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: The examination and coursework elements count 60% and 40% respectively.

Examination: The examination of Spanish III consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

**LANG3042. Spanish in Spain (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Spanish universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Spanish B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2011 (Spanish II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

**Swedish Courses**

**First Year**

**LANG1023. Swedish for beginners - Part I (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is for beginners of Swedish and will introduce the students to the essentials of the Swedish language through a communicative approach. The course will cover speaking, listening,
reading and writing but with emphasis on speaking. Students will learn how to interact in everyday situations such as shopping, taking the bus, asking for directions, making a phone call etc. Apart from using textbooks, additional classroom materials, such as videos, and other audio-visuals will be used.

The course will also give students an insight to Swedish culture and society. Since Sweden, Norway and Denmark are closely related in culture and language, the course will also give a wider understanding of Scandinavia.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**LANG1024. Swedish for beginners - Part II (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is a continuation of *Swedish for beginners I*. Pre-requisite for Swedish for beginners II: Swedish for beginners I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**Second Year**

**LANG2023. Swedish II (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of *Swedish for beginners – Part II*. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Swedish language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to *Swedish II* will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to *Swedish II* without having previously completed *Swedish for beginners – Part II* and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.
Examination: The examination for *Swedish II* consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

**Third Year**

**LANG3025. Swedish III (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years’ work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Swedish language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Sweden, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to *Swedish III* will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to *Swedish III* without having previously completed *Swedish II* and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required
standard.
Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.
Examination: The examination for Swedish III consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG3043. Swedish in Sweden (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Swedish universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Swedish B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.
Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2023 (Swedish II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.
Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

Thai Courses

First Year

LANG1021. Thai for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course aims to teach complete beginners the basics of Thai with respect to the four linguistic skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Students will also be introduced to Thai culture and society. Vocabulary and grammar will be presented in a communicative way for a variety of situations, e.g. making introductions, leave-taking, giving directions, buying things, making telephone calls and so on. The emphasis will be on the spoken language, as well as on providing a secure foundation for basic Thai.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the first semester.

LANG1022. Thai for beginners - Part II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is a continuation of Thai for beginners I. Pre-requisite for Thai for beginners II: Thai for beginners I.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
This course will be offered in the second semester.

Second Year

LANG2022. Thai II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of Thai for beginners – Part II. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Thai language and develop further their production and reception skills.
Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Thai II will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to Thai II without having previously completed Thai for beginners – Part II and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for Thai II consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Third Year

LANG3024. Thai III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years’ work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Thai language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Thailand, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to Thai III will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June. Students wishing to be admitted to Thai III without having previously completed Thai II and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for Thai III consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

LANG3044. Thai in Thailand (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Thai universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Thai B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed LANG2022 (Thai II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

Department of Linguistics

First-year Courses

LING1001. Introduction to linguistics (6 credits)

This course is a prerequisite for all courses taught in the department, and a requirement for all students majoring in linguistics. It is an introduction to the basic topics of linguistics: the nature of human language, speech sounds and sound patterns, word formation, sentence structure, and the study of meaning and use.
Students will learn about the general structure that underlies all language as well as the great variety of existing human languages. The course gives plenty of practice in solving problems, analysing languages, including Chinese and English, and dealing with data. 

Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination

LING1002. Language.com: Language in the contemporary world (3 credits)

This course is designated as an IT-integrated course. Students who do the course can use it to fulfill the university’s IT requirement. The 21st century will be the Age of the Internet. What is the Internet all about? Essentially, it is about information and communication. Language is by far the most important means of communication and information exchange amongst human beings. To fully appreciate our own place in the contemporary world and to make the best of the many opportunities presented by new forms of communication, we need to know more about language. This course is an introduction to language: its nature and its relationship with facets of life in the contemporary world.

- Natural Language Processing: Can computers be trained to understand and produce human language?
- Machine Translation: Can computers do translations automatically and accurately?
- Corpus Linguistics: What kinds of language data are available on the Internet? How can they be used to make grammars and dictionaries?
- Chinese Language Computing: How many kinds of Chinese inputting methods are there? Which one suits you best?
- Internet Tools: What tools are available on the Internet for the learning of languages and linguistics?
- Human-Computer Interfaces: What is “ergonomics”? What is currently being done to improve the quality of communication between people and their computers?
- Speech analysis: What computer programs are available to analyse speech signals? How can computer speech analysis help language learners?

As this course may include topics relating to Chinese Language Information Processing, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters are advised against taking this course. 

Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING1003. Language, thought, and culture (6 credits)

This course offers a survey of the study of language, with a focus on the relationship between language structure on the one hand and thought and culture on the other. It is designed as a complementary course to LING1001 “Introduction to Linguistics”, and covers topics which cannot be dealt with in the other course due to the limitation of time. Through reading and participation in regular discussions on a selection of topics, students will gain a deeper understanding of the ways in which language is structured, learned, processed and used.

Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination

Second- and Third-year Courses

LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)

How can the computer help us analyse sentences? Can a computer really understand language? These are some of the questions explored in this course. The course will introduce basic concepts and techniques of natural language understanding and Chinese language information processing.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)

How is it that we manage to have conversations in which lots of different people take part and everyone has a chance to speak as well as to listen? At least, most of the time we manage that all right. What rules are followed when we have conversations? On this course you will discover what these rules are and learn how to describe the structure of conversations.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)

This course focuses on structural and cognitive aspects of meaning which are relevant to the description and theory of grammar. Examples will be drawn from Cantonese, Mandarin and English together with some other European and Asian languages.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds (6 credits)

This is a required course for students majoring in Linguistics or Human Language Technology and is normally taken in the second year. The focus will be on articulatory phonetics; the speech mechanism; the description and classification of sounds of languages; sounds in context; prosodic features; tone and intonation; and practical work.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)

This survey of the world’s languages covers how languages are classified into families and types as well as issues of linguistic diversity and endangered languages. The course involves regular practical work. The course satisfies the prerequisite for the advanced course, Language typology, and also provides useful background for all courses in linguistics.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)

In this course you will learn about the difference between a standard language and a dialect, with particular reference to Modern Chinese and British English.
We shall study the writing systems of Modern Chinese and British English, and compare them with alternative systems which are used for Chinese and English dialects.
You will learn to distinguish between ‘Chinese’ and ‘Putonghua’, between ‘Cantonese’, ‘Guangdong speech’, and ‘Yue dialects’, and between wenyan and baihua; similar phenomena in British English will also be discussed.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)

This course aims at helping students gain an understanding of the role of language and literacy education in the socio-economic development of many societies. After the introduction of basic concepts in sociolinguistics and in literacy, we will compare linguistic situations in selected parts of the world and then take up major issues such as multilingualism, literacy education, including definitions and types of literacies, language planning policies, and how to integrate linguistic and
eductional issues in development projects.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2012.  Experimental phonetics (6 credits)

The theoretical and instrumental study of the acoustic properties of speech sounds; classificatory
criteria; speech analysis and synthesis; experimental techniques; and laboratory work.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2013.  Language typology: the study of linguistic diversity (6 credits)

A survey of the structural diversity of the world’s languages. Topics covered include: notions of
language type; morphological, case marking, and word order typology; diachronic and areal typology;
universals of language and their explanation.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2018.  Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)

An intensive introduction to the architecture of Lexical-Functional Grammar, with a discussion of
how this syntactic theory addresses issues such as levels of representation, lexical integrity, complex
predicates, serial verbs, optimality, and the syntax - semantics interface.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2019.  Contrastive study of the sound systems of English and Chinese (6 credits)

Do you think the sounds of English and Chinese are very similar or very different? Is it possible to
write Chinese words using phonetic signs instead of characters? You will find out the answers to
these and other questions on this course as you investigate and describe the sound and writing systems
of these two great world languages.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2022.  Pragmatics (6 credits)

An introduction to the study of Pragmatics. Topics include: linguistic meaning, speaker intention,
interpretation and understanding, context, deixis, reference, conversational implicature, inference,
presupposition, speech acts, politeness, relevance theory.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2023.  Discourse analysis (6 credits)

An introduction to Discourse analysis. Topics include: linguistic forms and functions, speech and
writing, discourse topic, discourse structure, information structure, cohesion and coherence,
knowledge representation.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2024.  Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)

An introduction to Lexicology and lexicography. Topics include: kinds of unit in the lexicon, lexical
entries, lexical relations, lexical semantics, the mental lexicon, application of lexicology to dictionary compilation in various languages.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2025.  Corpus linguistics (6 credits)
An introduction to Corpus linguistics. Topics include: the use of corpora in linguistic analysis, methods in the design and collection of spoken and written texts, uses of corpora. Topics are discussed with reference to various languages.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2027.  Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)
The notion of the phoneme and its place in phonology; distinctive features; phonological processes and their description; rules and representations.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2030.  Morphological theory (6 credits)
Current models of morphology, including Lexical Morphology, Word and Paradigm Morphology, Prosodic Morphology, and other models.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2031.  Phonological theory (6 credits)
Current theories of phonology, including Autosegmental Phonology, Metrical Theory, Lexical Phonology, Optimality Theory and other models.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2032.  Syntactic theory (6 credits)
The course explores recent theoretical approaches to syntax, focusing on generative grammar.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2033.  Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)
In this course we will compare the grammar of English and Chinese. We will find some surprising similarities as well as interesting differences. You will have a firmer grasp of the structure of both languages by the end of the course. In addition, you will be in a better position to undertake bilingual research or to become effective language instructors or translators.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2034.  Psycholinguistics (6 credits)
This course is an introduction to psycholinguistics and will examine issues concerning how language is acquired and processed in the mind. Essential concepts of the mental processes involved in language comprehension and production and contemporary research will be covered in this course. There will also be practical laboratory classes.
LING2035. Neurolinguistics (6 credits)
This course will introduce students to the study of the representation and processing of language in the brain. Recent literature regarding language organization in the cortex, language disorder, and the bilingual brain will be reviewed.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2036. Child language (6 credits)
The focus of this course is on language acquisition, including a consideration of the stages of language development, biological basis, language disorders, dyslexia, and the differences in learning to speak and read in Chinese and English.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)
This course is a general introduction to the study of bilingualism from a psycholinguistic perspective, with emphasis on various aspects of bilingual behavior, such as code-switching and language mixing. Age-related differences, the influence of the first language, the role of attitudes, motivation and learning contexts will be examined.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2038. Historical linguistics (6 credits)
The purpose of the course is to introduce students to the principles of historical linguistics and the methods linguistics use to describe and account for language change. The emphasis is on sound change; however, morphological and syntactic changes are also discussed. The language data to be examined are mainly from the Indo-European language family and Chinese dialects.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2039. Language variation and change (6 credits)
The course introduces the students to language variation and its implications in the discussion of language change in progress. It also covers the general principles involved in language change as well as the problems of the initiation and transmission of language change.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)
No language develops in isolation and all show some effect of contact with other languages. The course will introduce basic concepts in language contact, distinguishing phenomena such as code-mixing and lexical borrowing, language shift and substrate influence. It will then focus on the most striking cases of “contact languages” – pidgins and creoles – and the challenges and opportunities they present to linguistics. The course is especially relevant for those studying French and will feature audio-visual materials illustrating contact languages such as Singapore Colloquial English, Macau Portuguese creole and Haitian French creole.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)

This course continues with major themes from LING1002. Language and aims to create a greater awareness of the growing importance of language information processing methods. The objective of the course is to explore the interface between language, linguistics, and information technology.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2042. Educational linguistics (6 credits)

This course is preferably taken after LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age and examines how linguistic and literacy issues impact educational systems in various parts of the world. The course aims to lead students to an understanding of the cognitive and social underpinnings of the interface between language, literacy and education.
Prerequisite: Language and literacy
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2043. Language and animal communication (6 credits)

This course examines communication systems amongst animals, including bees, apes, parrots and dolphins, against the background of human language. The course also explores the question of whether it is possible for animals to learn human language.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2044. Language and culture (6 credits)

The aim of this course is to explore the relationship between language and culture. Topics include language and thought, language and religion, language and nationalities, language and social changes.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2045. Writing systems (6 credits)

An introduction to the major writing systems of the world.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2046. British linguistics (6 credits)

This course is a study of the major contributions to linguistic description and theory made by British linguists from the later part of the 19th century to the end of the 20th century.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2047. Optimality theory (6 credits)

This course introduces current issues in Optimality Theory, with reference to phonology, morphology, and syntax.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
LING2048. Language and cognition (6 credits)

This course examines various issues regarding cognition and language. Topics to be covered are:
- How is language processed and represented in the mind and the brain?
- Commonalities and particularities of cognitive and neuro-cognitive processing of different languages (e.g., English and Chinese).
- First and second language learning. What are the critical factors that facilitate language learning?
- The Chinese language and the brain; language and reading disorders.
- Applied cognitive psychology of language. Headline designs for newspaper, TV program, and advertisement. Cognitive basis of persuasion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)

This course aims at giving the student a comprehensive introduction to basic concepts used in the description of morphology and syntax, independent of any model of grammar. Exercises accompany the topics introduced. Example analyses are drawn from various languages. The following topics in morphology and syntax will be covered: words, morphemes and morphs, word classes, immediate constituents, phrase structure, functional relations, sentence structure.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2051. French syntax and universal grammar (6 credits)

An overview of the major aspects of French Linguistics will be provided in this course. The basics of morphology, semantics and syntax will be covered, with emphasis on the syntactic component of the course. Students will learn how to analyze French sentences in formal perspectives, using the basics of grammatical frameworks such as Lexical Functional Grammar and the Principles and Parameters approaches. Prior knowledge of introductory linguistics and French grammar are helpful but not essential.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2052. Swahili structure and universal grammar (6 credits)

Swahili is the most widely spoken African language and one of the most intensively studied in many universities in Africa, Europe, and North America. In this course, an overview of the major aspects of Swahili and Bantu Linguistics will be provided. The basics of phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics will be covered, with emphasis on the morphosyntactic component of the language. Students will learn how to analyze basic Swahili sentence structures from formal perspectives, using the basics of grammatical frameworks such as Lexical Functional Grammar and the Minimalist approaches. Prior knowledge of introductory linguistics and spoken Swahili are helpful but not essential.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2053. Language and the brain (6 credits)

This course is an introduction to the representation and processing of language in the human brain, the systems and processes that enables us to speak, understand speech, learn languages, and read and write. Through attending the course, students will acquire in-depth knowledge of how language is developed, processed, and organized in the brain. Traditional as well as most recent research from
linguistics, cognitive neuroscience (e.g. brain imaging) and the study of language disorders will be reviewed. 
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2054. Linguistics in the Asian context (6 credits) 

The broad aim of the course will be to familiarize students with Asian languages and approaches to their description and analysis. This course will be particularly relevant to students with an interest in linguistic research across the Asian region.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

LING2055. Language and globalization (6 credits) 

The broad aim of this course will be to help students to understand and discuss issues relating to ‘global languages’ (as ‘linguae francae’) and their impact on the linguistic diversity of the world. It has estimated that, of the world’s 6,000 languages, 5,000 will disappear by the year 2050.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

Assessment

All courses taught in the department except LING1001 and LING1003 are assessed by 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may take a variety of formats, including projects, term-papers, essays, portfolios, class tests, and student presentations.

LING3002. Extended essay (6 credits)

This is a course for individual research on a topic chosen by the student in consultation with staff, in preparation for possible postgraduate work and is offered for third year majors only. Students intending to study this course are required to attend an interview at the beginning of their third year to give a short presentation on their proposed topic. The thesis which should normally be 8,000 words in length, should be submitted before the end of December. There is no written examination but an oral exam will be required.

LING3003. Linguistics field trip (6 credits)

This is a required course for students majoring in Linguistics or Human Language Technology. The field trip is technically designated as a Third year course but is actually taught in the second semester of the second year. The trip itself usually takes place in May or June of that year. Students majoring in Linguistics should plan their courses with this in mind.
The aim of the course is to provide an opportunity for students of linguistics to have first-hand experience with languages as they are spoken and used in particular settings, and to carry out an empirical investigation on some aspect of a language ‘on-site’ (e.g. structural, cognitive, socio-cultural, or technological aspects of a language). The field trip is the best way of putting knowledge about language structure and use into practice, and forms an essential part of a linguist’s training.
To satisfy the requirements of the course, students should (1) participate in a two-week field trip outside Hong Kong (e.g. to China, Europe, or Africa), led and supervised by members of staff; (2)
carry out an empirical investigation of a linguistics topic in consultation with their supervisors; and (3) write up and hand in a report upon return from the field trip.

Assessment: Participation in the field trip and a written report.

Department of Music

First Year

Level 100 courses

MUSI1001. The language of music (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course, which is open only to non-majors, is an introduction to the main elements of music - melody, rhythm, harmony, texture, timbre and articulation - as they occur in traditional, classical and popular musics of the world.
Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

MUSI1004. Introduction to musics of the world (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course, which is open to all students, introduces a range of music from throughout the world including the North America, Southeast Asia, West Africa, the Caribbean, and Europe. Genres such as salsa and zydeco (United States), gamelan gong kebyar (Bali), bawa and highlife (Ghana), djembe (Senegal), son and rumba (Cuba), samba (Brazil), flamenco (Spain), and rembetika (Greece) are examined in their social, cultural and historical contexts. The course also discusses issues raised by cross-cultural research. Practical performance in a Department ensemble may be included in the course.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI1005. Introduction to music in Western culture (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course, which is open to all students, focuses on a number of set musical works in order to explore the history of Western art music. The course emphasizes familiarity with a selection of representative musical works through weekly listening assignments. Training in the use of the Music Library is included in the course. Ability to read musical notation will be an advantage.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI1006. Music technology (3 credits)

(This course fulfills the Information Technology requirement, and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course, which is open to all students, is a hands-on introduction to the use of music technology including music notation, sequencing, synthesizer techniques, and digital audio. Technical methods of information access, especially in the Music Library, are introduced.
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
MUSI1011. Orchestral studies and techniques 1 (for students in their first year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University’s orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or the equivalent on one of the following: flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, percussion, violin, viola, cello or double bass and must pass an audition. Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

MUSI1013. Cantonese opera workshop (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is open to all, trains students in the singing of arias from Cantonese opera and other aspects of performance. Consisting of a two-hour session every week, the course lasts for two semesters. Students will also learn basic musical features of Cantonese opera and to read its musical notation. Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

MUSI1014. Aural skills (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

A student completing this two-semester course will have re-invented what it is to listen, and will be able to translate what is heard into other forms of communication. The course concerns rhythm, pitch, and timbre of many kinds of music. It develops practical skills such as rhythmic memory, imitation, dictation, sight-singing, and identification/classification. Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI1016. University choir 1 (for students in their first year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is open to all first-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the Department’s University Choir over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

MUSI1017. Performance workshop 1 (for students in their first year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Students may choose to enroll in any workshop offered by the Music Department, or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher approved by the Department over two semesters. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Performance Workshop 1 is open only to students taking a major in music. Please check with the Music Department for details. Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).
MUSI1018. Advanced music performance 1 (for students in their first year of study) (6 credits)

Students prepare a recital of 30/40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced twentieth-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Advanced Music Performance 1 is available only to students taking a major in music. Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI1019. Fundamentals of tonal music I (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course begins with fundamental music materials, such as scales and keys, and moves rapidly into species counterpoint and voice-leading principles of diatonic harmony. Student completing this course are expected to have established a clear and solid understanding of rudiments of tonal music, and be able to make practical demonstrations of this knowledge. Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI1020. Fundamentals of tonal music II (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

A continuation of MUSI1019 Fundamentals of Tonal Music I, this course explores further into tonal procedures. It begins with the use of seventh chords, and will progress to basic chromatic harmony. Contrapuntal gestures and simple formal structures such as binary and ternary forms will also be introduced. Students completing the course are expected to have attained thorough understanding of the function and voice-leading principles of diatonic and simple chromatic harmonies, and be able to analyse simple forms and contrapuntal textures. Prerequisite: MUSI1019. Assessment: 100% coursework.

Second and Third Years

Level 200 courses

MUSI2004. University gamelan 1 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is open to all students, focuses on Balinese gamelan or ‘orchestral’ performance, specifically the gamelan gong kebyar. No previous musical experience is necessary. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the gamelan over two semesters and by the end of the course students will be expected to know how to play the main melody, the main support parts, and the interlocking (kotekan) parts of selected compositions. Students will also have the opportunity to participate in public performance. Assessment: 20% coursework, 80% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

MUSI2006. Analysis of orally transmitted musics (6 credits)

This course will focus on the description, transcription and analysis of music that is essentially orally transmitted. Issues such as ‘emic’ and ‘etic’ transcription, prescriptive and descriptive notation, and various methods and theories of analysis will be discussed. Music from a variety of cultures,
including musical cultures of Asia, will be used as examples for study. 
Prerequisite: MUSI1004. 
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2007. Western music history 1 (6 credits)

This course traces the development of European music from its earliest beginnings in ancient Greece and Rome, through the flowering of sacred and secular music in the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, to the integrated instrumental and vocal idioms of the Baroque. The course demands familiarity with a number of representative works composed between ca. 800 AD and 1750. A strong focus is placed on the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created. 
Prerequisite: MUSI1005. 
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2008. Western music history 2 (6 credits)

This course will focus on the Western art music tradition from 1750 to the present, moving through the apparent stylistic perfection of the Classical era to the revolutions and restless variety of the Romantic era, and finally working through the complex experiments of modernist and postmodernist musics. A standard repertoire will be introduced, and the student will be expected to become familiar with the scores, sounds and history of these periods. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created. 
Prerequisite: MUSI2007. 
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2009. Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)

Selected topics in the history of Asian musical cultures will be examined. 
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course presents the essential features of the music of China, its role in Chinese culture and history, and its position in world music. Subjects will include qin and other musical instruments, theatrical genres such as kunqu, Peking opera and Cantonese opera, narrative songs such as Peking drum song, Suzhou tanci, and Cantonese nanyin, folk songs, and music in Confucian, Buddhist, and Taoist rituals. The course aims not only to introduce students to traditional Chinese music, but also to explore the nature of Chinese culture through its musical practices. Important works of Chinese music will be introduced, as well as issues such as change/stasis, politics/aesthetics, theory/practice, literati/masses, professional/amateur, ritual/entertainment, home-grown/foreign-influenced, and Han/Minority.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course provides students with a general knowledge of acoustics, sampling, sound design, sound editing, sound recording and mixing, audio-visual synchronisation, synthesiser techniques and MIDI sequencing. The course comprises lectures, workshops and individual studio exercises. Students are required to produce various practical, creative projects using the Music Department’s studio equipment and computer programs.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers popular music ranging from the history of Hong Kong’s Cantopop (e.g., Sam Hui, Aaron Kwok, Faye Wong) to the latest trends in the popular music market worldwide. The subject matter of this course is how popular music is defined, produced, disseminated and consumed across different cultures of the world. Classes are not arranged chronologically to provide a historical survey, nor are all areas of the world covered. However, themes and concepts that can be applied to the serious study of all popular musics (and perhaps even more) will be discussed. Students will learn the basic critical tools to examine popular musics of the world from a scholarly perspective.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, aims to promote an understanding of the various styles of music practiced in contemporary Hong Kong. Through comparison with the musical landscapes of other modern societies (e.g., US, Japan, Singapore, Taiwan), we shall endeavour to understand music and ourselves better. Topics to be discussed may include technical analysis of selected musical works, procedures of musical production, and a look at radio programmes, the recording industry, film music, high-art, jazz, new-age, and alternative musics, as well as traditional local and popular idioms.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2018. Understanding music (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is open only to non-majors, and is designed for students with little or no background who wish to learn of music’s beauties, ideas, and meanings. Music can be seen both as formal ideas in abstract arrangements, and as rapturous emotion rising from the heart. This course will explore both aspects by introducing musical works from many cultures, ranging from the grandeur of a Beethoven symphony to the subtleties of the Chinese zither.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**MUSI2019. Music in society (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is open only to non-majors, and is designed for students with little or no background who are interested in music as a social activity. Discussion of music in tribal cultures, popular music and its cultural meanings, political musics, and social patterns of performance, consumption and communication are explored.
MUSI2026. Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)

This course seeks to provide an understanding of various musical techniques through writing music. It covers topics in notation, instrumentation, melodic writing, harmonization, timbral control, expansion and refinement of raw material, and structural design. The course comprises lectures, small-group tutorials, individual supervision, composer/performer workshops and concert performances of student works.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2027. Composing for the concert world (6 credits)

This course encourages students to write music using 20th century techniques. It introduces students to organizing and manipulating various musical parameters such as pitch, rhythm, meter, texture, colour, form, etc. It also helps students to experiment with the incorporation of extra-musical inspiration and alternative aesthetics.
Prerequisite: MUSI2026.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course introduces students to basic arts administration concepts with a focus on the business of music. Topics to be discussed include strategic planning, organization, marketing, fundraising, financial management, arts law, as well as arts provision and arts policies in Hong Kong as compared to models in China, Europe and the USA. The lectures provide the students with theoretical foundations of management for the performing arts, and various assignments would help students to develop practical skills in writing, communication, critical thinking and analysis.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will introduce the history of China through an examination of selective source material including bells from the bronze period, the Book of Music attributed to Confucian philosophy, the earliest known musical notation of a composition from the sixth century A.D., major encyclopaedic compilations of musical sources from the Song dynasty, and Mao Zedong’s ‘Talk on Literature and Art’ in 1942.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2030. Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)

This course helps students to write music that works for a given practical application such as film scores, theatre music, multimedia performances, radio and television commercials, Web pages, new age music and popular songs. Students are required to work on topics that vary from year to year.
Prerequisite: MUSI2026.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will examine the history, genres, styles, innovations and cultural contexts of music in America. Following an overview of its European and African roots and the development of American music up to World War I, intensive consideration will be given to jazz, rock, blues, musicals, classical and avant-garde musics. This course is available to all students.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2032. Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University’s orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or the equivalent on one of the following: flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, percussion, violin, viola, cello or double bass and must pass an audition. Orchestral Studies and Techniques 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course focuses on the study of gamelan music and its cultural context over a two week field trip in Bali. Students will spend one week in intensive workshops at the Sekolah Tinggi Seni Indonesia (STSI), the principal institution for the Indonesian performing arts in Bali, and another week participating in and observing gamelan performance in a traditional Balinese community. The course is open to students who have completed one of the following courses: (i) Aural Skills, (ii) University Gamelan 1, or (iii) University Gamelan 2. Students will be required to produce a field work report.

Assessment: 100% field report.

MUSI2035. Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course examines cultural and historical representations of feelings, situations and stories that focus on passion, romance, sexuality, tragedy, and death in music. We shall consider both semiotic and formal aspects of a number of works through which such expressions can be conveyed, and shall examine their resultant power and meaning. The course covers popular and art music from the late twelfth to the twenty-first century, drawing on an eclectic range of repertoires both from the West and from other parts of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2036. Audio digital signal processing (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course examines the technical aspects of audio digital signal processing, including the principles of digital audio, Fourier transforms, analysis and synthesis of audio signals, and the use of digital signal processors in various applications. The course also covers the implementation of digital signal processing algorithms using software tools.
purposes.)
This course looks at various techniques of signal processing and algorithmic composition commonly used in computer music. Basic knowledge of trigonometry and algebra is expected, and some experience with computer programming is recommended. Students will use the tools of computer music to create simulations or models demonstrating the ideas presented in class. Students will have the option to pick their own tools, including software learned in previous classes, or to use tools taught in class. We will use some or all of the following programming environments: MAX/MSP, SuperCollider, Mathematica, Csound, cmusic, C++, Java.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2037. Directed study 1 (for students in their second year of study) (6 credits)
This is a one-to-one course in which the student works with a supervisor throughout the year. During the first semester, the supervisor introduces theories and techniques of musical research through reading, discussion, and book reports. Towards the end of the semester, a research topic is to be decided upon between the student and supervisor. The second semester is devoted to the research on the topic and the writing of a thesis under the guidance of the supervisor. Entry to this course is at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Assessment: 100% thesis.

MUSI2041. University choir 2 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)
(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course, which is open to all second-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the Department’s University Choir over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. University Choir 1 is not a prerequisite.
Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

MUSI2042. Contrapuntal techniques (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of contrapuntal techniques used in Western music. Topics include species counterpoint, free counterpoint, and 18th-century contrapuntal writing, with special reference to the style of J. S. Bach. Contrapuntal treatment in music beyond the common practice period will also be examined.
Pre-requisite: MUSI1020.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2043. Orchestration (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of orchestration. The characteristics of standard orchestral instruments will be studied, as well as the techniques of combining these instruments when writing for small and large orchestral forces. Aspects of psycho-acoustics will also be studied. Teaching materials will be derived from examples of the classical music repertoire and from film scores.
Pre-requisite: MUSI1020.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is about music and sound in American films. In this course, you will learn some basic music terms, how film composers work, what music does in film, and about film audio technology. This course is for almost anyone. There are no prerequisites, i.e., no previous musical knowledge required. However, you should really love films and music. There will be many viewing and listening assignments.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2046. Performance workshop 2 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Students may choose to enroll in any workshop offered by the Music Department, or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher approved by the Department over two semesters. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Performance Workshop 2 is open only to students taking a major in music. Please check with the Music Department for details. Performance Workshop 1 is not a prerequisite.
Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

MUSI2047. Advanced music performance 2 (for students in their second year of study) (6 credits)

Students prepare a recital of 30/40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced twentieth-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Advanced Music Performance 2 is available only to students taking a major in music. Advanced Music Performance 1 is not a prerequisite.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2048. Music, language, and meaning (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is open only to non-majors, explores studies on music that particularly consider it as a meaningful communicative human behavior. In what ways can music be construed as a “language”? How are emotions expressed in it? Are words equivalent to musical tones and phrases, sentences? What do these tones mean? Do they refer to things external to music or are they immanent in the music itself? Do they indicate human acts? Why do all human societies have songs and dances? And why are these associated with healing, occult and magic in ancient societies? How is music valued and used in modern technologically-advanced societies? In particular, where and how did the idea of listening to music in itself come about? Is music an object or an enchanting experience? All these questions center around a philosophy of music that views it as a sign. The course is therefore designed to foster critical thinking how and why humans have invested meanings into their music making activities as they communicated with one another.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
MUSI2049.  Music and power (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is open only to non-majors, looks into specific studies that highlight how music shapes or is shaped by power relations. It argues that the exercise of power is involved in the performance of songs and dances during events that range from playful, yet intimate, face to face gatherings to serious, impersonal, public rituals in advanced, complex societies. A theory of music is not just a theory of tones, but a theory of social processes that a music is about. This course will enable students to think critically about the power of music in various contexts of group relations that are not necessarily formal political in nature. Readings pertinent to the use of music in relation to gender, class, race, and ethnicity will reveal that music as power can galvanize consent, identity, conformity and cooperation, much as it can also become a moral weapon of the weak to resist domination and oppression.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2050.  Representation of the supernatural in music (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

From the very beginnings of human memory, witches, ghouls, ghosts and goblins have played a highly significant role in the formation and continuance of stories that have attempted an explanation of natural phenomena and inexplicable cultural conventions. In Western culture, visual, conceptual and aural embodiments of such mythological creatures have numerously appeared in sculpture, painting, literature and music. This course, which is open only to non-majors, surveys musical representations of the supernatural throughout the ages. It will focus on a selection of eclectic musical works ranging from expressions of veiled medieval occultism to present-day cinematic productions of gothic horror, in which mythology and the supernatural continue to resonate.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

MUSI2051.  Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is open to all students, is a performance-based introduction to West African music, in particular, the percussion ensemble. The course focuses on the music and dance of the Dagaaba and Ewe people of Ghana, in particular, the music for Gahu, a type of traditional music and dance of the Ewe people. No previous musical experience is necessary. Students will participate in 12 hours of intensive instruction during the summer and will have the opportunity to learn to play, sing and dance music for Gahu. There will also be introductory lectures on the cultural context of various West African musics including, *djembe*, * griot*, *high-life*, *juju* and *mbalax*.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

MUSI2052.  Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is a continuation of MUSI1020 Fundamentals of Tonal Music II, with emphasis on chromatic harmonies, larger forms such as rondo and sonata, and contrapuntal genres such as canon and fugue. The basic concepts of Schenkerian theory will also be introduced. Students are required to complete a number of harmonic exercises and analytical projects.

Prerequisite: MUSI1020.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2053. Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will focus on the modern and post-tonal techniques such as modality, atonality, serialism, minimalism, aleatoric music, collage, neo-tonality, jazz harmony, etc. Analytic techniques of pitch-class set theory, transformational theory, timbral analysis will also be introduced. Students are required to complete various analytical and technical projects.

Prerequisite: MUSI2052.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

**Level 300 courses**

**MUSI3008. University gamelan 2 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)**

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course, which is open to all students, focuses on Balinese gamelan or ‘orchestral’ performance, specifically the *gamelan gong kebyar*. No previous musical experience is necessary. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the *gamelan* over two semesters and by the end of the course students will be expected to know how to play the main melody, the main support parts, and the interlocking (*kotekan*) parts of selected compositions. In addition, students will be required to demonstrate their understanding of Balinese *gong kebyar* musical form by composing the interlocking parts for a specified melody. For this assignment, the class will be divided into groups consisting of four to six students. Students will also have the opportunity to participate in public performance.

Assessment: 20% coursework, 80% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

**MUSI3012. Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)**

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University’s orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or the equivalent on one of the following: flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, percussion, violin, viola, cello or double bass and must pass an audition. Orchestral Studies and Techniques 1 and 2 are not prerequisites.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

**MUSI3016. Directed study 2 (for students in their third year of study) (6 credits)**

This is a one-to-one course in which the student works with a supervisor throughout the year. During the first semester, the supervisor introduces theories and techniques of musical research through reading, discussion, and book reports. Towards the end of the semester, a research topic is to be decided upon between the student and supervisor. The second semester is devoted to the research on the topic and the writing of a thesis under the guidance of the supervisor. Entry to this course is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Directed Study 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% thesis.
MUSI3017. University choir 3 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course, which is open to all third-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the Department’s University Choir over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. University Choir 1 and University Choir 2 are not prerequisites.
Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

MUSI3018. Performance workshop 3 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Students may choose to enroll in any workshop offered by the Music Department, or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher approved by the Department over two semesters. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Performance Workshop 3 is open only to students taking a major in music. Please check with the Music Department for details. Performance Workshop 1 and Performance Workshop 2 are not prerequisites.
Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

MUSI3019. Advanced music performance 3 (for students in their third year of study) (6 credits)

Students prepare a recital of 30/40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced twentieth-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Advanced Music Performance 3 is available only to students taking a major in music. Advanced Music Performance 1 and Advanced Music Performance 2 are not prerequisites.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

Department of Philosophy

First Year

PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Human beings have always attempted to understand and control the world they live in by asking questions, and seeking effective answers, about that world. These attempts have taken many forms, but philosophy has always been a central part of this process of explanation and the progress of knowledge. The questions of what we can know, how we can know, and how we can use what we know, are prime examples of philosophical questions that have come down to us in a long history of inquiry – philosophy is a part of the natural and practical curiosity of mankind.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course is an introduction to philosophical issues about the mind. These include metaphysical questions about what minds are, whether the mind is something non-physical or whether it is some
kind of a computer. Then there are the epistemological questions about the limitation of human knowledge, such as whether we can really know what other people’s experiences are like, or whether there is a God.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL1003. Ethics and politics: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
One of the founders of Western philosophy, Socrates, claimed that the most important philosophical question is “How is one to live?” How are we to live in our relations with others as individuals (ethics)? And how are we to live together as communities and societies (politics)? This course will introduce some of the ways that key philosophers in the Western tradition have answered these questions. Reading texts by Plato and Aristotle in ancient Greece, and modern and contemporary writings by Rousseau, Kant, Mill, Rawls and contemporary feminists, we will explore questions about the way we relate to other people.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL1004. Chinese and western thought: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The course compares central themes in the philosophical dialogues of the Chinese and Western traditions. Topics may include Confucian intuition, Daoist paradox, Greek rationalism, British Empiricism, Existentialism, Pragmatism, Maoism, Zen Buddhism, and positivism.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL1005. Critical thinking and logic (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Critical thinking is a matter of thinking clearly and rationally. It is important for solving problems, effective planning, and expressing ideas clearly and systematically. We shall study the basic principles of critical thinking, and see how they can be applied in everyday life.
Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final exam.

PHIL1006. Elementary logic (3 credits)

(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This is a web-based self-study course on elementary formal logic. Formal logic uses special symbolic notations to study reasoning and arguments systematically. In this course we shall look at some basic concepts in logic, and learn how to use special logical symbols to construct and evaluate arguments. There are no lectures in this course, and all teaching material is available online for self-study. There are, however, optional tutorials for students to ask questions. Registered students should visit the philosophy department web site at the beginning of the semester to find out how they can obtain access to the learning material.
Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final exam.
Not available to students who have taken PHIL2510. Logic.
Second and Third Years

Group I: Knowledge and Reality

PHIL2110. Knowledge (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Theory of knowledge deals with the nature and possibility of knowledge and its limits. We shall address questions that include: Is Scepticism possible? Are some kinds of knowledge more basic than others? Are our views of the world really true or just elaborate stories that serve our purposes? Can philosophers learn about knowledge from psychology and physiology? What could philosophers add to their stories? Is there one concept of justification (reason) or many (social and cultural differences)? Is truth an important goal of knowledge?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2130. Philosophy of the sciences (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

If we want to find out about the world around us, we look to science to provide the answers to our questions. But why? What justifies our faith in this enterprise? In this course, we shall investigate two related questions. First, what is scientific method? We shall examine answers ranging from the rigid prescriptions of Popper to the anarchism of Feyerabend. Second, what reason do we have to think that the explanations provided by science are true? Here the answers range from optimism based on the success of science, to pessimism based on our repeated rejection of past theories. Along the way, we shall critically consider notions such as progress, objectivity, and the difference between science and non-science. We shall examine how philosophical questions arise in actual scientific practice. What examples are selected for this purpose will, to some extent, be determined by the interests of students.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There are no prerequisites for this course.

PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

How should we understand and explain human life and activities? This course will examine different models of explanation in the social sciences, and will proceed by case studies. Which cases are taken will depend on the interests and knowledge of those who enrol for the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There are no prerequisites for this course.

PHIL2150. Philosophy and biology (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Charles Darwin’s theory of evolution had a huge impact on the way we think about mankind’s place in the world. In this course we will discuss some of the philosophical consequences of this impact. No previous knowledge of the theory is required as we will begin with a critical introduction to its development and main features. Later in the course we will also consider the contemporary debate concerning the scope and limits of evolutionary theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
PHIL2210. Metaphysics (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course covers both the nature of reality and the nature of knowledge of it and treats the two questions as intrinsically connected. We shall examine a number of important theories of metaphysics, as well as anti-metaphysics, including those of Plato, Descartes, Hume, Kant, Nietzsche, Heidegger, and contemporary philosophers such as Habermas, Rorty and Putnam. We will treat these theories not only as representing different views on metaphysics but also as forming a logical order of development.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

We study Chinese views of reality, human nature, language, wisdom and the relation of each to human society. Our main texts will be Daoist texts from the classical period, but we shall also discuss Neo-Daoism, Buddhism and Neo-Confucian metaphysics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Group II: Mind and Language

PHIL2070. Pragmatism (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course is in two unequal parts. In the first and longer part, we shall study the writings of the classical pragmatists: Peirce, Dewey and James; in the second, we shall look more briefly at some of the so-called ‘neo-pragmatists’ such as Quine, Davidson and Putnam. We shall then consider the question of the relationship between these two schools, and think seriously about the recent suggestion that the earlier is in fact the better.

Topics to be discussed include: truth and knowledge; religion and science; and rationality, personality and aesthetics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

One of the central issues in contemporary philosophy of language and linguistics concerns whether and where one should draw the line between semantic meaning and pragmatic meaning, or the meanings had by the words and sentences a speaker uses, and what a speaker means in using those words and sentences. One reason the issue is central is that there are debates over the semantic meanings of certain expressions, e.g. names and definite descriptions. Without a general account of the difference between semantic and pragmatic meaning, these debates cannot be settled. Another reason the issue is central is that there are some who, in a roughly Wittgensteinian manner, deny that there is any real sense to be made of the notion of semantic, or literal, meaning. According to them, there is, therefore, no line between pragmatic and semantic meaning at all. In this course we will try to determine whether the distinction can be drawn, and, if so, where.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course will focus on some central issues in the philosophy of mind, issues which arise when we think of the relations between mind and the world. Among the issues to be discussed in the course are the following: What does having a mind enable us to do? Do non-human animals have minds? What is the relationship between mind and rationality?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

We shall look at some of the philosophical issues involved in studying minds and behaviour scientifically. We might discuss questions such as: Can we explain all mental phenomena in computational terms? What is consciousness? What is the role of language in thinking? How useful are neural networks in understanding the mind?

Assessment: 100% coursework.
The course has no prerequisite.

This is a second or third year course, which also forms part of the BCogSc programme. It is normally offered every year.

PHIL2240. Consciousness in philosophy and neuropsychology (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Consciousness has become a huge research topic in philosophy and cognitive science in recent years. Scientists have uncovered all kinds of interesting phenomena related to consciousness, and yet there is no consensus as to what a proper theory of consciousness should look like. In this course we focus on recent studies on consciousness in neuropsychology, and consider whether consciousness correlates with particular physical events in the brain, and how the empirical studies bear upon philosophical problems about consciousness. We might also investigate the topic of self-consciousness, discussing split-brain patients and the evidence for and against self-consciousness in infants and primates.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
The course has no prerequisite.

PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

In this course, we shall learn to analyse grammatically and semantically the language used in the classical texts of Chinese philosophy. The analysis will help us construct arguments in favour of or against various interpretations and translations. We briefly discuss texts from the Analects of Confucius, the Mozi, the Zhuangzi and then do a detailed analysis of the Daode Jing.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
PHIL2510. Logic (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This is an introductory course on basic formal logic. We shall study basic logical concepts, as well as formal systems of logic including sentential and predicate logic. We shall learn how logical notations can be used to identify logical truths, and to formalize and evaluate arguments. If we have time we might discuss more advanced topics such as the connection between computation and logic, and Gödel’s Theorems. Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before studying this course. To prepare for the course, they can either take PHIL1006 Elementary Logic, or study the online material on logic produced by the Department. For further details, please contact the Department.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2511. Paradoxes (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Paradoxes are arguments which proceed from highly plausible assumptions, through highly plausible and usually simple steps to highly implausible conclusions. Some examples: Zeno’s paradoxes of motion, Kant’s antinomies, the Liar and the paradox of the surprise examination. What such paradoxes show is that there is something deeply wrong with some of our most fundamental ways of thinking. We shall attempt to find solutions to certain of these paradoxes. Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before studying this course. To prepare for the course, they can either take PHIL1006 Elementary Logic, or study the online material on logic produced by the Department. For further details, please contact the Department.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
When thinking about inference, a number of concepts come to our attention, such as truth, logical constants, propositions, necessity, consequence, logical form. Various questions with which the course deals include: ‘What is the relation of Logic to reasoning?’; ‘What does the existence of paradoxes tell us about our accepted logical principles?’; ‘What is the best way to represent arguments in ordinary language if we wish to study the validity of such arguments?’; ‘Are there types of discourse which are by nature fuzzy, demanding a fuzzy logic for their representation?’; ‘Must logic fit empirical facts, or is it a ‘pure’ discipline?’ Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before studying this course. To prepare for the course, they can either take PHIL1006 Elementary Logic, or study the online material on logic produced by the Department. For further details, please contact the Department.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
What is a language, and what is involved in knowing or understanding a language? In this course we will see how philosophers and linguists answer such questions as the following: What can logic tell us about the grammar of natural languages? Are human beings born with a universal grammar? What makes a word meaningful? What is the difference between what we mean and what we convey
when we say something? How does a metaphor work? Can we learn something from slips of the tongue about the nature of language?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**Group III: Moral and Political Philosophy**

**PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The world has changed a great deal since the time of Marx. But Marxism, duly updated and refined, still has a lot to teach us about the nature of human society and historical change, the capitalist organization of society, the foundation and limits of liberal democracy, the constitution of power and the political. These and other issues raised by Marxism are, or ought to be, among the central concerns of political philosophy or philosophy of history. We will examine how Marxism, especially contemporary Marxism, can serve as a useful critique of liberal political philosophy and liberal political institutions. We will also discuss how Marxism itself needs to be transformed or reconceived in order to create an appealing democratic vision of genuine contemporary relevance.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2310. Theories of morality (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers some of the main highlights of 20th century moral philosophy, with passing attention to some of the earlier, historical background as needed. Questions covered include: Is morality relative or absolute? Can a moral practice be right in one culture but wrong in another? Is morality basically a form of personal or social opinion, or is there any way it can be made objective or even scientific? If morality is not science, is there any rational way of resolving moral disputes? Perspectives considered include religious and nature-based theories, performative theories, rational intuitionism, utilitarianism and modern theories of justice.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2340. Moral problems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many practical problems give rise to moral controversies. Among the questions to be considered in this course are ‘Should one person treat all others equally?’; ‘Is abortion a type of killing, and is it acceptable?’; ‘Should certain types of pornography be banned?’; ‘Does love require fidelity?’; ‘Can capital punishment be justified?’; ‘Is it right to take affirmative action in favour of groups who have been discriminated against in the past?’; ‘Should old people be helped to die, if that is what they wish?’.

These are all ‘large-scale’ questions, but we shall also be discussing less grand, but no less important moral dilemmas that we each confront from time to time.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2350. Philosophy of law (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall set the scene by contrasting classical Western and Chinese views of law. Then we shall focus
on what moral and political presuppositions are required to justify the rule of law. This will guide our view of how one ought to reason in interpreting the law, and finally see what the implications of theory of law are for our views of punishment, rights, justice, equality, responsibility, insanity, and negligence. This course should help you evaluate the arguments for the importance of the rule of law in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2355. Theories of justice (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

All of us care about justice but perhaps you seldom pause to reflect on the nature of justice and the many difficult issues which justice raises. This course introduces you to these issues and systematic ways of thinking about them. In a nutshell, justice is concerned with the question, How should the benefits and burdens of social cooperation be distributed among members of society under conditions of scarcity and conflicting values? Or, as Serge-Christophe Kolm puts it, “What should be done when different people’s desires or interests oppose one another and cannot all be fully satisfied? Justice is the justified answer to this question and its science is the theory of justice.” We will think about this question at two levels: the distribution of fundamental rights and duties in the basic structure of society; and the distribution of goods in particular domains, such as health care. Since controversy abounds at both levels, we will discuss and compare a variety of positions, including those of John Rawls, Brian Barry, Amartya Sen, Ronald Dworkin, Robert Nozick, Serge-Christophe Kolm, Norman Daniels, and Francis Kamm. We will also consider whether, and to what degree, Western theories of justice such as these are useful for thinking about issues of justice in Hong Kong and the PRC at large.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2360. Political philosophy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This survey course addresses fundamental questions in the history of political philosophy. Questions about government, justice, property and rights will be addressed through the work of a range of historical and contemporary thinkers. Philosophers to be studied may include Aristotle, Hobbes, Marx, Rawls, and others.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2362. Liberal democracy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Liberal democracy is the dominant political value and form of government in terms of power and influence in the world today. It is supposed to be a coherent combination of liberalism and democracy, and yet there are deep tensions between these two components. It is by identifying these tensions that we can best understand the workings of liberal democracy as a form of government and assess its plausibility and appeal as a political value. Within this context, such familiar topics as political agency, freedom, rights, and private life will be seen in a fresh light.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
PHIL2365. Philosophical problems of modernity (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will focus on responses to one of the key questions that is posed by twentieth century European philosophy: that is, what is the nature of this modernity in which we live? According to Marx, the experience of modernity is one in which ‘all that is solid melts into air’; while according to some contemporary philosophers this is precisely the experience of post-modernity. In this course, we will examine the responses of key 20th century philosophers to the question of modernity and postmodernity (these may include, Benjamin, Adorno & Horkheimer, Habermas, Foucault, Lyotard and Bauman). Particular attention will be paid to the way this questioning has lead to a reconceptualisation of ethics and politics in contemporary societies. Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2369. Philosophy of nature (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
In this course we will develop an understanding of historically and philosophically significant approaches to the environment such as anthropocentrism (mainstream environmentalism) and biocentrism (deep ecology). We will read authors both from the history of philosophy (Bacon, Descartes and Locke) as well as modern philosophers. We will look at the implications of these philosophies in recent environmental controversies in Hong Kong. Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.

PHIL2375. Philosophy of art (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course focuses on the philosophical issues which arise when we consider the nature of aesthetic appreciation and judgement. These are some of the questions which will be discussed in the course: Is beauty merely ‘in the eye of the beholder’? What differences might there be between aesthetic appreciation of art and aesthetic appreciation of nature? What is ‘representational art’? (Are film and photography representational art forms?) Do artworks ‘express emotion’? (If so, how can they do this?) Can censorship of artworks be justified? What is wrong with artistic fakes and forgeries? Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.

PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course introduces two ways of studying philosophy and literature in relation to each other. On the one hand, we shall try to illuminate a range of philosophical, particularly ethical, problems through a close reading of literary texts (which may include the work of Dostoevsky, Henry James, Lu Xun, and James Joyce). On the other hand, we shall bring the analytical resources of philosophy to bear on questions of literary theory and interpretation (for example, the role of the reader, the position of the writer and the ethics of reading). Both philosophical essays and literary works will be used in the course. Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.
PHIL2390. Philosophy of religion (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Topics discussed will include: the nature of religious experience, the existence of God, life after death, religion and morality, religion and reason.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.

PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: ethics (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
An introduction to comparative moral philosophy, with readings drawn from the classical Chinese tradition as well as from modern, analytical sources. Figures likely to be taken up include Confucius, Mencius, Mo Tzu and Han Fei Tzu. Attention will be given to the historical development of Chinese moral thinking through these key representatives. Questions to be taken up include the question of whether traditional Chinese thought can have relevance to us in the modern world, and how our beliefs about our nature may shape our beliefs about what is moral or immoral.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2480. Confucianism and the modern world (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course introduces some of the central ideas of Confucianism, particularly as they have been developed by Neo-Confucian thinkers, and considers the contemporary meaning and relevance of these ideas for societies with a Confucian tradition. The thematic focus of the course is on whether and how (Neo-)Confucianism promotes or hinders economic, political and cultural modernization. We shall also discuss how (Neo-)Confucianism interacts with Western ideas, and (in the case of the PRC) Marxism in the process of social transformation.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

Group IV: History of Philosophy

PHIL2001. The beginnings of philosophy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to include important early thinkers like Plato and Aristotle in the West, and/or Confucius and Lao Tze in China. Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet ‘Choices in Philosophy’.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course examines the works of early-modern philosophers writing on politics and science,
stressing the interconnections between them. We will examine the claim by some of these philosophers that modern science and technology hold the key to what Francis Bacon called ‘the relief of man’s estate’. We will read Bacon, Descartes, Bossuet, Locke, La Mettrie, Diderot and Rousseau.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2010. Plato (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course offers a general introduction to the central concerns of Plato’s philosophy. It focuses on Plato’s early and middle dialogues in which the enigmatic character of Socrates is central. It addresses Plato’s teachings on the role of philosophy in the life of the individual, the relation between knowledge and virtue, and his contribution to questions about the nature of love and desire.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The ancient Greek philosopher Aristotle (384-322 BCE) researched virtually every aspect of human knowledge, producing works that influence philosophy and many other fields down to the present. This course looks at his political and social philosophy; we will read his *Parts of Animals*, *Politics* and *Constitution of Athens*, examining his concepts of nature, human nature, slavery, property, citizenship, democracy, education and the ideal city.

Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2020. Descartes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The standard accounts of Descartes’ philosophy have tended to focus on his late metaphysics and epistemology, but this course is intended as an introduction to many more of the interesting aspects of Descartes’ thought. We shall, of course, discuss some of the standard issues in their rightful place (and discuss what that place might be), but we shall also consider Descartes’ contributions to, and philosophical thoughts about, e.g. physics, mathematics, and medicine. *(N.B. No specialist knowledge of these areas is required).* The reading will be a combination of Descartes’ primary texts (recently published in a very clear translation) and contemporary secondary material.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2025. Hume (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

David Hume (1711 – 1776) was one of the great founders of modern empiricism. This course will serve not only as an introduction to Hume’s philosophy, but also as an introduction to modern empiricism as developed especially in the analytical tradition of modern philosophy. The course will appeal especially to students interested in the theory of knowledge, metaphysics and philosophy of mind, as well as to students interested primarily in the history of philosophy. The course takes up key topics in Hume, such as: Hume’s theory of ideas; the formation of reason and
imagination; knowledge of the external world and skepticism with regard to the senses; induction; causation, probability and the idea of necessary connection; personal identity; freedom and determinism, reasoning in animals; miracles; virtue and vice in the context of Hume’s naturalism. Readings will be drawn primarily from Hume’s *A Treatise on Human Nature* and *An Enquiry Concerning Human Understanding*.

**PHIL2027. Rousseau (6 credits)**

(*This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*)

Jean-Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778) was one of the most important philosophers of the French eighteenth century. He was critical of the Enlightenment’s fascination with science, arguing that virtue, community and a kind of freedom, not technological ‘progress’, should be the goal of human striving. In this course we seek to understand Rousseau’s thought in its historical context; we consider how he can be considered a philosopher for our own time, who respected the rights of nature as well as those of humanity. We read selections from his *Confessions*, and the entire texts of his *Discourse on the Sciences and the Arts*, and his *Discourse on the Origins of Inequality among Men*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2030. Kant’s critical philosophy (6 credits)**

(*This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*)

Two aspects of Kant’s philosophy will be examined: first, topics in his theoretical philosophy such as objective knowledge, transcendental idealism and the thing-in-itself; second, topics in his practical philosophy such as moral duty, free will and rationality. Attempts will also be made to unify these two aspects of Kant’s philosophy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2035. Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)**

(*This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*)

The eighteenth-century European philosophical movement known as ‘The Enlightenment’ called all previous philosophy into question, destabilizing conventional views of humanity, nature, society and the cosmos; the Enlightenment influences philosophy to this day. This course examines important European thinkers such as Francis Bacon, Bernard Mandeville, Denis Diderot, Jean le Rond D’Alembert, Julien Offray de La Mettrie, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Immanuel Kant from a historical as well as philosophical perspective.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)**

(*This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.*)

Nietzsche occupies a special place in Western thought, both as a wholesale critic of the philosophical tradition that went before him (e.g. Socrates, Kant), and as a precursor of certain philosophical trends that are important today (e.g. Foucault, Derrida). This course offers an overview of Nietzsche’s
philosophy (including the will to power, perspectivism, nihilism, eternal return) and discusses Nietzsche’s influence on contemporary thought.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2060. Wittgenstein (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Wittgenstein said that his aim in philosophy was ‘to show the fly the way out of the fly bottle’. By this he meant that certain preconceptions, oversimplifications and poor analogies had led philosophers to construct misguided theories about such things as sensation, meaning, understanding and the nature of language, and that it was his task not to construct alternative theories but to point out the ways in which the theorists (including his earlier self) had become entrapped. This programme may appear modest, but Wittgenstein’s approach has had far-reaching consequences and his work has received more discussion than that of any other twentieth century philosopher and has influenced philosophy and many other disciplines.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2077. Habermas (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The important German philosopher Habermas, combining strengths of the Continental and Anglo-American philosophical traditions, has developed a highly influential theory on a wide range of moral, political and historical issues. This course is designed to provide a general introduction to Habermas’s interdisciplinary, comprehensive, and politically engaged way of doing philosophy. Topics covered include discourse ethics, the public sphere, social action and rationality, technology and science as ideology, the nature of modernity, and legitimation problems in late capitalism.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2085. Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to cover various important twentieth century thinkers (these may include Husserl, Heidegger, Sartre, Foucault, Derrida) and/or major movements in twentieth century European thought (such as phenomenology, existentialism, structuralism and poststructuralism). Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet ‘Choices in Philosophy’. Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.

PHIL2090. Foucault (6 credits)
(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
The work of French philosopher Michel Foucault (1924-1984) has been enormously influential in many fields: from philosophy and politics to social theory and gender studies. This course offers a general introduction to this work, with particular focus on power, knowledge and sexuality. It will end with a consideration of Foucault’s contribution to a contemporary re-thinking of subjectivity and ethics.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
There is no prerequisite for this course.

PHIL2440. Confucius (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
This course will look at modern interpretations of traditional Confucianism, primarily from the perspective of modern analytical philosophy, but with some attention also to the sociological literature, and to modern applications of Confucianism, for example in Singapore.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2442. Mencius (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
Mencius, the most influential of Confucian philosophers, presents interesting challenges to interpretation. Does his philosophy provide a basis for a Chinese theory of human rights? Is his conception of human nature defensible today? Which tradition of interpretation (mind or principle) gives the most plausible interpretation? We shall discuss these questions while looking at some modern scholarly interpretations of Mencius in his ancient context.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)
In this course we shall explore different lines of interpretation of Zhuangzi’s Daoist philosophy. Students will participate in defending either relativist, sceptical or mystical readings of key passages. We shall start our analysis with the historical context and some textual theory. Then we shall discuss several chapters in some detail, including the historical account of the development of Daoism in ‘Tianxia’, the relativism in ‘Autumn Floods’ and ‘Free and Easy Wandering’, and finally the analytic scepticism and pluralism of the ‘Essay on Making Things Equal’.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

Courses of unspecified category

PHIL3810. Senior seminar (6 credits)

This course will focus each year on a different key philosophical text. Presentations will be made by students and discussed according to a schedule worked out in advance between students and the course co-ordinator. Selected third-year students will be included.
Assessment: 100% coursework.

This is a third-year course, and is normally offered every year. Permission to attend it will be given to those students with good second year grades.

PHIL3910. Senior thesis (12 credits)

A thesis may be prepared under supervision for submission not later than March 31 of the final year. Students have to decide a topic on which they would like to write, then select a teacher in the relevant
field and discuss the project with him/her, before the end of their second year. If the teacher deems the project viable, then a thesis title must be agreed by the closing date of June 15. The student will then have to work on the thesis over the summer, and be able to demonstrate progress made. If the progress is adequate, work on the thesis may continue; if not, the student will have to take two courses instead.

There are no word limits prescribed, but theses tend to be between 15,000 and 25,000 words in length. Assessment will be based entirely on the completed thesis. This course is only available to students majoring in Philosophy.
FACULTY OF SCIENCE
Department of Biochemistry

BIOC1001  Basic Biochemistry (6 credits)
This course is designed to present an overview of biochemistry and to provide an understanding of the basic mechanisms underlying life processes. It is an independent course which can be taken by students from various disciplines. The course also prepares students for further studies in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology.
Prerequisite  AS Biology or AS Chemistry

BIOC1003  Introduction to Molecular Genetics (6 credits)
The objectives of this course are to provide students with basic and up-to-date knowledge on the structures and functions of nucleic acids, to give students a general picture of the molecular process of gene expressions, and to introduce students to recombinant DNA technology.
Prerequisite  AS Biology or AS Chemistry

BIOC2601  Metabolism (6 credits)
This course aims to provide the basic concepts of metabolism: the events and their importance in relation to the survival of living organisms. Taken together with BIOC1001 and BIOC2602, this will lay the foundation for the more advanced courses offered in the Biochemistry discipline.
Prerequisite  BIOC1001

BIOC2602  Understanding Metabolic Diseases (6 credits)
To widen and deepen knowledge and understanding of metabolism. By using a problem-based learning (PBL) approach, students are trained in critical thinking and problem-solving skills. Students will be able to grasp the major effects on metabolic integration and control and they can use these concepts with greater confidence and success in approaching new problems and new areas of study.
Prerequisite  BIOC1001
Co-requisite  BIOC2601

BIOC2603  Principles of Molecular Genetics (6 credits)
To provide basic knowledge on molecular genetics, illustrating modern concepts with current experimental approaches and computer-assisted programmes. Together with BIOC3613 and BIOC3609 taken in the second year, a comprehensive background is provided for advanced study and/or research in molecular biology.
Prerequisite  BIOC1001 or BIOC1003 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1106

BIOC2604  Essential Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology (6 credits)
To give students a general overview of different experimental approaches and model systems, and to provide students with hands-on experience in basic biochemical and molecular techniques.
Prerequisite  BIOC1001 or BIOC1003 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1106
**BIOC3608 Introduction to Bioinformatics** (6 credits)

This course will examine existing programs and services available on the World Wide Web for DNA and protein sequence analysis. Students will also learn how to use the sequence analysis GCG package installed locally. The underlying principles of these analysis programs and services will be presented. Students will learn how to retrieve, analyze, and compare protein and DNA sequence similarities. A basic introduction to protein modeling will also be presented.

Prerequisite: BIOC2603 or BIOL2303 or BIOL3308

**BIOC3609 Molecular Medicine** *(6 credits)*

To provide up-to-date knowledge of the molecular and genetic basis of human diseases including cancer, thereby preparing the students for a career in medical molecular biology, biotechnological, pharmaceutical and genome research.

Prerequisite: BIOC2603 or BIOL2303; basic knowledge of molecular genetics and molecular biology is assumed

*This course is not available to students taking BIOL3308 Applied Molecular Biology and/or BIOL3213 Advanced Techniques and Instrumentation in Animal Biology.*

**BIOC3610 Advanced Biochemistry I** (6 credits)

This is part of the advanced series designed to bring students to the understanding of current concepts, physicochemical bases and techniques in modern Biochemistry. The aim is to help students to develop critical thinking and analytical skills thus equipping them for beginning research projects or professional training in biomedical sciences.

Prerequisite: 1) BIOC1001; and 2) BIOL2301; and 3) BIOC2601 or BIOL2115

**BIOC3611 Advanced Biochemistry II** (6 credits)

This is part of the advanced series designed to bring students to the understanding of current concepts, physicochemical bases and techniques in modern biochemistry. Hence to equip them for beginning research projects or professional training in biomedical sciences.

Prerequisite: BIOL3610

**BIOC3612 Biochemistry Seminar** *(6 credits)*

To strengthen the student’s capacity to critically assess, think, write and talk about issues in molecular life sciences. The course employs active learning in small groups; students will be guided to optimize their performance in teamwork and their communication skills.

Prerequisite: 1) BIOC1001; and 2) BIOC2601 or BIOC2603

Co-requisite: Nil; preferably taken in the 3rd year

*Not offered from 2006-2007 onwards.*

**BIOC3613 Molecular Biology of the Gene** (6 credits)

To provide an up-to-date knowledge of molecular biology, especially with respect to eukaryotic gene expression, molecular embryology.

Prerequisite: BIOC2603 or BIOL2303 or BIOL3308
BIOC3614  Biochemistry Project (12 credits)

To enable students to acquire the basic skills in scientific research: literature search, critical reasoning, communication, teamwork and time management. The course is particularly useful for those students who intend to pursue a career in life science.

Prerequisite  BIOC1001 and BIOC2604 and good overall performance in 2nd year courses
Co-requisite  BIOC3610, BIOC3611, BIOC3612

BIOC3615  Advanced Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology (6 credits)

This is an advanced experimental-based course for students majoring in Biochemistry and related disciplines. The aim is to provide the necessary training for students to pursue postgraduate research education and potential employment in a scientific laboratory/industry environment.

Prerequisite  1) BIOC1001; and 2) BIOC0002 or BIOC1003; and 3) BIOC2604

Department of Botany and/or Zoology

BIOL0002  Introduction to Food and Nutritional Science (3 credits)

The course enables students to gain an appreciation of the scope of Food Science as a discipline. This is an independent course which can be taken by students from various disciplines. It also prepares students for further studies in Food and Nutritional Science.

Prerequisite  Nil

BIOL0118  Bioethics (6 credits)

The aim is to explore the ethical implications of the latest major advances in biology and medicine.

Prerequisite  Nil

BIOL0120  The Gene * (3 credits)

The objective of the course is to expose students to the impacts of gene to the modern society. With the completion of the human genome in the next three years not only promises a better quality of life, it also brings lots of technical and ethical issues that the general public need to deal with. The goal of the course is designed to open up students from all backgrounds to this basic unit of inheritance called gene and its impact on various other scientific and social disciplines. Outline includes but not limited to the chemical basis of gene, gene evolution, gene chips, animal cloning, gene and disease, human genome and computer science, gene and behavior, genetic implications to law and society.

Prerequisite  Nil (not offered to students with AL Biology)

* Students with a pass in AL / AS Biology or who are in the Biology, Biochemistry, Animal and Plant Biotechnology, Environmental Life Science, and Food and Nutritional Science programmes and who are taking or have taken YSCN0004 are not allowed to take this course.

BIOL0126  Fundamentals of Biology * (6 credits)

This course is designed to provide students a general concept of the various disciplines of experimental biology and prepare them for further intermediate and advanced courses in biology. It takes a systematic approach to look at the key principles that govern the survival of life forms. The course is opened to those who wish to take a minor in Biology or General Science but do not have A-level biology.
Prerequisite HKCEE Biology

* Students who have passed HKAL Biology should take BIOL1122 Fundamental Biology. This course is not available to students who have taken BIOL1122 or any level 2 and level 3 biology courses.

BIOL0127 Contemporary Nutrition: Insights and Controversies * (3 credits)

What you eat greatly affects your well-being, and this is especially true in recent years when nutrition has become one of the hottest topics in town for men and women of all ages. What food is good for our health? How much do we need to eat? Which dietary plan is scientifically sound and effective? Everywhere we go, we are bombarded by different messages, from vitamins to functional food products, on how food components or treatments impact on body functions and health. How reliable is the information from the mass media? Are these facts or myths? This course aims to provide health conscious individuals with fundamental knowledge to decipher information related to nutrition and health. Such knowledge is vital to everyone not just in a trendy fashion or for a short term dietary plan, it is essential to the building of good eating habits that could promote health for a lifetime.

Prerequisite Nil

* Not for students in the Food and Nutritional Science programme, major or minor.

BIOL1104 Biological Techniques, Instrumentation and Data Processing (6 credits)

To show students the basic techniques and principles of instruments and data processing.

Prerequisite AL or AS Biology

BIOL1106 Genetics (3 credits)

The objective of the course is to provide an introduction to the various aspects of genetics. At the end of the course students are expected to know the fundamentals of classical, population and molecular genetics.

Prerequisite AL Biology

BIOL1107 Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction (3 credits)

The course is designed to provide an introduction to developmental biology and reproduction animals through an integrated approach. Reproductive and developmental processes will be examined at the cellular and organismic levels.

Prerequisite AL Biology

BIOL1119 Introductory Microbiology * (6 credits)

The course will provide an introduction to the microbial diversity of life on earth including bacteria, fungi, microalgae, viruses, and other microorganisms. Emphasis will be placed on organisms that are of importance in our everyday lives. The course will also include components of biotechnological, food and medical microbiology. The course will provide an essential foundation for all biology students, as an understanding of the role and uses of microorganisms is a basic requirement of most biological subjects. The course leads to various 2nd and 3rd level courses in microbiology.

Prerequisite AL Biology
The Department of Ecology & Biodiversity also contributes to the teaching of the course.

BIOL1121 Animal Form and Functions (3 credits)
This is a fundamental course which intends to show the students the major animal life forms on earth and how they can survive in a given environment. The relationships between body forms, body architectures, environmental interactions, functional adaptations and evolution will be illustrated.
Prerequisite AL Biology

BIOL1122 Functional Biology * (6 credits)
The course is designed to provide an introduction to modern developments in experimental biology through an integrated approach. Life processes will be examined at the molecular, cellular and organismic level.
Prerequisite AL Biology
* BIOL0126 and BIOL1122 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL1123 Food Chemistry (3 credits)
The course is designed to give students a basic understanding of chemistry of the major and minor components in food systems.
Prerequisite AL or AS Chemistry

BIOL1125 Introduction to Biochemistry * (6 credits)
This course is designed to provide undergraduate (non-biochemistry major) an overview of fundamental concepts in biochemistry as well as hands-on experience in biochemical techniques.
Prerequisite AL or AS Biology
* Students who passed BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry are not allowed to take this course.

BIOL1513 Food Science Laboratory (3 credits)
The course is designed to introduce students to some basic practical training related to food science and nutrition.
Prerequisite AL or AS Chemistry

BIOL1514 Nutrition and Metabolism * (6 credits)
This is an independent course compulsory for students in the Food & Nutritional Science programme, but also opens to students in other life sciences disciplines. The fundamental concepts in nutrition will be introduced. An integrated approach will be used in discussing the interactions between diet and intermediary metabolism.
Prerequisite AL or AS Biology
* BIOL1514 and BIOL2510 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL2004 Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi * (3 credits)
This course provides an overview of the uses of filamentous fungi in biotechnology, the potential uses of fungal products and the methods by which scientists search for and develop these new products.
Prerequisite BIOL1119
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2109</td>
<td>Crop Science and Economic Botany</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide an understanding of the inherent characteristics of the individual plant, and of the crop, which limit their productivity; to examine cultural practices from more fundamental principles and to introduce methods in the analysis of crop productivity and economics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2111</td>
<td>Molecular Microbiology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is intended for biology, biotechnology and biochemistry students who would like to understand the modern fundamentals of microbiology. At the end of the course the students are expected to know the physiological, biochemical and molecular aspects of microbiology.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2112</td>
<td>Plant Physiology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To give an understanding of plant processes such as plant growth and development and their regulatory mechanisms.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2114</td>
<td>Plant Biochemistry and Molecular Biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To present current developments in selected areas of plant biochemistry and plant molecular biology.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2115</td>
<td>Cell Biology &amp; Cell Technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide a coherent understanding of the structure and function of cells, and the principles and applications of cell culture and instrumentation in biology and biotechnology.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035 or BIOC1001 or BIOL1125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2116</td>
<td>Genetics I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is the first of an integrated pair of courses, Genetics I and Genetics II, aiming to provide balanced coverage of many areas in genetics. The focus of Genetics I is on the basic principles of genetics. Genetics II will cover more advanced topics of modern genetics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2117</td>
<td>Genetics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is the second of an integrated pair of courses, Genetics I and Genetics II, aiming to provide balanced coverage of many areas in genetics. The focus of Genetics I is on the basic principles of genetics. Genetics II covers more advanced topics of genetics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BIOL2201  Neuroscience * (6 credits)
To provide a comprehensive picture of how the nervous system and neurones work in animals both as sensory input, integrator, motor output, and for learning, memory and behavioural patterns.
Prerequisite  BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035

BIOL2202  General Parasitology (6 credits)
To provide the student with a broad basic knowledge on various aspects of disease transmissions and reactions of the host against infectious agents. The course is intended to provide training for future scientists, biology teachers, and workers in public health, meat in inspection, food laboratory, diagnostic laboratory; immunodiagnosis marketing and biotechnology.
Prerequisite  BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035

BIOL2203  Reproduction (6 credits)
To provide students with the basic knowledge on various aspects of reproductive biology. Basic concepts on evolution of sex, human sexuality & sexual behavior, molecular mechanisms for sex determination & differentiation, developmental aspects of gamete formation, neuroendocrinology of reproductive functions, and recent advancements in reproductive biotechnology will be discussed.
Prerequisite  BIOC1001 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126

BIOL2205  Basic Immunology * (6 credits)
To provide a broad understanding of animal immune systems. Topics will also include the application of a variety of immunological methods to research and disease diagnosis.
Prerequisite  BIOC1001 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126
* BIOL2205 Basic Immunology is not available to students taking BIOC2606 Applied Human Biochemistry.

BIOL2207  Endocrinology (6 credits)
To provide an advanced course on hormones and regulation of metabolism.
Prerequisite  BIOC1001 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126

BIOL2208  Vertebrate Comparative Anatomy and Palaeontology * (6 credits)
This course provides the anatomical background to comprehend the evolutionary and functional adaptations in vertebrate animals through to the evolution of man. The course will examine both the fossil evidence and the comparison of anatomical structures in existing forms. The course is open to Biological Science students, Geology and Earth Science students and welcome others from non-science curricular.
BIOL2209 Developmental Biology (6 credits)
The course provides important insights into mechanisms regulating the early stages of animal life and is particularly relevant to the understanding of the functional aspects of body systems.
Prerequisite BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1107

BIOL2210 Genetics and Evolution (6 credits)
To understand the evolutionary forces that have an impact on levels of genetic variation in plant, animal, and human populations. The course also covers the rapidly expanding molecular approaches for genetic studies of populations.
Prerequisite BIOL1106

BIOL2215 Animal Physiology (6 credits)
To provide a fundamental understanding on the processes that dictate the functions and activities of living matters with particular references to animals and humans. An integrated approach is emphasized to provide students the perspective on how homeostasis is achieved through the coordination of systems and functions.
Prerequisite BIOC1001 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1121 or BIOL0126

BIOL2301 Protein Structure and Function * (6 credits)
To provide students with a good understanding of protein structure, how structure subserves function, and the methods for study of both. This course provides a strong foundation for advanced courses in biochemistry and biotechnology.
Prerequisite BIOC1001 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1102 or BIOL0126
* The Department of Biochemistry also contributes to the teaching of the course.

BIOL2302 Fermentation Technology (6 credits)
To introduce the key concepts and principles involved in fermentation technology, and discuss how fermentation technology is used in the food and biotechnology industries.
Prerequisite BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123 or BIOL1119

BIOL2303 Introduction to Molecular Biology (6 credits)
To provide students with basic knowledge in molecular biology and gene cloning techniques with emphasis on manufacturing of cell products. This course will give Biology students a complete picture of the recent developments and applications in gene technology and prepare biotechnology students for further advanced course in genetic engineering.
Prerequisite BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2304</td>
<td>Aquacultural Biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course discusses modern technologies and laboratory support for aquaculture and the processing of aquaculture products.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2305</td>
<td>Agricultural Biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course discusses applications of biotechnology in agriculture and animal husbandry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2313</td>
<td>Intermediate Botany Project</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is designed for students who wish to gain research experience at an early stage of their degree. It provides an opportunity to do an individual experimental research project supervised by a member of the Department of Botany.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: Relevant first year courses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2314</td>
<td>Intermediate Zoology Project</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is to provide research experience in experimental biology to second year students with good academic performance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: Requires good performance in relevant first year courses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2501</td>
<td>Food Processing and Preservation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An introduction to the basic principles and methodology of food processing and preservation technology with emphasis on major methods including high and low temperature processing, concentration and dehydration, and food packaging.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL0002 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2502</td>
<td>Food Technology *</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is intended for students planning to enter the food industry. This course offers an introduction to physical and engineering principles relevant to the food industry, and an in-depth analysis of selected methods and problems in food processing and preservation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL0002 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123</td>
<td>* Not offered in 2005-2006.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2503</td>
<td>Grain Production &amp; Utilization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide a broad understanding of the utilization and significance of the major cereal grains in the food industry and in human health and nutrition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: BIOL0002 or BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BIOL2505   Food Safety and Quality Management (6 credits)

To provide exposure to some key management concepts used to produce safe high-quality food products that will succeed in the marketplace. To introduce students to the use of the business case-study method in individual, team and class-based learning.

Prerequisite   BIOL0002 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123

BIOL2507   Meat and Dairy Science (6 credits)

To provide a broad understanding on modern practice and technology of meat and dairy production, processing and marketing.

Prerequisite   BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123

BIOL2508   Food Toxicology (6 credits)

To provide an understanding of the basic concepts of toxicology and to discuss the major types of toxins found in food and food handling processes.

Prerequisite   BIOL1105 or BIOL1123

BIOL2509   Functional Foods * (6 credits)

Functional Foods or Nutraceuticals have been rapidly gaining market share as food supplements in the modern diet in addition to the traditional vitamins and mineral supplements. This course discusses the issues revolving around the development and marketing of these products, and includes topics such as the role of special food ingredients to reduce the risk of cardiovascular diseases, and cancer; to modulate immune functions, mood and performance; and in the control of food intake and weight management. The use of special proteins, amino acids, and medical foods, including Traditional Chinese Medicine, to provide support for certain medical conditions will be assessed. Testing for pharmacological activity, bioavailability, efficacy, stability, and toxicity, and manufacturing and packaging standards (GLP and GMP practices) required to gain approval by regulating agencies, e.g. U.S. Food and Drug Administration, will also be discussed.

Prerequisite   BIOL1105 or BIOL1123
Co-requisite   BIOL3511

* Not for students who have taken BIOL2519.

BIOL2515   Food Microbiology * (6 credits)

This course provides the key concepts and principles of food microbiology with special emphasis on the interaction between microorganisms and food. Microbial food production, microbial food spoilage and foodborne diseases will be discussed in detail.

Prerequisite   BIOL0002 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123

* The Department of Ecology & Biodiversity also contributes to the teaching of the course.

BIOL2517   Food Analysis (3 credits)

To introduce the key concepts in professional food analysis in an industry context. To discuss the choice of analytical methods and the interpretation of results. Major instrumental techniques used in food analysis will be covered.

Prerequisite   BIOC1001 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1104 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126
BIOL2518  Laboratory in Nutritional Science (3 credits)
To provide students a comprehensive training on laboratory techniques, experimental approaches and the use of different model systems in nutritional sciences. This course aims to equip students with the basic skills in conducting nutritional studies.
Prerequisite  BIO1514

BIOL2519  Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods  * (6 credits)
The course has two interrelated parts. First, the functional roles of essential micronutrients in physiologic and metabolic processes will be presented. Second, the concept of functional foods and their role in disease risk reduction will be discussed. The course would appeal to students who have interest in the science, marketing and regulatory aspects of health foods and dietary supplements.
Prerequisite  BIO1514
*  Not for students who have taken BIO3511.

BIOL2520  Food Toxicology  * (3 credits)
To provide an understanding of the basic concepts of toxicology and to discuss the major types of toxins and food contaminants found in food and food handling processes.
Prerequisite  BIOL1105 or BIOL1123
*  Offered from 2006-2007.

BIOL2521  Food Engineering (6 credits)
This course is intended for students planning to enter the food industry. This course offers an introduction to physical and engineering principles relevant to the food industry, and an in-depth analysis of selected methods and problems in food processing and preservation.
Prerequisite  BIOL0002 or BIOL1105 or BIOL1123

BIOL3212  Applied Immunology  * (6 credits)
A follow-up course of BIOL2205. The aim is to provide the latest knowledge on the practical applications of Immunology in biological research, serodiagnosis and industries.
Prerequisite  BIOL2205
*  BIOL3212 Applied Immunology is not available to students taking BIOC2606 Applied Human Biochemistry.

BIOL3213  Advanced Techniques and Instrumentation in Animal Biology  * (6 credits)
A follow-up course of BIOL1104. The aim of this course is to introduce students with the latest techniques and instrumentation used in animal biological research.
Prerequisite  1) BIOL1104; and 2) BIOL2303
*  BIOL3213 Advanced Techniques and Instrumentation in Animal Biology is not available to students taking BIOC3609 Molecular Medicine.
BIOL3214  General Virology (6 credits)

This Course provides the fundamental principles of virology so that students can understand the pathogenesis of major viral diseases that affect animal health. The course will prepare students for profession or graduate work in virology, medicine and biotechnology.

Prerequisite  BIOC2603 or BIOC1003 or BIOL2303 or BIOL2205

BIOL3306  Applied Genetic Engineering (6 credits)

This is a follow-up course on the application of molecular biology techniques in problem solving. The course content will be modified regularly so as to accommodate new advances in the rapidly expanding field of genetic engineering applications.

Prerequisite  BIOC2603 or BIOL2303

BIOL3307  The Biotechnology Industry (6 credits)

This course provides an overview of the various fields of biotechnologies, the development of a biotechnology product, and the operation of biotechnology companies.

Prerequisite  BIO2603 or BIOL2303

BIOL3308  Applied Molecular Biology in Mammalian Science * (6 credits)

A follow-up course of BIOL2303 or BIOC2603. The aim is to provide the latest knowledge on the practical applications of molecular biology related to the mammalian genomes.

Prerequisite  BIOL2303

* BIOL3308 Applied Molecular Biology in Mammalian Science is not available to students taking BIOC3609 Molecular Medicine.

BIOL3309  Botany Project (12 credits)

To provide experience of biological research by planning and carrying out a small project under the supervision of a member of staff.

Prerequisite  Good performance in level 2 courses

BIOL3310  Zoology Project (12 credits)

To provide experience of biological research by planning and carrying out a small project under the supervision of a member of staff.

Prerequisite  Requires good performance in relevant level 2 courses

BIOL3311  Botany Dissertation (6 credits)

Students will undertake a dissertation on an agreed topic in plant sciences, microbiology or food science. The student will develop scientific writing and presentation skills, and will make extensive use of IT and library resources.

Prerequisite  Requires completion of relevant level 2 courses
BIOL3312  **Zoology Dissertation** (6 credits)

Students will undertake a dissertation on an agreed topic in *biological sciences*. The course will enhance the students’ overall capability in producing a formal document through emphases on problem identification, content selection, efficient use of IT and library resources, scientific writing and oral presentation skills.

Prerequisite  Requires completion of relevant level 2 courses

BIOL3315  **Animal Biotechnology** * (6 credits)

This course discusses the key concepts and principles involved in animal biotechnology, and their applications in animal industry and molecular medicine.

Prerequisite  BIOL2303

* *Offered from 2006-2007.*

BIOL3316  **Plant Biotechnology** * (6 credits)

This course covers the principles and applications of plant biotechnology. The significance of plant biotechnology in agriculture and its emerging role in molecular farming for production of biopharmaceuticals and other high-value proteins will be discussed.

Prerequisite  BIOL2303 or BIOC2603

* *Offered from 2006-2007.*

BIOL3317  **Microbial Biotechnology** * (6 credits)

This course is intended for students who would like to understand the application of modern microbiology in biotechnology. The microbial systems being used include different types of viruses, bacteria, fungi and algae. At the end of the course the students are expected to know the parameters and conditions that affect the yield of production and the systems available for the expression of various types of biotechnology products.

Prerequisite  BIOL2303

* *Offered from 2006-2007.*

BIOL3512  **Diet and Disease** (6 credits)

The course deals with diseases associated with diet and basic dietetics.

Prerequisite  1) BIOL1102 or BIOL1122 or BIOL0126; and  2) BIOL2506; and  3) BIOL2510

BIOL3516  **Nutrition and Brain Function** * (3 credits)

To highlight the impact of nutrient provision on brain function and to discuss various effects of nutrition and diet on mental function and behaviour.

Prerequisite  BIOL2215 or BIOL2519

* *Offered from 2006-2007.*

BIOL3522  **Nutrigenomics** (3 credits)
Recent advances in the understanding of human genes has resulted in the emergence of a new science called Nutrigenomics. This course aims to provide students a basic understanding on the relation between genetic variation and diet-related diseases. A genetically-based nutrition and dietary therapy intervention approach for maintenance of health will be explored.

Prerequisite: BIOC1001 or BIOL1125 or BIOL1106 or BIOL2303

**BIOL3523  Principles of Chinese Medicated Diet * (3 credits)**

To provide basic knowledge on Chinese medicated diet. Illustrating historical and modern concepts of Chinese Medicated diet and encourage research and development with current experimental approaches. This is a valuable course for students in the Food and Nutritional Science programme, but also opens to students in other programmes.

Prerequisite: BIOL2519

* Offered from 2006-2007.

**BIOL3524  Diet and Disease * (3 credits)**

The course deals with diseases associated with diet and basic dietetics.

Prerequisite: BIOL1514 and BIOL2519

* Offered from 2006-2007.

**BIOL3525  Food Product Development (3 credits)**

To introduce the key concepts and techniques used in food product development. Students will work in small groups to design, develop and produce a new food product. Appropriate for students in Food and Nutritional Science Programme or Major.

Prerequisite: BIOL2501 or permission of the course coordinator

**BIOL3526  Advanced Laboratory in Nutritional Science * (3 credits)**

This course is a follow-up to BIOL2518. The emphasis will be on human nutrition related techniques. Taken together, the two courses will provide students the necessary knowledge to pursuit postgraduate research education as well as potential employment as a nutritionist in public and private sectors.

Prerequisite: BIOL1514 and BIOL2518

* Offered from 2006-2007.

**Department of Chemistry**

**CHEM0003  Chemistry and Daily Life * (3 credits)**

This general education course is designed as an elective for students in all disciplines and all years without strong chemistry background. It gives an overview of some important chemical aspects that we encounter in our daily life.

Prerequisite: Nil (not offered to Chemistry major students)

* Students who are taking or have taken CHEM1101, CHEM1206, CHEM1502, CHEM1506 or YSCN0011 are not allowed to take CHEM0003.
CHEM1001  Chemical Principles for Earth and Life Sciences * (6 credits)

To provide basic chemical knowledge for the understanding of the involvement of chemistry in processes taking place on earth and in biological systems.

Prerequisite  AL or AS Chemistry

* Students who are taking or have taken any one of the courses CHEM1301, CHEM1401, CHEM1406, CHEM1502 and CHEM1506 cannot take CHEM1001.

CHEM1206  General and Analytical Chemistry (6 credits)

To provide basic knowledge of general and analytical chemistry. This course is a pre-requisite for the advanced chemistry courses in the second and third years.

Prerequisite  AL or AS Chemistry

CHEM1301  Basic Inorganic Chemistry * (6 credits)

To provide students with the basic principles and knowledge in inorganic chemistry and to introduce its relevance to biological processes and materials science.

Prerequisite  AL Chemistry

* Students who are taking or have taken any one of the courses CHEM1301, CHEM1406, CHEM1502 and CHEM1506 cannot take CHEM1001.

CHEM1401  Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry * (6 credits)

To provide students entering biological, health related or environmental fields with basic knowledge in organic chemistry.

Prerequisite  AL or AS Chemistry

* CHEM1401 and CHEM1406 are mutually exclusive. Students who are planning to take CHEM2402 should take CHEM1406.

CHEM1406  Basic Organic Chemistry * (6 credits)

To educate the student in the terminology, methodology and problem solving skills appropriate to the study of carbon based molecules in both their academic and practical applications.

This course is a pre-requisite for CHEM2402, Intermediate Organic Chemistry.

Prerequisite  AL or AS Chemistry

Co-requisite  CHEM2507 are preferred

* CHEM1401 and CHEM1406 are mutually exclusive. Students who are taking or have taken any one of the courses CHEM1301, CHEM1406, CHEM1502 and CHEM1506 cannot take CHEM1001.

CHEM1506  Basic Physical Chemistry * (6 credits)

The object of the course is to provide an understanding of the fundamental concepts in physical chemistry as a basis for study at the intermediate and advanced levels.

Prerequisite  AL Chemistry

* Students who are taking or have taken any one of the courses CHEM1301, CHEM1406, CHEM1502 and CHEM1506 cannot take CHEM1001.
Students who are taking or have taken CHEM1101, CHEM1502 or CHEM1506 are not allowed to take CHEM0003.

**CHEM2002 Instrumental Chemical Analysis* (6 credits)**

To cover the basic principles and applications of chemical instrumentation for biological, geological, and environmental analysis. This course aims to provide a good working knowledge, in addition to the principles, of instruments that are commonly used in a chemical laboratory.

Prerequisite CHEM1001

* CHEM2002 Instrumental Chemical Analysis is not available to students who are taking or have taken CHEM2202 Chemical Instrumentation.

**CHEM2102 Environmental Chemistry** (6 credits)

This course introduces students to Environmental Chemistry and enables them to understand the chemical principles involved in various environmental phenomena and processes.

Prerequisite CHEM1001 or CHEM1502 or CHEM1506

**CHEM2103 Chemical Process Industries and Analysis** (6 credits)

To familiarize with typical chemical industries important in local and global economy. To understand the technology of chemicals manufacturing and chemical processes in general industry.

Prerequisite CHEM1502 or CHEM1506

**CHEM2108 Intermediate Chemistry Project* (6 credits)**

This course is designed for second year students who would like to take an early experience on research. It offers students an opportunity to carry out small scale chemical projects by themselves.

Prerequisite CHEM1206, CHEM1301, CHEM1406, CHEM1506 and CHEM2507

* Exceptional academic strength of the students is required for taking this course.

**CHEM2109 Introduction to Materials Chemistry** (6 credits)

This course provides an introduction to materials chemistry. Some basic material characterization techniques will also be introduced. This course is essential for students who wish to take advanced materials course.

Prerequisite CHEM1301 or CHEM1406

**CHEM2202 Chemical Instrumentation* (6 credits)**

To cover the basic principles and applications of chemical instrumentation. This course aims to provide a good working knowledge, in addition to the principles, of instruments that are commonly used in a chemical laboratory.

Prerequisite CHEM1001 or CHEM1201 or CHEM1206

* CHEM2202 Chemical Instrumentation is not available to students who are taking or have taken CHEM2002 Instrumental Chemical Analysis.
CHEM2207  Food and Water Analysis (6 credits)
To cover areas in the application of Analytical Chemistry and new analytical technique development with focus on food and water analysis.
Prerequisite  CHEM1206, CHEM2002 or CHEM2202 
Co-requisite  CHEM2002 or CHEM2202

CHEM2302  Intermediate Inorganic Chemistry (9 credits)
This course aims to provide a more detailed treatment of general inorganic chemistry suited to the needs of those intending to extend their studies in chemistry.
Prerequisite  CHEM1301

CHEM2402  Intermediate Organic Chemistry (9 credits)
This course is a continuation from Basic Organic Chemistry. Together they provide a solid foundation of organic chemistry.
Prerequisite  CHEM1406

CHEM2503  Intermediate Physical Chemistry (9 credits)
This course presents a more detailed treatment of general physical chemistry topics in order to provide a solid foundation for those students intending to extend their studies in chemistry further. This course would stand on its own.
Prerequisite  CHEM1502 or CHEM1506

CHEM2507  Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques (6 credits)
To cover the principles and applications of modern practical spectroscopic techniques.
Prerequisite  CHEM1001 or CHEM1206

CHEM2508  Synthetic Chemistry (6 credits)
This course provides an introduction to chemical synthesis of organic, inorganic and polymeric materials. Some basic chemical principles for the preparation of small molecules and macromolecules will be introduced. This course is essential for students who wish to have a good understanding in modern synthetic techniques.
Prerequisite  CHEM1001 or CHEM1206

CHEM3105  Chemistry Project * (12 credits)
To provide experience of research techniques by working on a short project under the direct supervision of a member of staff. This course would prepare students for graduate school work in chemistry.
Prerequisite  1) CHEM2202; and  2) CHEM2302; and  3) CHEM2402; and  4) CHEM2503

* Second year students with exceptional academic achievement may also apply for this course.

CHEM3106  Symmetry, Group Theory and Applications (6 credits)
To introduce the concepts of symmetry and group theory and to apply them in solving chemical
problems. This course also provides an introductory treatment of bonding theories, inorganic electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. This course is essential for students who wish to take advanced courses in inorganic chemistry and all types of spectroscopy.

Prerequisite: CHEM2302

**CHEM3107  Interfacial Science and Technology** (6 credits)

To understand the science and technology of interfacial phenomena and processes often appeared in high value added products and modern technologies.

Prerequisite: CHEM2503

**CHEM3110  Advanced Materials** (6 credits)

This course is a continuation from Introduction to Materials Chemistry. It provides a more comprehensive overview on materials chemistry and application of materials in advanced technology. The most recent development in materials chemistry will also be introduced.

Prerequisite: CHEM2109

**CHEM3203  Analytical Chemistry** (9 credits)

To cover the principles and methodologies of Analytical Chemistry and its use in the analysis of gas, liquid and solid samples.

Prerequisite: CHEM2202 or CHEM2002

**CHEM3204  Modern Chemical Instrumentation and Applications** (6 credits)

The aim of the course is to provide an understanding of modern instrumentation, covering both fundamental principles and practical aspects of instrument design. The course will be of particular benefit to those pursuing a higher research degree or a career in technical sales/service.

Prerequisite: CHEM2202

**CHEM3303  Advanced Inorganic Chemistry** (9 credits)

To give further, more detailed, treatment to topics mentioned in Intermediate Inorganic Chemistry and to develop new areas of interest. The course also aims to prepare students for graduate work in inorganic chemistry.

Prerequisite: CHEM2302

Co-requisite: CHEM3106

**CHEM3304  Organometallic Chemistry** (6 credits)

To give further, more detailed, treatment to organometallic chemistry mentioned in Intermediate Inorganic Chemistry. The course also aims to introduce and familiarize students with advanced laboratory techniques, and to prepare students for graduate work in inorganic and organometallic chemistry.

Prerequisite: CHEM2302

**CHEM3403  Organic Synthesis** (9 credits)

This course covers modern synthetic methods, and develops the concept of synthetic planning.
**CHEM3404**  **Advanced Topics in Organic Chemistry** (6 credits)
To provide students with knowledge in organic chemistry reaction mechanisms and organic compound structure determination.
Prerequisite CHEM2402

**CHEM3405**  **Organic Chemistry of Life** (6 credits)
To understand molecules and reactions of life sciences. Useful as an introduction to research in areas of bioorganic chemistry, bioinorganic chemistry, medicinal chemistry, and biotechnology.
Prerequisite CHEM1401 or CHEM2402

**CHEM3407**  **Medicinal Chemistry** (6 credits)
This course covers the chemical principles of drug design and drug action. Useful as an introduction to research in areas of bioorganic chemistry, bioinorganic chemistry, medicinal chemistry, pharmaceutical chemistry, and biotechnology.
Prerequisite CHEM1401 or CHEM2402

**CHEM3504**  **Advanced Physical Chemistry** (9 credits)
This course covers advanced topics in physical chemistry. It is offered for students majoring in physical chemistry and for students who are interested in postgraduate studies.
Prerequisite CHEM2503

**CHEM3505**  **Molecular Spectroscopy** (6 credits)
This course provides a unifying treatment of the theories and applications of some important types of spectroscopy. Essential for graduate work in all branches of chemistry.
Prerequisite CHEM2503

**Department of Earth Sciences**
**EASC0001**  **Earth’s Past and Future** * (6 credits)
This course will provide students with knowledge of the nature and magnitude of change that has occurred in the Earth over a range of temporal and spatial scales. Specifically the course will contrast natural and anthropogenic processes of environmental change.
Prerequisite Nil
* Not available to Earth Sciences major students.

**EASC0002**  **Peaceful Use of Nuclear Technologies** (3 credits)
To provide students with the basic knowledge on application of nuclear technologies in daily life and to invoke an awareness of current applications of nuclear sciences by case studies.
Prerequisite Nil
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EASC0101</td>
<td>Maps, Mapping and Field Geology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field and class-based course introduces basic field and mapping techniques and the use of geological equipment, and presents an overview of the geology of Hong Kong and vicinity.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite Nil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC0105</td>
<td>Earth Through Time</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To introduce the concepts of geologic time and Uniformitarianism. To provide an understanding of the fossil record, and the integration of Earth Systems and Plate Tectonics. To gain an appreciation of our place in the Universe, an understanding of the evolution of Earth and life on Earth through time, and interaction between mankind and the geological environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite Nil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC0116</td>
<td>Introduction to Physical Geology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The course, intended for students taking their first course in earth science, provides a basic overview of the earth’s structure, material and internal and external processes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite Nil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1102</td>
<td>Mineralogy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide a coverage of mineralogical principles: as a basis for understanding the petrography of igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic rocks.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite 1 AL science subject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1103</td>
<td>Geochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide an understanding of chemical principles as they are applied to processes occurring on Earth, as a basis for the study of mineralogy, petrology and environmental geology.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite 1 AL science subject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1106</td>
<td>Introduction to Petrology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide an introduction to the principal rock types: igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary, and the relationships between them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite 1 AL science subject, EASC1102 or EASC0116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1107</td>
<td>Fluid/Solid Interactions in the Earth</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide an introduction to Earth processes and particularly to the nature of the properties and interactions of fluids and solids in the Earth system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite 1 AL science subject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2108</td>
<td>Structural Geology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The course covers the mechanical properties of rocks and how they are deformed, geological maps and their use in interpreting structure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite EASC0101</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Co-requisite  EASC0101

EASC2109  Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology (6 credits)
The object of this course is to provide a comprehensive coverage of the principles and techniques used in the study of rocks and rock-forming processes especially igneous and metamorphic.
Prerequisite  EASC1106

EASC2110  Earth Dynamics (6 credits)
To review the concepts and processes that shape the configuration of the Earth, from core to crust.
Prerequisite  1) EASC1104; and  2) EASC1106

EASC2111  Surficial Processes and Environments (6 credits)
This course provides students with an introduction to Earth surface processes, landscape evolution, and landscape diversity. Students learn to interpret natural landscapes in terms of both process-form relationships and the specific influence that geology has on landscape development. Soil formation and the importance of soils to landscape interpretation is also examined.
Prerequisite  Any level 1 Earth Sciences course

EASC2112  Earth Systems (6 credits)
The presentation of a process-oriented, integrated global approach to the study of the whole earth system and Man’s place within it, with particular attention to the linkages and interactions between its parts (the geospheres).
Prerequisite  All level 1 Earth Sciences core course

EASC2113  Sedimentology (6 credits)
The course deals with sedimentary rocks and processes, and facies models pertaining to various depositional environments.
Prerequisite  1) EASC1106; and  2) EASC0105

EASC2201  Hydrogeology (6 credits)
To study the role of ground water in subsurface geological process and its environmental and geotechnical importance.
Prerequisite  EASC0116 or EASC1107

EASC2301  Field Camps (6 credits)
The aims of a geological field camp are to provide 1) essential training and experience in geological mapping techniques and 2) opportunities to study at first-hand areas of particular geological interest and importance, especially outside Hong Kong.
Prerequisite  Students must have completed at least 42 credits of Earth Sciences courses at the time of taking the second year camp.
EASC2306  Intermediate Earth Sciences Project (6 credits)
This course is designed for second year students who would have an early introduction to Earth Sciences research. It provides students with the opportunity to do a small Earth Sciences project by themselves, either field or laboratory based. These projects are of a research nature and usually without lectures.
Prerequisite  Passes in all Earth Sciences first year subjects
Co-requisite  GPA > 3

EASC3114  Earth Resources and Environments (6 credits)
To study the range of earth materials that are commercial and exploitable, and the processes that lead to their formation. To consider economic, political and environmental aspects of mineral exploitation.
Prerequisite  EASC2109
Co-requisite  EASC2109

EASC3115  Regional Geology and Tectonics (6 credits)
To cover the tectonic evolution of mainland East Asia and SE Asia, with a specific focus on the geology of Hong Kong.
Prerequisite  1) EASC2110; and  2) EASC2113; and  3) EASC2109; and  4) EASC2108

EASC3202  Soil and Rock Mechanics (6 credits)
To provide a basic knowledge of soil and rock mechanics for those wishing to consider further studies on a career in engineering geology/geotechnics.
Prerequisite  EASC2201

EASC3203  Engineering Geology (6 credits)
Introduction to the applications of geological data, techniques and principles to the study of natural materials (rock, soil and subsurface fluids), and the features and processes affecting the planning of land-use, and the planning, design, construction, operation and maintenance of engineering structures.
Prerequisite  1) EASC3202; and  2) EASC2201

EASC3302  Advanced Topics in Geosciences (6 credits)
To provide students with insights into current issues in geosciences, and options to specialize in particular subject areas.
Prerequisite  Students must have completed at least 36 credits of advanced Earth Sciences courses.

EASC3304  Applied Geosciences (6 credits)
To provide students with insights in the applied fields of geosciences and allow students to acquire technical skills and training in particular field and instrumental techniques in geology, geophysics, and geochemistry.
Prerequisite  Students must have completed at least 36 credits of advanced Earth Sciences courses.

EASC3305  Geology Project (6 credits)
The course is intended to provide individual students with experience of geological research by working
on a project under the supervision of a member of staff.

Prerequisite Students must have a B average in at least 36 credits of advanced Earth Sciences courses.

Department of Ecology & Biodiversity

ECOL0020 Ecology of Hong Kong (3 credits)

This course covers the ecology and biodiversity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater environments in Hong Kong. Attention will be focused on seasonality, zonation, succession and long-term changes of plants and animals in a wide range of Hong Kong habitats. Case studies on marine and terrestrial protected areas in Hong Kong will also be presented.

Prerequisite Nil

ECOL0036 Life in Extremes & Astrobiology (3 credits)

To consider the concept of the habitable zone within our solar system and beyond. The origins of life in extreme environments and modern analogues for early and possible extraterrestrial life. Astrobiology space missions and the search for life and its origins.

Prerequisite Nil

ECOL0040 Ecology and Evolution (3 credits)

This course provides an introduction to how the ecology and behaviour of animals has been shaped by evolution, and demonstrates how we can understand and explain the significance of what we see in nature. The course objectives are as follows:

• To explain how the environment affects organisms in terms of their present-day ecology (determining where they live and how many can survive there) and, through natural selection acting over past generations, influences their form and adaptations.

• To introduce the basic principles of ecology and evolution, showing how they are linked to the environment by the phenomenon of adaptation.

• To describe the patterns of interactions among individuals (e.g. mating systems and reproduction, social behaviour, competition, and predation), and explain some of the simple principles that under their occurrence and evolution.

To introduce the concept of biodiversity, how it is generated by adaptive radiation, how it is estimated, and its importance to humans.

Prerequisite Nil

ECOL0041 Evolutionary Diversity (6 credits)

To provide students with an introduction to the diversity of plant and animal life. Recent research has resulted in fundamental changes in our understanding of evolutionary history (phylogeny). Current evolutionary trees will be used as the basis for a survey of different groups in phylogenetic sequence, and for understanding how structures, processes and behaviours have changed through time.

Prerequisite Nil

ECOL0042 Ecology Field Course (3 credits)

This 5-day residential field course, including lectures and briefing sessions, provides students with an opportunity to visit a variety of habitats in Hong Kong, and to observe directly the main environmental factors that prevail in each of them. Emphasis will be placed on guiding students to become familiar with common local plants and animals and their habitats.

Prerequisite ECOL0020, ECOL0040 are preferred but not essential
ECOL2004  Environmental Microbiology (6 credits)

To familiarize students with the role of microorganisms in natural processes which affect our environment such as the recycling of chemical elements, and the ways in which they carry out biodegradation of environmentally important pollutants. Key concepts are illustrated with local case studies and practical classes.

Prerequisite  BIOL1119

ECOL2005  Fish Biology (6 credits)

To acquaint students with the principles governing interrelationships among fishes and with the biotic and abiotic aspects of their environment thereby to provide an understanding of the factors determining species population dynamics and multispecies interactions. Special emphasis will be placed on coral reef assemblages with an introduction to local reef fishes.

Prerequisite  BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035

ECOL2006  Biometrics (6 credits)

To introduce students to experimental design and statistical data analysis at an elementary to intermediate level, with an emphasis on practical applications of statistical methods to experimental and observational data in biology and ecology. A range of topics will be addressed, particularly those involving descriptions of populations and communities, biodiversity, ecophysiology and ecological impacts associated with pollution. To illustrate each statistical method, examples will be drawn from real cases, with consideration of the biological or ecological background of the problem and appropriate experimental design, statistical analysis and interpretation. Use will be made of statistical software such as SPSS, SAS and PRIMER for statistical computing. SPSS is powerful and easy to use, and available on HKU networked computers. Computer laboratories will be organised to familiarise students with statistical computation using the software.

Prerequisite  Students must have completed at least 18 credits of level 0 or 1 BIOL courses.

ECOL2007  Molecular Ecology (6 credits)

To familiarize students with the molecular aspects of evolution, populations conservation. To review case studies where molecular data has solved ecological questions. To provide students with practical training in molecular techniques useful in ecology and environmental science.

Prerequisite  BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035 or BIOL1106

ECOL2011  Biological Oceanography (6 credits)

This course provides an introduction to the physical, chemical, geological and biological processes that occur in oceans. The emphasis is on how the biological components interact with each other and with their environment by considering various marine ecosystems. Specific examples from South East Asia, the South China Sea and Hong Kong will be included.

Prerequisite  BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035 or EASC0105. The course may also be of interest to students studying CHEM2102.

ECOL2013  Systematics & Phylogenetics (6 credits)

To give students an understanding of the principles of systematics and phylogenetics and an appreciation of current trends and controversies. Systematics forms an invaluable grounding for many fields of biology (including anatomy, ecology, population biology and evolutionary biology), and enables the integration of a wide range of techniques (including anatomy, biochemistry, chemistry,
molecular biology, cytology, palaeontology and ethology).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECOL2014</td>
<td>Conservation Biology <em>(6 credits)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To introduce students to the theory and practice of biological conservation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECOL2015</td>
<td>Fungal Diversity * <em>(3 credits)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>BIOL1119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To study the spectacular diversity of fungi and their roles in the environment. Fungi are extremely important in most of earth’s processes and have developed interesting adaptations and forms. This course will examine the diversity and forms that fungi have taken and explore some of their unique roles in our environment.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Students who have taken ECOL2039 Tropical Mycology are not allowed to take this course.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECOL2016</td>
<td>Environmental Toxicology <em>(6 credits)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To introduce students to the basic principles of environmental and ecological toxicology. Specific cases from the current literature will be used and analyzed. Emphasis will be on aquatic ecosystems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECOL2022</td>
<td>Biodiversity <em>(6 credits)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biodiversity issues have become a growing global concern in the last decade. Students will explore these issues, defining the concept of biodiversity, exploring the methods of its evaluation and assessing the implications of its loss.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECOL2023</td>
<td>Freshwater Ecology <em>(6 credits)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038 or BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introduce, illustrate and explain the physical and biological processes that occur in drainage basins, their importance to human populations and biodiversity, and the impacts and management of freshwater resources subject to multiple uses. Examples from the Mekong River Basin and/or Hong Kong to human dependence on freshwater ecosystems and the important role that they play in sustaining livelihoods in Asia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECOL2024</td>
<td>Plant Structure and Evolution <em>(3 credits)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>BIOL1101 or ECOL0038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To survey the form and function of vascular plant body, with particular emphasis on the evolutionary significance of various structures. This forms a basis for understanding plant physiology, ecology, systematics and phylogeny.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECOL2028</td>
<td>Coastal Ecology <em>(6 credits)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To examine the communities of coastal systems: their distribution, composition and the factors which</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
regulate them. This course will examine, using an experimental approach, patterns exhibited by a range of shores and the deterministic and stochastic processes that create and sustain them. Hong Kong shores will be used as examples but comparisons will be drawn from the coastlines of the world.

Prerequisite BIOL1101 or BIOL1121 or ECOL0038, BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035 and ECOL2006

ECOL2029  How Humans Evolved  (6 credits)

This course describes the origins of modern humans through evolution by natural selection. Major topics include tracing our evolution by means of the fossil record; our relationship to monkeys, apes and other primates; and, the main ecological and cultural transformations of our species over time. In short, this course answers the question: where did we come from? Emphasis is placed on ultimate causes: why have we evolved to become what we are today? And, what has driven human evolution?

Prerequisite BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035 preferred but not essential

ECOL2032  Terrestrial Ecology  (6 credits)

To enable motivated students to acquire the knowledge and skills needed to solve real problems in terrestrial ecology.

Prerequisite ECOL0020 and either BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035

ECOL2039  Tropical Mycology * (3 credits)

The course will provide a “hands” on approach to studying tropical fungi. It will deal with many aspects of tropical fungi, but in particular their biodiversity and taxonomy.

Prerequisite BIOL1119

* Offered in summer.
  Students who have taken ECOL2015 Fungal Diversity are not allowed to take this course.

ECOL3018  Fisheries and Mariculture  (6 credits)

Theoretical and practical aspects of marine fisheries and mariculture will be covered to provide an understanding of the condition of global and local fishery resources as well as the contribution of biological and ecological studies to their management. The role of mariculture in global fish supply will be examined and local fishery and mariculture examples provided.

Prerequisite ECOL2005

ECOL3019  Ecology & Biodiversity Project  (12 credits)

Under the supervision of a member of staff, to plan, design and undertake a research project and then present and write up this project in a formal style.

Prerequisite Requires good performance in level 2 courses, and ECOL2006

ECOL3025  Ecology & Biodiversity Dissertation * (6 credits)

Students will undertake a dissertation on a topic related to the field of ecology and biodiversity. Conducting a dissertation is an independent learning experience and will enable students to develop skills including the use of library and Web-based resources; the logical development of scientific arguments; written presentation skills; and, personal time management.
Prerequisite: Appropriate academic background

* This course is also available to Year 2 students with an exceptional academic record in Year 1 courses. Students having taken this course in Year 2 can take ECOL3019 Ecology & Biodiversity Project as a follow-up course in their third year.

ECOL3027  Pollution and Environmental Impact Assessment (6 credits)

To familiarise students with the principles of Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA), and to examine current pollution problems and their management in Hong Kong. This course is designed to prepare students who are interested in future employment in the environmental sector. Management strategies for pollution monitoring and control will be discussed with special reference to Hong Kong case studies. This course will describe the EIA process in Hong Kong, which will be compared with approaches used in China, the United States and Europe.

Prerequisite: BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035 or ECOL2004

ECOL3030  Environmental Remediation (3 credits)

To introduce the standard parameters in environmental monitoring, the scientific meaning and the practical monitoring techniques used. The focus of the course will be both the field and laboratory analysis, and implement of the monitoring. Local example will be used to illustrate the power of environmental monitoring and identification of the source of pollution.

Prerequisite: BIOL1103 or ECOL1103 or ECOL0035 or ECOL2004

ECOL3033  Biogeography* (3 credits)

Two distinct approaches to biogeography (the study of the geographical distributions of organisms) are generally recognized, based on differences in scale: ecological biogeography emphasizes the effect of ecological processes on geographical distributions over short periods of time; whereas historical biogeography relates to processes that occur over long periods of time (e.g., evolution, plate tectonics). Historical biogeography is a rapidly developing field, with many fundamental theories having been proposed in the past 10–15 years. This course aims to explain the diverse approaches to the field, and how they can be applied in comparative biology.

Prerequisite: ECOL2013


ECOL3034  Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques* (6 credits)

To introduce the standard parameters in environmental monitoring, and the scientific basis of practical monitoring techniques. The focus of the course will be on both the analysis and application of new environmental technology. Local examples will be used to illustrate the power of environmental monitoring and identification of pollution sources, as well as the success of implementation of treatment techniques.

Prerequisite: ECOL2004

Department of Mathematics

**MATH0011 Numbers and Patterns in Nature and Life (3 credits)**

To explore the underlying mathematical structure in various topics in life and environmental sciences. Students from all disciplines will gain appreciation of mathematics as a potent tool for investigating and understanding nature and life.

Prerequisite: HKCEE Mathematics

---

**MATH0801 Basic Mathematics I (6 credits)**

To provide students with a basic background of calculus that can be applied in various disciplines, aiming at students not having done much mathematics beyond HKCEE mathematics. It can be followed by MATH0802 / MATH1803 or MATH1811 / MATH1812.

Prerequisite: HKCEE Mathematics (HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or Mathematics at higher level not allowed; Mathematics students (MATH, MAEF, CMOR & MAPH) are not allowed to take this course unless prior approval has been obtained from the Department for special reasons. Students who have taken any one of the following: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202 and MATH1803 are not allowed to take this course.)

---

**MATH0802 Basic Mathematics II (6 credits)**

To provide students with a more solid background of calculus of one and several variables and of matrices that can be applied in various disciplines, aiming at students having taken an elementary calculus course. It can be followed by MATH1803.

Prerequisite: HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or MATH0801 or MATH0803 or MATH0805 (AL Mathematics not allowed; Mathematics students (MATH, MAEF, CMOR & MAPH) are not allowed to take this course unless prior approval has been obtained from the Department for special reasons. Students who have taken any one of the following: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202 and MATH1803 are not allowed to take this course.)

---

**MATH1101 Linear Algebra I (6 credits)**

The course is a foundation course for all Mathematics students, to be followed by Linear Algebra II and other more advanced courses in mathematics.

Prerequisite: AL Pure Mathematics

---

**MATH1102 Linear Algebra II (6 credits)**

The course is a foundation course for all Mathematics students. It can be followed by other more advanced courses in mathematics.

Prerequisite: AL Pure Mathematics and having taken MATH1101

---

**MATH1201 Calculus I (6 credits)**

The course is a foundation course for all Mathematics students, to be followed by Calculus II and other more advanced courses in mathematics.

Prerequisite: AL Pure Mathematics
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1202</td>
<td>Calculus II (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The course is a foundation course for all Mathematics students. It can be followed by other more advanced courses in mathematics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: AL Pure Mathematics and having taken MATH1201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1800</td>
<td>Elements of Discrete Mathematics (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To introduce students to the basic ideas and techniques of discrete mathematics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: AS Mathematics and Statistics, or Mathematics at higher level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1803</td>
<td>Basic Mathematics III (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide students with a background of calculus of several variables and linear algebra that can be applied in various disciplines.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: AL Pure Mathematics or MATH0802 or MATH0804 or MATH0806 or MATH0808 (Mathematics students (MATH, MAEF, CMOR &amp; MAPH) are not allowed to take this course unless prior approval has been obtained from the Department for special reasons)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1811</td>
<td>Mathematics I (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide students with the essential knowledge of linear algebra and vector calculus for further studies in the physical sciences. It is intended that the course will be followed by MATH1812.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: AS Mathematics and Statistics, or Mathematics at higher level (Mathematics students (MATH, MAEF, CMOR &amp; MAPH) are not allowed to take this course unless prior approval has been obtained from the Department for special reasons)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1812</td>
<td>Mathematics II (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide students with the essential knowledge of linear algebra and vector calculus for further studies in the physical sciences.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: AS Mathematics and Statistics, or Mathematics at higher level) and having taken MATH1811 or MATH1801 (Mathematics students (MATH, MAEF, CMOR &amp; MAPH) are not allowed to take this course unless prior approval has been obtained from the Department for special reasons)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2000</td>
<td>Intermediate Mathematics Project (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is designed for a second year outstanding student who would like to take an early experience on independent study. It provides the student with the opportunity to do a small mathematics project close to research in nature independently.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Co-requisite: MATH2301 and MATH2401</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2001</td>
<td>Development of Mathematical Ideas * (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) To acquaint the students with the origin and growth of basic mathematical concepts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) To assist the students to gain a deeper insight and broader view of mathematics as a discipline and human endeavour.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) To provide the students with an opportunity to write on and talk about mathematics, and to engage in independent study.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite: MATH1101 and MATH1102 and MATH1201 and MATH1202</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MATH2301  Algebra I (6 credits)**

This course aims to present those fundamental topics and techniques of algebra that are finding wide applications in mathematics and the applied sciences. It is complete in itself, and may also be followed by Algebra II and Topics in Applied Discrete Mathematics.

Prerequisite 1) (Two out of MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, one of which should be MATH1102); or 2) (MATH1811/MATH1812 or MATH1803); or 3) (MATH1801/MATH1802 or MATH1807)

**MATH2303  Matrix Theory and Its Applications (6 credits)**

Matrix theory has a close connection with other mathematical subjects such as linear algebra, functional analysis, and combinatorics. It also plays an important role in the development of many subjects in science, engineering, and social sciences. In this course, students will be taught the fundamentals of matrix analysis and its application to various kinds of practical problems. Mathematical software will be used in the course, so that students can learn how to use the computer to solve matrix problems.

Prerequisite 1) (MATH1101 and MATH1102); or 2) (MATH1811/MATH1812 or MATH1803); or 3) (MATH1801/MATH1802 or MATH1807)

**MATH2304  Introduction to Number Theory (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the basic knowledge and techniques in number theory. It is hoped that it will stimulate interested students to delve into the rich literature associated with this historically important subject of mathematics.

Prerequisite MATH1101 and MATH1201
Co-requisite MATH2301

**MATH2401  Analysis I (6 credits)**

This course extends to more general situations some of the results covered in the first year Mathematics courses, and introduces some further basic concepts which are essential for more advanced studies in mathematical analysis.

Prerequisite 1) (MATH1201 and MATH1202); or 2) (MATH1811/MATH1812 or MATH1803); or 3) (MATH1801/MATH1802 or MATH1807)

**MATH2402  Analysis II (6 credits)**

This course gives a modern treatment of calculus in several variables which is essential for more advanced studies in analysis.

Prerequisite 1) (MATH1201 and MATH1202) and (MATH1101 or MATH1102); or 2) (MATH1811/MATH1812 or MATH1803); or 3) (MATH1801/MATH1802 or MATH1807)

**MATH2403  Functions of a Complex Variable (6 credits)**

This course is indispensable for studies in higher mathematical analysis and the more theoretical aspects of physics. In this course, the students are introduced to the fundamental concepts and properties of analytic functions and are shown how to look at analyticity from different points of view. At the same time, the techniques of solving problems without losing sight of the geometric picture are emphasized.

Prerequisite 1) (Two out of MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, one of which should be MATH1201 or MATH1202); or 2) (MATH1811/MATH1812 or MATH1803); or 3)
MATH2405  Differential Equations (6 credits)

The standard topics in the wide field of differential equations included in this course are of importance to students of mathematics and physical sciences as well. Our emphasis is on principles rather than routine calculations and our approach is a compromise between diversity and depth.

Prerequisite 1) (Two out of MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, one of which should be MATH1201 or MATH1202); or 2) (MATH1811/MATH1812 or MATH1803); or 3) (MATH1801/MATH1802 or MATH1807)

MATH2407  Mathematical Methods for Physicists * (6 credits)

This course is designed for students in Physics and other science subjects.

Prerequisite MATH1811 or MATH1812 or MATH1801 or MATH1802

* This course is not open to students who have taken MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201 and MATH1202.


MATH2601  Numerical Analysis (6 credits)

This course covers both the theoretical and practical aspects of Numerical Analysis. Emphasis will be on basic principles and practical methods of solution, using high speed computers.

Prerequisite 1) (Two out of MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, one of which should be MATH1201 or MATH1202) or (MATH1811/MATH1812 or MATH1803) or (MATH1801/MATH1802 or MATH1807); and 2) Knowledge of a programming language

MATH2603  Probability Theory * (6 credits)

The emphasis of this course will be on probability models and their applications. The primary aim is to elucidate the fundamental principles of probability theory through examples and to develop the ability of the students to apply what they have learned from this course to widely divergent concrete problems.

Prerequisite 1) MATH1201 and MATH1202; or 2) MATH1811 and MATH1812; or 3) MATH1803; or 4) MATH0801 and MATH0802

* Students taking or having taken STAT0103 or STAT2303 are not allowed to take this course.

MATH2901  Operations Research I (6 credits)

The objective is to provide a fundamental account of the basic results and techniques of Linear Programming and its related topics in Operations Research. There is an equal emphasis on all three aspects of understanding, algorithms and applications. The course serves, together with a course on network models, as essential concept and background for more advanced studies in Operations Research.

Prerequisite Two out of MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, one of which should be MATH1101 or MATH1102

MATH2904  Introduction to Optimization (6 credits)

This course introduces students to the theory and techniques of optimization, aiming at preparing them for further studies in Operations Research, Mathematical Economics and related subject areas.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH2905</td>
<td>Queueing Theory and Simulation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course introduces students to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the models and theory of queueing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>system, as well as the technique of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>simulation as a practical tool of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>analysis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(MATH1101 or MATH1102) and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(MATH1201 or MATH1202)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Co-requisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATH2603 or its equivalent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2906</td>
<td>Financial Calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course gives an elementary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>treatment of the modeling of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>financial derivatives, asset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pricing and market risks from an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>applied mathematician’s viewpoint.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stochastic calculus and numerical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>methods will be introduced.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1007 and (MATH1101 or MATH1102)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and (MATH1201 or MATH1202)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Co-requisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATH2603 or its equivalent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2907</td>
<td>Numerical Methods for Financial</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calculus *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is aimed at providing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>effective numerical methods as well</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as their theoretical aspect for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>solving problems arisen from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>financial derivatives and asset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pricing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(MATH1101 or MATH1102) and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(MATH1201 or MATH1202)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Co-requisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATH2603 and MATH2906 or their</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>equivalent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3000</td>
<td>Mathematics Project</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The object is to provide a student</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with an opportunity to formulate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and investigate, in depth, a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>problem of practical interest and/or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have a foretaste of mathematical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>research. The work, to be done on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an individual basis, is considered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a highly desirable part of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>training of a mathematician.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATH1101 and MATH1102 and MATH1201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and MATH1202 and MATH2301 and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATH2401</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3302</td>
<td>Algebra II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is an extension of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Algebra I and goes deeper into the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>various topics treated in that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>course. Together, the two courses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>are complete in themselves, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>may be followed by Topics in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Algebra and Topics in Applied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discrete Mathematics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATH2301</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3310</td>
<td>Topics in Algebra *</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To provide students specializing in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mathematics with the opportunity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to study some topics in algebra in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>greater depth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MATH1101 and MATH1102 and MATH1201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and MATH1202 and MATH2301</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3404</td>
<td>Functional Analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course introduces students to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the basic knowledge of linear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>functional analysis, an important</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
branch of modern analysis.

Prerequisite: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, and MATH2401

MATH3406 Introduction to Partial Differential Equations * (6 credits)

This course introduces students to the basic techniques for solving partial differential equations as well as the underlying theories.

Prerequisite: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, and MATH2401
Co-requisite: MATH2405


MATH3501 Geometry (6 credits)

As geometric forms often appear in nature, the study of geometry helps us to understand better the universe in which we live. Moreover, geometry has much intrinsic beauty and the study of it is an excellent training in intuitive thinking. In this course we study the differential geometry of curves and surfaces in 3-space. In the study of regular surfaces in 3-space we exhibit geometric notions that are definable in terms of metrical properties of these surfaces alone, leading to the intrinsic geometry of surfaces.

Prerequisite: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, and MATH2401

MATH3502 Geometric Topology (6 credits)

This course gives a geometric introduction to some of the methods of algebraic topology. The emphasis throughout will be on the geometric motivations and applications of the theory.

Prerequisite: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, MATH2301, and MATH2401

MATH3602 Scientific Computing (6 credits)

This course introduces mathematical theories and computational techniques for solving various kinds of matrix computation problems that are often encountered in scientific or industrial applications.

Prerequisite: MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, and MATH1202
Co-requisite: MATH2601

MATH3610 Topics in Applied Discrete Mathematics * (6 credits)

To provide students with the opportunity to study some further topics in applied discrete mathematics.

Prerequisite: MATH1800 and MATH2301


MATH3902 Operations Research II (6 credits)

The objective is to provide a fundamental account of the basic results and techniques of Integer Programming (IP), Dynamic Programming (DP) and Markov Decision Processes (MDP) in Operations Research. There is emphasis on aspects of algorithms as well as applications. The course serves, together with courses on linear programming and network models, to provide essential optimization concept and algorithms for more advanced studies in Operations Research.

Prerequisite: Two out of MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, one of which should be
MATH3903  Network Models in Operations Research (6 credits)

The objective is to provide a fundamental account of the basic results and techniques of network models in Operations Research. There is an equal emphasis on all three aspects of understanding, algorithms and applications. The course serves, together with a course on linear programming, to provide essential concept and background for more advanced studies in Operations Research.

Prerequisite  Two out of MATH1101, MATH1102, MATH1201, MATH1202, one of which should be MATH1101 or MATH1102
Co-requisite  MATH2901

MATH3910  Topics in Mathematical Programming & Optimization * (6 credits)

A study in greater depth of some special topics in mathematical programming or optimization. It is mainly intended for students in Operations Research or related subject areas.

Prerequisite  MATH2901 and MATH2904


Department of Pharmacology

PHAR3001  Clinical Pharmacology I (3 credits)

This course presents the fundamental principles in pharmacology and relevant knowledge pertaining to drugs in common use. It will provide an understanding of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics which is essential for administering and managing drug therapy. The therapeutic effects and mechanisms of action of the drugs most frequently prescribed will be covered.

Prerequisite  Preferably CHEM3405 and CHEM3407
Co-requisite  Preferably CHEM3405 and CHEM3407

PHAR3002  Clinical Pharmacology II (3 credits)

This course presents the fundamental principles in pharmacology and relevant knowledge pertaining to drugs in common use. It will provide an understanding of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics which is essential for administering and managing drug therapy. The therapeutic effects and mechanisms of action of the drugs most frequently prescribed will be covered.

Prerequisite  Preferably CHEM3405 and CHEM3407
Co-requisite  Preferably CHEM3405 and CHEM3407

Department of Physics

PHYS0001  Nature of the Universe I: Introduction to Observational Astronomy and the Solar System * (3 credits)

This general education course is designed as an elective for students in all disciplines and all years. No prior knowledge in astronomy, physics, and higher mathematics is required.

Prerequisite  Nil
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS0002</td>
<td>Nature of the Universe II: Stars, Galaxies and Cosmology for Beginners</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This general education course is designed as an elective for students in all disciplines and all years. It focuses on the theoretical aspect of astronomy. No prior knowledge in astronomy, physics, or higher mathematics is required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>Nil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS0114</td>
<td>Fundamental Physics I*</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course, together with Fundamental Physics II, aims at providing students who are interested in physics, or taking a minor option in physics, a first course in general physics. It covers the essential knowledge of physics on various topics. Students who have taken the course can have a smooth link-up with other courses offered in the Physics Department.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>HKCEE Physics/Engineering Science (students with AL/AS Physics or AL Engineering Science should first obtain approval from the course selection advisor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Not available to those who have taken or are concurrently taking PHYS1111, PHYS1112, or PHYS1314 unless approved by course selection advisor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not available to students who have taken HKU-SPACE course College Physics I.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS0115</td>
<td>Fundamental Physics II*</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course, together with Fundamental Physics I, aims at providing students who are interested in physics, or taking a minor option in physics, a first course in general physics. It covers the essential knowledge of physics various topics. Students who have taken the course can have a smooth link-up with other courses offered in the Physics Department.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>HKCEE Physics/Engineering Science (students with AL/AS Physics or AL Engineering Science should obtain first approval from the course selection advisor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Not available to those who have taken or are concurrently taking PHYS1111, PHYS1112, PHYS1113, or PHYS1314 unless approved by course selection advisor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not available to students who have taken HKU-SPACE course College Physics II.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS0601</td>
<td>God, the Big Bang and Stephen Hawking I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course, named after a recently published book by David Wilkinson, is for both science and non-science students to recognize the absence of any real conflict between science and religion. This course (part I) deals with religion and its interactions with cosmology.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>Nil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS0602</td>
<td>Science or Fiction?*</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The course is designed as an exploration of the various way in which science, particularly physics, has been used in the creation of the literary genre known as science fiction. One of its main purposes is to provide students with experience in expressing their ideas and opinions in written and spoken form and in developing their analytical and creative powers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>Nil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PHYS0603  Art & Physics * (3 credits)

The course is aimed at artistically inclined students who would like to know more about the New Physics, scientifically inclined students who would like to have a framework to appreciate Art, and anyone who is fascinated by both.

Prerequisite  Nil


PHYS0605  Nuclear Energy and the Environment (3 credits)

To introduce the use of nuclear power and its impact to our environment; and to arouse an awareness of the safety use of nuclear energy.

Prerequisite  Nil

PHYS0607  Revealing the Magic in Everyday Life * (3 credits)

The course is designed for students who are curious about science in daily life. Students taking this course should have basic training in physics in the certificate level. The course covers the working principles and mechanisms of the things and phenomena around us. Logical thinking and appreciation of science are emphasized with mathematics kept at a minimum. Students are trained to develop scientific intuition and to appreciate that many things in everyday life are not purely magical but can also be predictable.

Prerequisite  HKCEE Physics

* Not available to students who have taken YSCN0018 or the HKU-SPACE course “The Science of Everyday Life”.

PHYS1111  Introduction to Mechanics * (6 credits)

This course aims at providing students a solid foundation in Newtonian mechanics with the treatment of calculus. Students are expected to have basic knowledge of calculus and vectors.

Prerequisite  1) HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics & Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; and 2) AL/AS Physics or Engineering Science

* Not available to those who have passed PHYS0111 or PHYS1312 unless approved by course coordinator.

PHYS1112  Electricity and Magnetism * (6 credits)

This course aims at introducing the basic physics of electromagnetism.

Prerequisite  1) HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics & Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; and 2) AL/AS Physics or Engineering Science

* Not available to those who have passed PHYS0111 or PHYS1312 unless approved by course coordinator.

PHYS1113  Heat, Light and Waves * (6 credits)

To appreciate the underlying physical principles of heat, thermodynamics, waves and related physics. This course is designed to prepare the students with basic knowledge for the more advanced courses in the department.

Prerequisite  1) HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics & Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; and 2) AL/AS Physics or Engineering Science
* Not available to those who have passed PHYS0111 or PHYS1312 unless approved by course coordinator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1303</td>
<td>Special Relativity I (3 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is designed as an elective for students in all disciplines and all years with science background.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>1) AL/AS Physics or Engineering Science; and 2) AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics &amp; Statistics or (MATH1811 and MATH1812)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1314</td>
<td>Modern Physics (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is designed to provide students with a comprehensive introduction to the concepts and ideas that form the basis of “modern physics” - a term used to describe the revolutionary developments that took place in physics during the 20th-century and are continuing today.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>1) HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics &amp; Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; and 2) AL/AS Physics or Engineering Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1411</td>
<td>Introductory Experimental Physics * (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An experimental course designed to provide students with experience in laboratory techniques and instrumentations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>AL/AS Physics or AL Engineering Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Not available to those who have taken PHYS0411 unless approved by course coordinator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1412</td>
<td>Electronics (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course is designed to provide students with a broad knowledge of the theoretical background and experimental application of modern electronic devices and circuitry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>AL/AS Physics or AL Engineering Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1315</td>
<td>Methods in Physics I * (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course provides students with experience in using mathematical tools and techniques to solve problems in physics. It is complete in itself, or may also be followed by Methods in Physics II.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics &amp; Statistics or HKCEE Additional Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Not available to students who have taken / are taking MATH1811 or MATH1812 unless approved by course coordinator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1316</td>
<td>Methods in Physics II * (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course provides students with experience in using mathematical tools and techniques to solve problems in physics. It is complete in itself, or may also be taken after Methods in Physics I.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics &amp; Statistics or HKCEE Additional Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Not available to students who have taken / are taking MATH1811 or MATH1812 unless approved by course coordinator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PHYS2021  **The Physical Universe** (6 credits)

To appreciate the underlying physical principles of astronomy. This course is designed as an elective for second or third year students with some basic science knowledge.

Prerequisite  PHYS0001 or YSCN0009

---

PHYS2022  **Observational Astronomy** *(6 credits)*

To introduce the students to the techniques and methods of contemporary astronomy, with emphasis on the data reduction and analysis.

Prerequisite  Any 1st year science or engineering course

* *Preference to take this course will be given to students in the Physics and Astronomy theme.*

---

PHYS2023  **Stellar Physics** (6 credits)

This course introduces the basic theory of stellar structure and evolution. It follows a mathematical treatment that stress on the underlying physical processes. This course is calculus-based. A good background in first year level classical mechanics and electromagnetism is recommended.

Prerequisite  PHYS1111 or PHYS1314

---

PHYS2024  **Introduction to Cosmology** *(6 credits)*

The aim of the course is to offer an introduction to the key ideas in observational and theoretical cosmology, to familiarize students with the main observational results on which modern cosmology is based and to introduce, at an elementary level, the basic physical principles used to model the evolution and dynamics of the universe from the big bang to the present epoch.

Prerequisite  PHYS1111 or PHYS1314

* *Not offered in 2005-2006.*

---

PHYS2221  **Introductory Solid State Physics** (6 credits)

To provides a broad introduction to modern theories of the behaviour and properties of the solid state of matter. It is designed as a self-contained course which at the same time will serve as a basis for more advanced courses and projects in solid state physics.

Prerequisite  PHYS1314

---

PHYS2222  **Waves and Optics** (6 credits)

To give a coherent introduction to the development of modern physical optics, with particular attention to the wave properties and quantum theories of light.

Prerequisite  PHYS1112 and PHYS1113

---

PHYS2224  **Computational Modelling of Physical Systems** (6 credits)

The aim of this course is to introduce the students to handling data (obtained either from physics experiments or physical models) and computational methods for modelling physical systems.

Prerequisite  1) Any 1st year physics course; and 2) CSIS0911 or CSIS1117
PHYS2225  **Solid State Devices** * (6 credits)

The aim of this course is to give an introduction to the physics and operating principles of commonly used solid state devices.

Prerequisite  PHYS1314


---

PHYS2227  **Laser & Spectroscopy** (6 credits)

The aim of this course is to provide a broad introduction to modern laser spectroscopic techniques and selected applications.

Prerequisite  PHYS1314 and PHYS2222 and PHYS2323

---

PHYS2228  **Introductory Health Physics** (6 credits)

This course aims at providing students with basic knowledge in the scientific and engineering aspects of health physics and to arouse students’ interest in the area of peaceful application of ionizing and non-ionizing radiations.

Prerequisite  PHYS0605 or PHYS1314

---

PHYS2229  **Thin Film Physics** (6 credits)

This course is intended for the advanced students, covering the basic theories and techniques of physical deposition processes and topics related to a very rapidly growing area - thin film application in material science.

Prerequisite  PHYS1111

---

PHYS2234  **Sensors and Computer Control for Physical Measurements** (6 credits)

The aim of this course is to introduce students to basic principles of measurement and control, and sensors for measurement of different physical quantities (temperature, pressure etc.), as well as provide students with practical skills for designing and operating computer controlled measurement systems.

Prerequisite  Any 1st year science or engineering course

---

PHYS2235  **Physics of Nanomaterials** (6 credits)

Physics of Nanomaterials is a course for advanced undergraduate and beginning postgraduate students at HKU. The course is designed to introduce important concepts such as quantum size effect and fundamental physics of nanomaterials.

Prerequisite  PHYS1314

---

PHYS2304  **Special Relativity II** (3 credits)

This is a follow up course to PHYS1313, with the aim of providing an introduction to the advanced aspects of the theory of special relativity and of its applications.

Prerequisite  PHYS1303 or PHYS1314

---

PHYS2321  **Introductory Electromagnetism** (6 credits)

Introduces the physical concepts required for an understanding of electricity and magnetism. A foundation course for students majoring in physics.
PHYS2322  **Statistical Mechanics and Thermodynamics** (6 credits)

An introduction to Statistical Mechanics and elementary Thermodynamics with reference to related phenomena in Physics. This course is taught as a basic and essential subject for students majoring in Physics.

**Prerequisite** PHYS1111, PHYS1112 and PHYS1314  
**Co-requisite** PHYS1113

---

PHYS2323  **Introductory Quantum Mechanics** (6 credits)

This course aims at a rigorous introduction to the concepts and methods of non-relativistic quantum mechanics. It is a prerequisite for several advanced physics courses.

**Prerequisite** PHYS1314

---

PHYS2324  **Classical Mechanics** (6 credits)

The aim of this course is to introduce general methods of studying the dynamics of particle systems, through which students can acquire experience in using mathematical techniques for solving practical problems.

**Prerequisite** PHYS1111, PHYS1112 and PHYS1314  
**Co-requisite** PHYS1113

---

PHYS2325  **Theoretical Physics** (6 credits)

The aim of this course is to provide students with the conceptual skills and analytical tools necessary for solving real problems in all major areas of physics.

**Prerequisite** 1) PHYS1111 or PHYS1112 or PHYS1113 or PHYS1314; and 2) (MATH1811 and MATH1812) or (PHYS1315 and PHYS1316)

---

PHYS2426  **Intermediate Experimental Physics** * (6 credits)

This laboratory based course aims to familiarize students with some basic methods in physics experimentation, and in particular to illustrate the methods by carrying experiments related to electromagnetism and modern physics.

**Prerequisite** PHYS1411 and PHYS1314

*Not available to those who have taken PHYS2421 or PHYS2422 unless approved by course coordinator.*

---

PHYS2521  **Intermediate Physics Project** (6 credits)

This course is designed for second year students who would like to take an early experience on research. It provides students with the opportunity to do small physics projects by themselves, either theoretical or experimental. These projects are close to research in nature and, usually, without lectures.

**Prerequisite** Any 1st year Physics course
PHYS2624  Introductory Atmospheric Physics * (6 credits)

To discuss the physical principles and mechanisms of atmospheric motions, weather phenomena, and climate. This course is designed to be an intermediate level course on modern meteorology. It is suitable for students with some background in physics or science.

Prerequisite  Any 1st year science or engineering course

* Course materials will be delivered by expert guest lecturers from the Hong Kong Observatory.

PHYS3031  Astrophysics (6 credits)

To introduce students to current theories in astrophysics. It may be taken as a self-contained course or as background to research work in astrophysics.

Prerequisite  PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323

PHYS3033  General Relativity (6 credits)

To introduce students to the field of general relativity and to provide conceptual skills and analytical tools necessary for astrophysical and cosmological applications of the theory

Prerequisite  PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323

Co-requisite  PHYS1303

PHYS3034  Cosmology * (6 credits)

The aim of the course is to offer an advanced introduction to cosmology, to familiarize students with mathematical formulation used to model the evolution and dynamics of the universe, and to provide an up to date discussion of the big bang theory and structure and galaxy formation.

Prerequisite  PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323 and PHYS2024


PHYS3231  Computational Physics (6 credits)

The aim of the course is to show how the power of computers enables a computational approach to solving physics problems to be adopted, which is distinct from, and complimentary to, traditional experimental and theoretical approaches. The material covered will be found useful in any project or problem solving work that contains a strong computational or data analysis element.

Prerequisite  PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323

PHYS3232  Solid State Physics * (6 credits)

To provide students with an understanding of more advanced topics in selected areas of solid state physics.

Prerequisite  PHYS2221 and PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323


PHYS3321  Nuclear and Particle Physics * (6 credits)

The aim of the course is to describe nuclear structure in an elementary way as a field of application of quantum mechanics and electromagnetism, and to study the fundamental interactions of subnuclear
particles.

Prerequisite PHYS2323 and PHYS2321 and PHYS2322

* Not available to those who have taken PHYS2326 unless approved by course coordinator.

---

**PHYS3331 Electromagnetic Field Theory** (6 credits)

We study the electromagnetic properties of simple physical systems, and the relations between electromagnetism and special relativity.

Prerequisite PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323 and PHYS2325

**PHYS3332 Quantum Mechanics** (6 credits)

Introduces more advanced concepts of quantum mechanics. Together with PHYS2323, these will provide the basic knowledge of quantum mechanics to an undergraduate student.

Prerequisite PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323 and PHYS2325

**PHYS3333 Advanced Statistical Mechanics** *(6 credits)*

This course intends to introduce some topics in the field of equilibrium statistical physics.

Prerequisite PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323


**PHYS3334 Advanced Electromagnetic Field Theory** *(6 credits)*

This is a standard course in electromagnetic field theory which provides essential background for postgraduate and advanced undergraduate students intend to do research in physics.

Prerequisite PHYS2321 and PHYS3331


**PHYS3335 Advanced Quantum Mechanics** (6 credits)

This course introduces postgraduate and advanced undergraduate students to advanced techniques in quantum mechanics and their applications to selected topics in physics.

Prerequisite PHYS2323 and PHYS3332

**PHYS3431 Advanced Experimental Physics** *(6 credits)*

This course aims to introduce the student to some of the more advanced techniques in modern physics, while at the same time illustrating some of the important experiments discussed in course text books.

Prerequisite 1) PHYS2421 or PHYS2422 or PHYS2426; and 2) PHYS2321 and PHYS2322 and PHYS2323

* Not available to those who have taken PHYS2423 unless approved by course coordinator.

**PHYS3531 Physics Project** (12 credits)

This course is designed for students who are considering doing research in the future. It provides students with the opportunity to study special physics projects by themselves, either theoretical or experimental. These projects are close to research in nature and are designed for prospective research students.
Prerequisite 1) PHYS2321; and 2) PHYS2323

**PHYS3532  Special Topics in Physics (12 credits)**

To provide the chance for students to learn special topics in modern physics by themselves by reviewing literature (theoretical project) or practicing special experimental skills in carrying out a small project (experimental project) under the supervision of a member of staff.

Prerequisite 1) PHYS2321; and 2) PHYS2323

**Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science**

**STAT0301  Elementary Statistical Methods * (6 credits)**

Research findings are often fully or partly supported by data. Data, which are often concerned with situations involving variability and uncertainty, are collected from an experiment or a survey. They are used to estimate the true value of a certain quantity or to test the acceptability of a certain new hypothesis. Valid methods of analysing the data are thus essential to any successful investigation. The course presents the fundamentals of statistical methods widely used by researchers. There is no demand of sophisticated technical mathematics.

Prerequisite HKCEE Mathematics. Not available to students with a pass in A-level Pure Mathematics. (Students taking or having taken STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT0302 or STAT1000 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT1801 or STAT0601 or STAT0602 are not allowed to take this course.)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

**STAT0302  Business Statistics * (6 credits)**

The discipline of statistics is concerned with situations involving uncertainty and variability. Variability greatly affects the interpretation of data. Thus statistics forms an important descriptive and analytical tool. This elementary course, which is taught without any technical mathematics, presents many standard situations of data interpretation with emphases on business examples. The statistical tests for these situations are presented. Microsoft Excel might be used to carry out some statistical analysis.

Prerequisite HKCEE Mathematics

* Available only to Business School students.

**STAT1301  Probability & Statistics I (6 credits)**

The discipline of statistics is concerned with situations in which uncertainty and variability play an essential role and forms an important descriptive and analytical tool in many practical problems. Against a background of motivating problems this course develops relevant probability models for the description of such uncertainty and variability and provides an introduction to the concepts, principles and methodology of statistical analysis.

Prerequisite A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or equivalent. (Students taking or having taken STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1306 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT1801 or STAT0601 or STAT0602 are not allowed to take this course.)

**STAT1302  Probability & Statistics II (6 credits)**

This course builds on STAT1301, introducing further the concepts and methods of statistics. Emphasis
is on the two major areas of statistical analysis: estimation and hypothesis testing. Through the disciplines of statistical modelling, inference and decision making, students will be equipped with both quantitative skills and qualitative perceptions essential for making rigorous statistical analysis of real-life data.

**Prerequisite**  
A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or equivalent AND taking or having taken STAT1301 or STAT1000 or STAT1007 or STAT0601

---

**STAT1303**  
**Data Management** * (6 credits)

This course is designed for students who want to learn a statistical software (SAS or SPSS) for data management and elementary data analysis. This course focuses on using SAS or SPSS to manage data set input and output, work with different data types, manipulate and transform data, perform random sampling and descriptive data analysis, and create summary reports.

**Prerequisite**  
HKCEE Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or A-level Pure Mathematics or equivalent AND taking or having taken STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or ECON1003 or ECOL2006 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602 or STAT1801

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT1304**  
**The Analysis of Sample Surveys** * (6 credits)

We often try to infer the characteristics of a population by taking a sample from that population. The validity and the efficiency of the findings depend on the quality of the sample. This course considers the basic theory and practical applications for the different sampling design and analysis. Examples on marketing surveys, social surveys and opinion polls will be considered.

**Prerequisite**  
HKCEE Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or A-level Pure Mathematics or equivalent AND taking or having taken STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT1801 or ECON1003 or ECOL2006 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT1305**  
**Introduction to Demography** * (6 credits)

Demography studies the distribution of population by age, gender, marital status, education level, culture, ethnicity, and other social and physical characteristics. It also focuses on population changes---migration, fertility and mortality rates. Knowledge in demography is vital to economic studies, business and government policymaking and investment planning. The course introduces important statistical methods pertinent to the study of demography, with attention to problems of regional interest.

**Prerequisite**  
HKCEE Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or A-level Pure Mathematics or equivalent AND taking or having taken STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or ECON1003 or ECOL2006 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602 or STAT1801

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.
STAT1306  **Introductory Statistics** (6 credits)

The discipline of statistics is concerned with situations involving uncertainty and variability. The interpretation of data needs special techniques when variability plays a role, as it usually does. Thus statistics forms an important descriptive and analytical tool of many scientific disciplines. Candidates with a mathematical background will find this course suitable, because the language of mathematics allows the subject of statistics to be presented with economy and clarity.

**Prerequisite** A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or MATH0801 or MATH0802. Students without these qualifications, but with grade C or better in A-level Physics, are deemed to have sufficient mathematical training to enrol in this course. Students who intend to major in “Risk Management” or “Statistics” should take STAT1301 instead of this course. (Students taking or having taken STAT1301 or STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1801 are not allowed to take this course.)

---

STAT1801  **Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science** (6 credits)

This course provides the basic foundations in probability and statistics for students in B.Sc.(ActuarSc), though the course is also suitable for mathematically-able students from other quantitative curricula. Probability theory underpins the study of statistics. The course aims firstly to develop skills in probabilistic analysis for problems involving randomness. Random variables and probability distributions are studied in depth. The concepts of statistics are then introduced, guided by motivating examples.

**Prerequisite** A-Level Pure Mathematics or equivalent

---

STAT1802  **Financial Mathematics** (6 credits)

This course introduces the mathematics of finance which plays an important role in the development of basic actuarial techniques. Practical applications of the actuarial functions and notation are considered also.

**Prerequisite** A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or equivalent AND taking or having taken STAT1801 or STAT1302

---

STAT2301  **Linear Statistical Analysis** * (6 credits)

The analysis of variability is mainly concerned with locating the sources of the variability. Many statistical techniques investigate these sources through the use of ‘linear’ models. This course presents the theory and practice of these models.

**Prerequisite** STAT1302 (Students taking or having taken STAT0801 or STAT2804 are not allowed to take this course.)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

STAT2302  **Statistical Inference** * (6 credits)

This course covers the advanced theory of point estimation, interval estimation and hypothesis testing. Using a mathematically-oriented approach, the course provides a solid and rigorous treatment of inferential problems, statistical methodologies and the underlying concepts and theory. It is suitable in particular for students intending to further their studies or to develop a career in statistical research.

**Prerequisite** STAT1302

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.
STAT2303  Probability Modelling * (6 credits)

This is an introductory course in probability modelling. A range of important topics in stochastic processes will be discussed.

Prerequisite  STAT1301 or STAT1000 or STAT1007 or STAT0601 (Students taking or having taken STAT2803 or MATH2603 are not allowed to take this course.)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2304  Design and Analysis of Experiments * (6 credits)

In this course the basic theory of experimental design is introduced. Basic principles and guidelines for designing experiments will be introduced. Analysis for experiments with a single factor, Randomised block, Latin squares and related designs will be covered. The notions of crossed and nested factorial structure, balanced incomplete factorial experiments and fixed/random effects will be discussed.

Prerequisite  STAT1302 or STAT2802 or STAT2311 or STAT0401 or STAT0603 or STAT0100 or STAT0604 or STAT0605

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2305  Quality Control and Management * (6 credits)

The successful control of quality in production is a matter of primary importance to a company’s prosperity and good-will. This course provides an overview of quality compromise which involves both the producer and the consumer. It presents a variety of statistical solutions including control chars, acceptance sampling plans, sequential sampling procedures, analysis of measurement errors, reliability, and life-testing. Contemporary quality management systems such as total quality control, quality control circle, zero defects, and ISO-9000 will be introduced The student is brought to the frontier of today’s quality control and management ideas.

Prerequisite  ECOL2006 or ECON1003 or STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT1801 or STAT0100 or STAT2802 or STAT0604 or STAT0605

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2306  Business Logistics * (6 credits)

Originally, the word ‘logistics’ described the strategic aspects involved in moving and supplying armies and navies. Usage grew to include games of strategy, such as chess. Modern business corporations are increasingly using logistics as a management tool, for example, in capital budgeting problems, production planning, scheduling, transportation or in deciding a location for a new factory. This course addresses the business applications of logistics.

Prerequisite  ECOL2006 or ECON1003 or STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT1801 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602 (Students taking or having taken MATH2901 are not allowed to take this course.)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.
STAT2307  Statistics in Clinical Medicine and Bio-medical Research * (6 credits)

In clinical medicine doctors observe features (such as blood pressure, hormone level, presence/absence of a symptom, degree of infection, etc.) which are subject to natural variation between individual patients and between groups of patients with different disease types. This variability motivates the application of statistical methodology to the clinical observational and decision-making process. Part of the course deals with these applications.

The other part deals with statistical problems which come from biological and medical research, for example the controlled clinical drug trial. No knowledge in biology or medicine is assumed; the course provides all of the necessary bio-medical background when the statistical problems are introduced.

Prerequisite  STAT1302 or STAT2802 or STAT0100 or STAT0604 or STAT0605

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2308 Statistical Genetics * (6 credits)

This course covers background on genetics, Mendelian Genetics; Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium; linkage equilibrium; exact test; likelihood ratio test; chi-square test; population structure; linkage analysis; non-parametric linkage analysis; association studies; forensic genetics; relatedness; kinship analysis; mixed samples.

Prerequisite  STAT1302 or STAT2802 or STAT0100 or STAT0604 or STAT0605

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2309 The Statistics of Investment Risk * (6 credits)

Most investments involve some risk. The decision to invest or not is usually made against a background of uncertainty. Whilst prediction of the future is difficult, there are statistical modelling techniques which provide a rational framework for investment decisions, particularly those relating to stock markets and the markets for interest rates, commodities and currencies. Building upon research, both in Hong Kong and abroad, this course presents the prevailing statistical theories for investment decisions in these vital markets. Particular issues include the concept of an efficient market, portfolio construction and analysis, asset pricing and management, and technical analysis.

Prerequisite  ECOL2006 or ECON1003 or STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT1801 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2310 Risk Management and Insurance * (6 credits)

The course introduces the statistical, financial and legal principles underlying the techniques for managing the insurable risks faced by organizations and individuals. It is aimed at students who have minimal background in quantitative methods and is not available to students majoring in Actuarial Science. The course emphasizes basic risk management and financial planning, and students will be able to apply these concepts immediately to their own lives.

Prerequisite  ECOL2006 or ECON1003 or STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT1801 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602
* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT2311 Computer-aided Data Analysis** * (6 credits)

A wide range of statistical analyses and methods are presented using data sets generated from social sciences research and scientific studies. These analyses deal with designed experiments in the laboratory or field-work setting together with data from less-rigorously planned observational studies. Measuring uncertainty, describing patterns of variability, and describing the inter-relationship between several variables are therefore essential aspects of social science and scientific investigations. These aspects require a good understanding of statistics. This computer-oriented but non-mathematical course develops the important concepts and methods of statistics. Although no knowledge of a programming language is required, the course makes extensive use of computers. This is made possible by high-quality, but user friendly statistical software like JMP or SPSS.

Prerequisite: ECOL2006 or ECON1003 or STAT0301 or STAT1306 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0602 or (CogSc students having taken STAT1000 or STAT1301) (Students taking or having taken STAT0603 are not allowed to take this course)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT2312 Data Mining** * (6 credits)

With an explosion in information technology in the past decade, vast amounts of data appear in a variety of fields such as finance, marketing research, customer relations management, medicine and healthcare. The challenge of understanding these data with the aim of creating new knowledge and finding new relationships among data attributes has led to the innovative usage of statistical methodologies and development of new ones. In this process, a new area called data mining is spawned. This course provides a comprehensive and practical coverage of essential data mining concepts and statistical models for data mining.

Prerequisite: ECOL2006 or ECON1003 or STAT0301 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT1801 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT2313 Marketing Engineering** * (6 credits)

This course is designed to provide an overview and practical application of trends, technology and methodology used in the marketing survey process including problem formulation, survey design, data collection and analysis, and report writing. Special emphasis will be put on statistical techniques particularly for analysing marketing data including market segmentation, market response models, consumer preference analysis and conjoint analysis. Students will analyse a variety of marketing case studies.

Prerequisite: STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1301 or STAT1306 or STAT1801 or ECON1003 or ECOL2006 or STAT1000 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1007 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0601 or STAT0602

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.
STAT2314  Business Forecasting * (6 credits)

In daily business operations, forecasts are routinely required on different aspects of the economy, the market and individual companies. Numerous statistical techniques have been developed in the past decades to provide forecasts for the business decision-maker. This course considers a wide range of such techniques that have proven useful to practitioners. The course will involve the use of computer software, EXCEL, in the teaching process.

Prerequisite  ECOL2006 or ECON1003 or STAT0301 or STAT0302 or STAT1306 or STAT1001 or STAT1003 or STAT1006 or STAT1008 or STAT2001 or STAT0602

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2315  Practical Mathematics for Investment and Pensions * (6 credits)

The main focus of this course will be on financial mathematics of compound interest and life contingencies. Practical applications include local examples from commercial and car loans, mortgages, bonds, health insurance, Mandatory Provident Fund (MPF) System and other retirement security schemes.

Prerequisite  Any introductory-level or junior-level course (Students taking or having taken STAT1802 are not allowed to take this course.)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2801  Life Contingencies * (6 credits)

The major objectives of this course are to integrate life contingencies into a full probabilistic framework and to demonstrate the wide variety of constructs which are then possible to build from basic models at the foundation of actuarial science. The time-until-death random variable will be the basic building block by which models for life insurances, designed to reduce the financial impact of the random event of untimely death, will be developed. Techniques for calculation benefit premiums and benefit reserves of various types of life annuity and insurance will be discussed.

Prerequisite  (STAT1302 and STAT2315) or (STAT1802 and taking or having taken STAT2802) or (STAT1302 and STAT1802) or (STAT0100 and STAT0113)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2804  Linear Models and Forecasting * (6 credits)

This course deals with applied statistical methods of linear models and investigates various forecasting procedures through time series analysis.

Prerequisite  STAT1302 or STAT2802 or STAT0100 or STAT0605 (Students taking or having taken STAT2301 or STAT3301 or STAT0102 or STAT0604 or STAT3101 are not allowed to take this course)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT2805  Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions * (6 credits)

Credibility is an example of a statistical estimate. The idea of credibility is very useful in premium calculation. Insurance loss varies according to the business nature, what distribution should be used to fit
a particular loss is both of theoretical interest and practical importance. This course covers important actuarial and statistical methods.

Prerequisite: STAT1302 or STAT2802 or STAT3810 or STAT0100 or STAT0604 or STAT0605 or STAT0802

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT2806 Financial Economics** * (6 credits)

This course covers the skills necessary to construct and apply discrete stochastic models to value financial derivatives.

Prerequisite: STAT1302 or STAT2802 or STAT0100 or STAT0604 or STAT0605

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT3301 Time-series Analysis** * (6 credits)

A time series consists of a set of observations on a random variable taken over time. Time series arise naturally in climatology, economics, environment studies, finance and many other disciplines. The observations in a time series are usually correlated; the course establishes a framework to discuss this. This course distinguishes different type of time series, investigates various representations for the processes and studies the relative merits of different forecasting procedures. Students will analyse real time-series data on the computer.

Prerequisite: STAT2301 or STAT0102 or STAT0604. (Students taking or having taken STAT0801 or STAT2804 are not allowed to take this course.)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT3302 Multivariate Data Analysis** * (6 credits)

In many designed experiments or observational studies the researchers are dealing with multivariate data, where each observation is a set of measurements taken on the same individual. These measurements are often correlated. The correlation prevents the use of univariate statistics to draw inferences. This course develops the statistical methods for analysing multivariate data through examples in various fields of application and hands-on experience with the statistical software SAS.

Prerequisite: STAT0102 or STAT0604 or STAT0801 or STAT2301 or STAT2804

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT3304 Computer-aided Statistical Modelling** * (6 credits)

This is a computer-aided course of statistical modelling designed for the students who have taken STAT2301 Linear Statistical Analysis and like to see theory illustrated by practical computation. Numerous real data sets will be presented for modelling and analysis using statistical software, such as SAS, for gaining hands-on experience. The course also aims to develop skills of model selection and hypotheses formulation for testing, so that questions of interest can be properly formulated and answered. An important element deals with model review and improvement, when one’s first attempt does not adequately fit the data. Modern computer software such as SAS makes this interactive approach easier.

Prerequisite: STAT2301 or STAT2804 or STAT0102 or STAT0801 (Students taking or having taken
STAT3601 are not allowed to take this course)

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT3305  Financial Data Analysis** * (6 credits)

This course focuses on understanding financial data and methods by which they are analyzed and interpreted. It aims at enhancing the students’ analytical skills of developing statistical models for analysing financial data. Techniques are motivated by examples and developed in the context of applications. Students will learn how to process financial data for purposes of financial analysis, estimation and testing of financial models and to understand better crucial aspects of financial market movements.

Prerequisite  ECON1001 or STAT2309 or STAT2806


---

**STAT3306  Selected Topics in Statistics** * (6 credits)

This course covers a range of topics necessary for work as a professional statistician. Statistical problems can be of many types. Whilst the statistician will face many non-standard situations, he/she is aided by well-developed theories and methods which bring many problems into a standard framework. This course presents such theory and methods. The emphasis may vary slightly from year to year.

Prerequisite  STAT0102 or STAT0801 or STAT0604 or STAT2301 or STAT2804

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT3307  Project in Statistics** * (6 credits)

Each year a few projects suitable for Statistics or Actuarial Science major students will be offered. These projects, under the supervision of individual staff members involve the application of statistics and/or probability in interesting situations. They provide students with practical experience in approaching a real problem, in report writing and in oral presentation.

Prerequisite  STAT2301 or (STAT2802 and STAT2804) or STAT0102 or STAT0604 or (STAT2802 and STAT0801). Approval is subject to past academic performance. Availability of this course to Actuarial Science students is also subject to a quota.

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

---

**STAT3308  Financial Engineering** * (6 credits)

This course aims at demonstrating the practical use of financial derivative products to analyse various problems arisen in financial engineering. This course also examines the problems of measuring and managing financial market risk.

Prerequisite  STAT2309 or STAT2806 or STAT0109 or STAT0806

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.
STAT3810  Risk Theory * (6 credits)

Risk theory studies the deviations of financial results from those expected and deals with methods of avoiding inconvenient consequences from such deviations. This course deals with ruin theory; the applications of statistical models and stochastic processes to short-term insurance such as fire insurance, private motor insurance, and short-term disability insurance.

Prerequisite  (Taking or having taken STAT2803 or STAT2303 or MATH2603 or STAT0103

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT3811  Survival Analysis * (6 credits)

This course is concerned with how models which predict the survival pattern of humans or other entities are established. This exercise is sometimes referred to as survival-model construction.

Prerequisite  (Taking or having taken STAT2802 or STAT2301 or MATH2801 or STAT0102 or STAT0604 or STAT0801

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

STAT3812  Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications * (6 credits)

Stochastic calculus has become an essential tool in economics, insurance, finance and econometrics. This mathematical theory is the basis for pricing financial derivatives such as options and futures. This course is designed for students to develop professional skills in stochastic calculus and its applications to actuarial science and finance. Pure mathematical components of the course will be kept at a reasonably low level. The course begins with an overview of the basic concepts from probability theory. Stochastic processes, especially Brownian motion and martingales will be discussed.

Prerequisite  MATH2603 or STAT2303 or STAT2803 or STAT0103

* For students admitted in or before the academic year 2002-03, the prerequisites of the course can be treated as prerequisites or co-requisites.

Faculty-level courses

SCNC0004  Scientific Thinking and Interesting Discoveries * (3 credits)

The objective of this course is to explore scientific thinking and also its relationship with the process of discovery. To provide an introduction of the logic of scientific thinking that leads eventually to interesting scientific discoveries. The course also emphasizes the appreciation of these discoveries and their implications.

Prerequisite  Nil


SCNC1001  Science: Concepts & Notions * (6 credits)

To provide an introduction to scientific method, thought and concepts: to illustrate the different approaches taken within sub-disciplines to the investigation of major scientific problems and concepts.

Prerequisite  1 AL science subject

SCNC2002  Science and the New Millennium  * (6 credits)

To provide a coherent picture of modern Science by highlighting the course with topics of significant importance and with relevance to our daily life, in order for students to appreciate the importance of such significant scientific developments.

To generate a strong and intense interest in Science (life long learning) by widening the scope of the science horizon of each undergraduate in the Faculty.

To develop skills in communicating Science to laymen through posters and oral presentations.

Prerequisite  SCNC1001


Language courses offered to BSc students

Chinese

CSCI0001  Practical Chinese Language Course for Science Students  * (3 credits)

(1)  Practical Chinese Writing Skills
    (a)  Classical and modern Chinese
    (b)  The Chinese language: characteristics and usage
    (c)  Basic grammar of modern Chinese

(2)  Chinese Characters
    (a)  Traditional characters
    (b)  Simplified characters
    (c)  Variant forms

(3)  Letter-writing
    (a)  Business letter writing techniques
    (b)  Official letter writing techniques

(4)  Office Documents
    (a)  Notices and announcements
    (b)  Proposals
    (c)  Minutes and reports of meetings

(5)  Chinese for Special Purposes
    (a)  An introduction to science and technology in ancient China
    (b)  Reader-based scientific/technical writings
    (c)  Styles and rhetoric of scientific/technical writings

(6)  Presentation and Communication Techniques
    (a)  Communication and presentation techniques
    (b)  Discussion and the art of persuasion

Prerequisite  Nil

*  This course is compulsory for all BSc students.

CSCI0002  Putonghua Course for Science Students  * (no credit)

The course is divided into three parts:

  (i)  Pronunciation;
  (ii)  The pinyin system;
  (iii)  Texts: greetings, numbers, inquiry, time & appointments, asking for direction, shopping, making phone calls, at the bank, in the post office, food and science terminology.

Prerequisite  Nil

*  This course is available for BSc I students only.

  Average class size is around 30.
**CSCI2002  Advanced Language Studies in Chinese** (3 credits)

(1) To hone students’ communicative skills in Chinese. This course aims to improve their reading, listening, writing and speaking abilities in Chinese.

(2) To expose students to different aspects of the language. This course covers a wide range of both linguistic and extra-linguistic subject matters, the knowledge of which would enable the students to use the language in an efficacious way.

(3) To give pre-service language training to students. This course equips the students with language proficiency to get and secure a job.

(4) To promote deeper understanding of Chinese culture. This course identifies areas of Chinese culture that are essential for the students to understand their society better.

Prerequisite  CSCI0001

**English**

**ECEN1801  Academic English for Science Students** * (3 credits)

To build confidence in the use of English for writing and speaking about science. The focus is on:

(1) Writing an essay which meets the requirements of good academic writing, in particular making appropriate use of published sources and avoiding plagiarism.

(2) Speaking in an organized and coherent manner.

Prerequisite  Nil

* This course is compulsory for all B.Sc. students.

**ECEN2802  Advanced Academic English for Science Students** * (3 credits)

To develop a sense of audience awareness in writing, to develop spontaneous speaking skills and to individualise language learning. The focus is on:

(1) Writing a short article for one of a range of web journals each with a different audience and topic focus (individual choice).

(2) Spontaneous (i.e. unrehearsed) discussion through participation in seminars and one-to-one discussions.

(3) Developing independent language learning skills to help students address their individual language problems and focus on their future language needs.

Prerequisite  ECEN1801

* This course is compulsory for all B.Sc. students.
CENTRE OF BUDDHIST STUDIES

BSTC0001. Making sense of Ch’an (Zen) (6 credits)
To many people, Ch’an (禪) has an aura of unspeakable romanticism. This course will examine the position of Ch’an within the more comprehensible framework of orthodox Buddhist Teachings, its development in Chinese history, the patriarchs (祖師) and the influences of Ch’an on Chinese thought and culture. The beauty and function of Ko’an (公案) and Ch’an poetry (禪詩) will also be studied so that students will get a feeling of the unspeakable romanticism. In addition, the practical usage of Ch’an in daily life will be explored: Ch’an and mind development, Ch’an and self-awareness and how to make Ch’an more accessible to modern society. Assessment: 100% coursework.

BSTC0002. Life and Buddhism (6 credits)
Our goal in life, whether it is for personal excellence, financial success or national glory, is in essence a search for happiness, for ourselves and for others. Misguided notions of happiness lead to dire consequences, resulting in suffering and unhappiness for the individual and the community. This course examines how the ancient wisdom of Buddhism teaches us the art of happiness in daily life from the following three aspects: (1) Personal cultivation (topics including the cause for suffering life and happy life, the Buddhist way of living well and dying well, the reality of life, moral causation, Threefold training, and morality in both Mahayana and Theravada traditions), (2) Improvement of human relationship (topics including the four immeasurables, social implication of the five precepts and six perfections) and (3) Improvement of social environment (topics including Buddhist perspective of wealth, Buddhist attitude towards war and peace and Buddhist ideal society). Assessment: 100% coursework.

BSTC0003. Buddhism and contemporary moral problems (6 credits)
This course is designed to introduce students to the foundations of Buddhist values and ethics, and to apply Buddhist ethics to examine a broad range of contemporary moral problems, for instance suicide, abortion, and euthanasia; money and work; sexuality and marriage; sexual equality; animals and environment; war and peace. Students will be guided to develop critical thinking in understanding and resolving moral dilemmas, and making responsible decisions. Assessment: 100% coursework.

BSTC0004. The art of living (6 credits)
Psychologists have proposed a set of developmental tasks for young adults in western societies which are also applicable for university undergraduate students. They include the following: (a) developing autonomy or independence from parents; (b) sex-role identity; internalized morality; (c) emotional independence and maturity; (d) peer relationships; and (e) career choice and uncertainty in our technological era. This course will examine and discuss how to apply Buddhist wisdom and knowledge of social psychology to enlighten and empower students in four aspects: (a) promoting self-understanding and self-affirmation/exploring the impact of significant people on ones life; (b) establishing and maintaining positive interpersonal relationships with peers and seniors; (c) developing emotional intelligence and well-being to deal with life problems and adversities; (d) exploring the meaning of life; and (e) making responsible moral choices in our pluralistic society. Assessment: 100% coursework.
FACULTY OF ENGINEERING

Department of Computer Science

Assessment of each course will be based on a three-hour written examination and in-course assessment in a ratio as indicated below.

CSIS1117. Computer programming (6 credits)
The goal of this course is for students to learn the general principles of programming, including how to design, implement, document, test, and debug programs. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination

CSIS1118. Mathematical foundations of computer science (6 credits)
Logic, sets, and functions; mathematical reasoning; counting techniques; relations; graphs; trees; modeling computation.

CSIS1119. Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6 credits)
Arrays, linked lists, trees and graphs; stacks and queues; symbol tables; priority queues, balanced trees; sorting algorithms; complexity analysis. Assessment: 40% coursework; 60% examination
Prerequisite: CSIS1117 or CSIS0396 or CSIS0911 or ELEC1501

CSIS1120. Machine organization and assembly language programming (6 credits)
Fundamentals of computer organization and machine architecture; number, character and instruction representations; addressing modes; assembly language programming including stack manipulation and subroutine linkage; basic logic design and integrated devices; the central processing unit and its control; concepts of microprogramming, data flow and control flow; I/O devices and their controllers, interrupts and memory organization; computer arithmetic.
Co-requisite: CSIS1117 Computer programming or ELEC1501 Computer programming and data structures

Semesters III to VI

CSIS0230. Principles of operating systems (6 credits)
Operating system structures, process and thread, CPU scheduling, process synchronization, deadlocks, memory management, file systems, I/O systems and device driver, mass-storage structure and disk scheduling, network structure, distributed systems, case studies.
Prerequisites: CSIS1119 Introduction to data structures and algorithms; and CSIS1120 Machine organization and assembly language programming; or ELEC1401 Computer organization and microprocessors or ELEC1613 Assembly language programming and microprocessors

CSIS0234. Computer and communication networks (6 credits)
Network structure and architecture; reference models; stop and wait protocol; sliding window protocols; character and bit oriented protocols; virtual circuits and datagrams; routing; flow control; congestion control; local area networks; issues and principles of network interconnection; transport protocols and application layer; examples of network protocols.
Prerequisite: CSIS1120 Machine organization and assembly language programming or ELEC1401 Computer organization and microprocessors or ELEC1613 Assembly language programming and microprocessors
CSIS0250. Design and analysis of algorithms (6 credits)
The course studies various algorithm design techniques, such as divide and conquer, and dynamic programming. These techniques are applied to design highly non-trivial algorithms from various areas of computer science. Topics include: advanced data structures; graph algorithms; searching algorithms; geometric algorithms; overview of NP-complete problems. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
Pre/Co-requisite: CSIS1119 or CSIS0912 or ELEC1501

CSIS0270. Artificial intelligence (6 credits)
AI programming languages; logic; theorem proving; searching; problem solving. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
Prerequisite: CSIS1119 or CSIS0912

CSIS0271. Computer graphics (6 credits)
Overview of graphics hardware, basic drawing algorithms, 2-D transformations, windowing and clipping, interactive input devices, curves and surfaces, 3-D transformations and viewing, hidden-surface and hidden-line removal, shading and colour models, modelling, illumination models, image synthesis, computer animation. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
Prerequisite: CSIS1119 or CSIS0912

CSIS0278. Introduction to database management systems (6 credits)
This course studies the principles, design, administration, and implementation of database management systems. Topics include: entity-relationship model, relational model, relational algebra and calculus, database design and normalization, database query languages, indexing schemes, integrity, concurrency control, and query processing. Assessment: 60% coursework; 40% examination.
This course may not be taken with BUSI0052.
Prerequisite: CSIS1119 or CSIS0912 or ELEC1501

CSIS0297. Introduction to software engineering (6 credits)
This course introduces the fundamental principles and methodologies of software engineering. It covers the software process and methods and tools employed in the development of modern systems. The use of CASE tools and the UML are emphasized. The course includes a team-based project in which students apply their new knowledge to a full development lifecycle, including maintenance. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
This course may not be taken with CSIS1401.
Prerequisite: CSIS1117 or CSIS0396 or CSIS0911 or ELEC1501

CSIS0311. Legal aspects of computing (6 credit)
To introduce students to the laws affecting computing and the legal issues arising from the technology. Contents include: the legal system of Hong Kong; copyright protection for computer programs and databases; intellectual property issues on the Internet; patent protection for computer-related inventions; computer contracts and licences; electronic transactions; data protection. Assessment: 30% coursework; 70% examination.
This course may not be taken with LLAW3065.
Prerequisite: CSIS1117 or CSIS0396 or CSIS0911 or ELEC1501
CSIS0315. Multimedia computing and applications (6 credits)
This course introduces various aspects of the interdisciplinary and multidisciplinary field of multimedia computing. Current developments of technologies and techniques in multimedia will also be covered. Applications of multimedia techniques are also highlighted through a media production course project. Major topics include: what are media, audio, acoustics and psychoacoustics, MIDI, basic compression techniques, video compression techniques, standards, and current multimedia technologies. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
This course may not be taken with BUSI0068.
Prerequisite: CSIS1119 or CSIS0912

CSIS0317. Computer vision (6 credits)
This course introduces the principles, mathematical models and applications of computer vision. Topics include: image processing techniques, feature extraction techniques, imaging models and camera calibration techniques, stereo vision, and motion analysis. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
Prerequisite: CSIS1119 or CSIS0912 or ELEC1501

CSIS0320. Electronic commerce technology (6 credits)
This course aims to help students to understand the technical and managerial challenges they will face as electronic commerce becomes a new locus of economics activities. Topics include Internet and WWW technology, information security technologies, public-key crypto-systems, public-key infrastructure, electronic payment systems, and electronic commerce activities in different sectors. Assessment: 40% coursework; 60% examination.
Prerequisite: CSIS0278 or CSIS0912

CSIS0322. Internet and the World Wide Web (6 credits)
Introduction and history; networks, internetworking, and network protocols; TCP/IP and related protocols; client-server model and programming; distributed applications; Domain Name System; Internet applications: TELNET, mail, FTP, etc.; Internet security; intranet and extranet; virtual private networks; World Wide Web; Web addressing; HTTP; HTML, XML, style sheets, etc.; programming the Web: CGI, Java, JavaScript, etc.; Web servers; Web security; Web searching; push technology; other topics of current interest. Assessment: 40% coursework; 60% examination.
This course may not be taken with BUSI0063.
Prerequisite: CSIS1117 or CSIS0396 or CSIS0911 or ELEC1501

CSIS0396. Programming methodology and object-oriented programming (6 credits)
Introduction to programming paradigms; abstract data types and classes; object-oriented program design; object-oriented programming; program development, generation and analysis tools; scripting and command languages; user interfaces and GUIs; program documentation. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
This course may not be taken with CSIS1422.
Co-requisite: CSIS1117 or CSIS0911 or ELEC1501

CSIS0521 Concepts and tools for software development (6 credits)
This course will introduce the following concepts and techniques for software development: key steps in a software development life cycle; software development methodologies; components of a web-based software tools; installation of servers (e.g. web server, database server etc.); web programming (e.g. PHP, mySQL); key issues in human-user interface; data visualization (e.g. visualization on the web with SVG). Examples will be drawn from practical cases such as bioinformatics software tools development.
The emphasis is on how to formulate the computational problem based on the user requirements and the related practical concerns for the development of the software. Assessment: 50% coursework; 50% examination.
This course is open to non-Engineering students only.
Pre-requisite: CSIS1117

CSIS0803. Systems integration project (6 credits)
This is a team project involving development and integration of software components. The objective is to put the concepts and theories covered in the main software engineering courses (such as CSIS0297, CSIS0401, CSIS0402 and CSIS0403) into practice. The output will be a distributed software system based on well-defined requirements. Software tools will be used and system programming is a compulsory part of the project.

CSIS1411. Workshop training (summer) (3 credits)
This is a compulsory course taken after completing the first year of studies. Workshop Training is structured as a series of modules in which students gain direct, hands-on experience of various industry-standard software tools and technologies. As well as providing an exposure to current "tools of the trade", the course also emphasizes the application of engineering principles to the development and use of software systems.

CSIS1421. Engineering mathematics (6 credits)
Linear algebra, probability and statistics, multi-variable calculus, and ordinary differential equations.

Other CSIS Courses
Students may apply to enrol in other CSIS courses not listed above, subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Computer Science.
FACULTY OF EDUCATION

EDUC1001 Language and Learning (6 credits)

This course considers the nature, organization and functioning of language itself, as our primary meaning-making resource. It covers language development in children, the role of language in learning, at home and in school, the challenges of mastering literacy, the linguistic component in educational knowledge, language across the curriculum, the language and genres of specific school subjects, and academic genres at tertiary level and beyond.

EDUC1002 Hong Kong Education: Systemic Features and Social Approaches * (6 credits)

After studying the course, students will be able to identify, understand and analyse major features underlying the Hong Kong educational system, their trends of development and the social factors contributing to the formation of these systemic features.

* This course is a prerequisite for teaching methods courses: EDUC8301, EDUC8302 and EDUC8303.

EDUC2001 Psychology of Teaching and Learning * (6 credits)

This course explores a broad range of issues that affect teaching and learning. It provides opportunities for reflecting on and understanding educational practice. Emphasis will be given to the impact of the interplay between personological characteristics and learning environments upon both teaching effectiveness and learning outcome. Upon completing this course, learners will achieve an enhanced ability to create learning environments that are more conducive to student learning and development.

* This course is a prerequisite for teaching methods courses: EDUC8301, EDUC8302 and EDUC8303.

EDUC3001 Children with Learning Difficulties (3 credits)

This course considers the definition, the characteristics and the different strategies of helping children with learning difficulties. It addresses the origins of learning difficulties in children, in schools and in systems; referral procedures and means of identifying children with special needs; and the provision of services for these children.

EDUC3005 Guidance and Counselling (3 credits)

This course provides an introduction to guidance and counselling. It examines the rationale underlying the provision of guidance and counselling services in schools. It is also offered as an introduction to the knowledge and skills that are basic to counselling and guidance.

EDUC4002 Curriculum Concepts and Issues (3 credits)

This course examines the key elements or components of school curricula and the critical questions which need to be asked about those components. The influence of social, political and economic factors on the design and implementation of the curriculum are also analysed.
EDUC4003  Concepts and Values in Education (3 credits)

The purpose of this course is to introduce students to conceptual understanding of the nature and process of education as well as its values in society. Topics concerning the nature of education include definitions of education, and aims of education. Topics concerning the values of education in society include the justification of education, educational values, and human nature and potential. Topics concerning the process of education include education and personal relationships, teaching and learning, freedom and authority, and punishment and discipline. Students are asked to discuss these issues in the context of Hong Kong education.

EDUC8001  Understanding and Guiding the Development of Young Children (6 credits)

This course will consider theoretical approaches to understanding young children and will provide an overview of physical, cognitive and social/emotional development at the infant, toddler, preschool and early primary levels. It will critically evaluate the different models of teaching, consider various methods of guiding young children’s behaviour, and focus on how to create and maintain a positive learning environment. The significance and effects of play in the early childhood curriculum and ways of facilitating play will be emphasized. Methods of fostering social competence, self-esteem and self-control in the preschool environment will also be addressed.

Prerequisite:  PSYC0009

(URL: http://www.hku.hk/education/courses/course-ugdyc.htm)

EDUC8002  Planning, Managing and Assessing Services for Young Children (6 credits)

This course will first consider how theoretical approaches have shaped early childhood education and contemporary curriculum models. It will then address planning and implementing the curriculum/programme. Finally, it will consider assessment and evaluation in early childhood programmes. This part will address ways of assessing, recording and reporting children’s progress, and ways of evaluating the different components of early childhood programmes such as the theoretical foundations, goals, physical environment, curriculum, teaching practices, social interaction and parental involvement.

Prerequisite:  PSYC0009

(URL: http://www.hku.hk/education/courses/course-pmasyc.htm)

EDUC8301  Teaching Science in Schools (6 credits)

This course aims to help students to acquire and develop expertise as science teachers. It focuses on how best to promote and organize learning in schools.

Prerequisite:  EDUC1002 and EDUC2001

EDUC8302  Teaching Computer and Information Technology in Schools (6 credits)

This course aims to help students to develop understanding about the teaching of computer studies and information technology subjects in schools. It focuses on the evolution of the curricula concerned,
learning theories that would help the teaching of such subjects, and critical awareness about the power and problems of the technology.

Prerequisite: EDUC1002 and EDUC2001

EDUC8303  Teaching Mathematics in Schools (6 credits)

This course aims to help students to reflect upon the aims and objectives of mathematics teaching, familiarize themselves with the local school mathematics curriculum, broaden their awareness of mathematics as a subject, gain an understanding of how school students learn mathematics, and be aware of the issues in school mathematics.

Prerequisite: EDUC1002 and EDUC2001

EDUC8304  Project/Individual Study (6 credits)

Students may undertake curriculum or school programme related work to develop learning resources or co-curricular programmes in an area of interest which may develop from their educational studies or teaching methods courses. Such a project could extend or be different from assignments written for specific courses.
DESCRIPTION FOR UNDERGRADUATE COURSES OFFERED BY
SCHOOL OF BUSINESS 2004-05

The courses listed below will not be necessarily offered every year.

Junior Level Courses

**BUSI1006. Principles and practices of modern business (3 credits)**

This course is deliberately designed to make students aware of the mechanics and environments in which modern day business operate in global, regional and domestic markets. This course aims to help students to understand modern business operations and development in the knowledge economy. This orientation is organized around the new emerging paradigms of business configuration and the skills required of future business leaders.

Mutually exclusive courses: BUSI10015 and YSOB0001
BUSI1007. Principles of management (6 credits)

This introductory course traces back to how the study and practice of management evolved over this past century, with particular focus on the landmark discoveries and lessons learned. The course aims to develop students’ awareness of the nature of management processes and involves a study of the following topics: planning, organizing, controlling, leading, communication and change management. The programme's pedagogical design combines the ingredients of theoretical conceptualization and emphasizes interactive discussions, skill-building experiential exercises and students’ presentations.
Remarks: Students having completed BUSI1007 Principles of management (3 credits) offered in the academic year 2002-2003 or earlier are not allowed to take this course.

Senior Level Courses

BUSI0001. Accounting systems and financial reporting in China (6 credits)

The course will be an introduction to current accounting systems and financial reporting practices in China. The topics covered in this course include administration of accounting work, accounting legislation and regulations, business accounting standards, practices of cost accounting and managerial accounting, accounting for governments and non-profit organizations (budgetary accounting), financial reporting of the listed corporations, disclosure of other information, preparation of financial statements, auditing requirements, practices of public accounting, and analysis of financial statements in China.
Prerequisite: BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting

BUSI0002. Accounting theory (6 credits)

Prerequisite: BUSI0020 Intermediate accounting II

BUSI0003. Advanced financial accounting (6 credits)

Application of accounting theory to the preparation of accounting standards and their implications for reporting purposes, particularly those related to the consolidation of group accounts, asset valuation and the influence on income determination. Other topics may include current cost accounting, income tax allocation, government entities and nonprofit organizations.
Prerequisite: BUSI0020 Intermediate accounting II

BUSI0004. Advertising management (6 credits)

The preparation, use and administration of advertising, emphasizing the use of research to direct and measure the effectiveness of each stage in the operation.
Prerequisite: BUSI1004 Marketing

BUSI0006. Auditing (6 credits)

Professional ethics, and the social and legal responsibilities of auditors; basic auditing concepts and principles; evidence; evaluation of internal control; standard procedures and methods of investigation.
Prerequisite: BUSI0020 Intermediate accounting II
BUSI0008. Business cycles and strategy (6 credits)

A course on business cycles in a global economy and how firms devise business strategies. Topics include business expansion and contraction, hiring and layoff decisions, consumer spending, banking relationship and hedging strategies in a world of fluctuating exchange rates. Remarks: It is not available to Year I students.

BUSI0009. Business policy (6 credits)

The course will review the analysis and implementation of strategic corporate decisions which encompass all functional areas of business. Students will be split into small groups and will be required to write a mini-project of not more than 5,000 words outlining the desired corporate strategy for a given corporate problem. Remarks: Only available to students in the School of Business.

BUSI0010. Company law (6 credits)

Formation of companies; memoranda and articles of association. Powers and duties of directors, secretaries and auditors. Shareholders’ rights and powers and the role of the courts. Takeovers, mergers and investments; statutes, regulations and codes. Insolvency law and practice. Remarks: It is advisable to take BUSI1001 Business law prior to this course.

BUSI0011. Corporate finance (6 credits)

or

FINA0302. Corporate finance (6 credits)

A course on the advanced treatment of corporate financial decisions. Topics to be covered include corporate valuation; cost of capital; capital structure; leasing; mergers and acquisitions; options; warrants; and convertible bonds. Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance.

BUSI0012. Comparative and international management (6 credits)

This course introduces students to cross-cultural differences in social values and in psychological attitudes and considers their implications for behaviour in organizations. Initial consideration will be given to the process of development and the changes which that brings. This will be followed by a review of the major business cultures in Asia, contrasting them with Western examples. Concentration will be focused on Chinese forms of business.

BUSI0013. Current business affairs (3 credits)

A course on current business affairs focused primarily on Hong Kong and the region. The emphasis is on the interaction between business behaviour and the economic environment. Topics to be covered may include government policy, legal framework, imports and exports, banking and finance, property and land markets, retail and wholesale trade, public utilities, infrastructure investment projects, small and medium enterprises, and technology and innovation. Prerequisite: ECON1001 Introduction to economics I.

BUSI0015. Entrepreneurship, creativity and innovation (6 credits)

This course explores the central issues involved in the pursuit of an entrepreneurial career in business.
The nature of the course requires some novel approaches to learning and reflection, and the design of these learning activities will take advantage of a rapidly expanding intellectual core which gives meaning and coherence to entrepreneurial activities.

Mutually exclusive courses: BUSI1006 and YSOB0001

---

**BUSI0017. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)**

or

**FINA0102. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)**

This course is designed to introduce and analyze the structure, operations and functions of the financial system. The course starts with an introduction to financial markets’ role in the economy, and the determination of interest rates and valuation of cash flows. The course then discusses various financial markets including money markets, bond markets, mortgage markets, stock markets and derivatives markets. Financial institutions will be discussed with an emphasis on their major functions and operations.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

---

**BUSI0018. Hong Kong taxation (6 credits)**

A study of the accounting for, and management of, taxes on income under the Inland Revenue Ordinance, within the context of taxation theory.

Prerequisite: BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting

---

**BUSI0019. Intermediate accounting I (6 credits)**

The course provides an in-depth knowledge of the first part of financial accounting. It covers the environment of financial accounting and the development of accounting standards; conceptual framework underlying financial accounting; statement of income and retained earnings; balance sheet; accounting and the time value of money; cash and receivables; valuation of inventories; acquisition and disposition of property, plant and equipment; depreciation and depletion; intangible assets; current liabilities and contingencies; long-term liabilities; temporary investments and long-term investments; and revenue recognition.

Prerequisite: BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting

---

**BUSI0020. Intermediate accounting II (6 credits)**

This course provides an in-depth knowledge of the second part of financial accounting. It covers stockholders’ equity; dilutive securities and earnings per share calculations; accounting for income taxes; accounting for pensions and postretirement benefits; accounting for leases; accounting changes and error analysis; statements of cash flows; basic financial statement analysis; and full disclosure in financial reporting.

Prerequisite: BUSI0019 Intermediate accounting I

---

**BUSI0021. International accounting (6 credits)**


Prerequisite: BUSI0020 Intermediate accounting II
BUSI0022. International marketing (6 credits)

This course shows how the basic principles of marketing can be applied to the problems of marketing across national boundaries and within foreign countries. Attention is paid to the development of global marketing strategies and to the different approaches needed to market consumer items, industrial goods and services internationally.
Prerequisite: BUSI1004 Marketing

BUSI0023. Operations and quality management (6 credits)

A general introduction to the basic concepts and principles of management of manufacturing and service operations. Emphasis will be on both the quantitative and qualitative aspects of operations management and the intention is to give students moderate exposure to the major topics in operations management.

BUSI0024. Investments (6 credits)

or
FINA2802 Investments (6 credits)

A comprehensive analysis of various investment vehicles and portfolio management techniques. Topics covered: modern portfolio theory and asset pricing models, portfolio management, investment strategies, analysis of common stocks and bonds, and introduction to derivatives securities.
Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

BUSI0025. Advanced topics in investments (6 credits)

A course on the modern portfolio theory and the various pricing models of securities.
Prerequisite: BUSI0024 Investments or FINA2802 Investments

BUSI0026. Employment and labour relations (6 credits)

This course intends to give an overview on the fundamentals of labour relations theories pertaining to trade unionism, collective bargaining and workplace labour-management relations. Particular attention is also given to the development of the labour market, employment pattern and labour law in Hong Kong.

BUSI0027. Management accounting I (6 credits)

The theory and techniques involved in serving the accounting needs of management in the decision making, control, evaluation and motivational aspects.
Prerequisite: BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting. Students who have taken BUSI0007 Budgetary planning and control are not allowed to take this course.

BUSI0028. Management accounting II (6 credits)

A course on advanced problems in managerial accounting and management information and reporting systems for planning and control of operations. In particular it will include problems associated with large decentralized companies - divisional performance control, measurement and evaluation, transfer pricing.
Prerequisite: BUSI0027 Management accounting I
BUSI0029. Human resource management and business strategy (6 credits)

This course proposes to look at the basic concepts of human resource management (HRM) and its application to Hong Kong. Emphasis will be placed on the strategic linkage between HRM and corporate management in the context of business changes and re-structuring. Comparative references will also be made to practices elsewhere in other industrial societies.

BUSI0030. Market competition and quality management (6 credits)

The objective of this course is to explore the problems and issues involved in the management of quality improvement and market competition. Emphasis will be on the strategic aspects of quality and marketing management and the intention is to give students exposure to important topics like customer value, quality improvement tools, quality concepts and its relationship with different aspects of marketing management.
Prerequisite: BUSI1004 Marketing

BUSI0031. Marketing research (6 credits)

This course will cover the broad principles of marketing research. Emphasis will be placed on the use of marketing research as an aid to decision making. In this spirit students will be introduced to a variety of types of marketing research data. Students will be given the opportunity to engage in practical marketing research based exercises.
Prerequisite: BUSI1004 Marketing

BUSI0032. Multinational corporations (6 credits)

This course studies the multinational enterprise (MNE) and the theoretical approaches that have been formulated to explain the growth and operation of this form of business on an international scale. Recent general theories will be considered in a critical manner to allow judgements to be made on their strengths and limitations.
Prerequisite: BUSI1007 Principles of management

BUSI0033. Organizational change and development (6 credits)

The objective of this course is to explore the problems and issues involved in the management of organizational change and development. Major approaches and attempts to conceptualize the phenomenon will be examined in a critical manner. Particular attention will be paid to problems arising from company formation, entrepreneurial ventures, company expansion and growth, maturity and bureaucratization, corporate failure and recovery. Major strategies for change will be examined.

BUSI0034. Human resource: theory and practice (6 credits)

A course that draws upon an understanding of organizational behaviour to examine the techniques and practice of HRM. Topics include HRM and corporate strategy, human resource planning, recruitment and selection, performance management, training and development, employee relations.
BUSI0035. Production and operations (6 credits)
A course to introduce a systems-oriented view of production and operations management.
Prerequisites: BUSI0023 Operations and quality management, and BUSI0036 Quantitative analysis for business decisions I

BUSI0036. Quantitative analysis for business decisions I (6 credits)
A course on the quantitative methods that are used to solve business problems and make managerial decisions. The course will involve the use of computers in the teaching process.
Prerequisite: STAT1008/STAT0302 Business statistics or STAT1003 Introductory statistics or STAT1004 Probability and statistics or STAT1001 Elementary statistical methods or STAT1301 Probability & statistics I or ECON1003 Analysis of economic data or equivalent

BUSI0037. Quantitative analysis for business decisions II (6 credits)
A more advanced course on quantitative methods in problem solving. Topics include mathematical programming, dynamic programming, game theory, reliability, Markov chains, stochastic processes and applications in logistics, finance, marketing, inventory and operations.
Prerequisite: BUSI0036 Quantitative analysis for business decisions I or STAT0106 Business logistics

BUSI0038. Services marketing (6 credits)
The course examines the characteristics of service organizations and how this affects their approach to marketing. Issues in the three dimensions of internal marketing; transactional marketing and external marketing are examined and the role of research analysed. Attention is paid to service culture and service value and the problems are illustrated by examples from Asian, American and European service firms.
Prerequisite: BUSI1004 Marketing

BUSI0039. The development of modern China (6 credits)
The course will examine the historical development of modern China and the emergence of new forces and ideologies in the recent past. This should provide a backcloth for the interpretation of the economic and social events of the present time.

BUSI0044. International business (6 credits)
This is an introductory course to the field of international business, which will examine contemporary and historical changes in this field. The focus will be on three main areas: international trade, the international payments system and international production. The approach will consider the roles of various actors in these areas, including firms, states and international organizations and will discuss differing explanations of outcomes in each of the main areas that are offered by differing theoretical perspectives.

BUSI0045. Accounting seminar (6 credits)
A course on (a) the nature of accounting theory and research and (b) topical accounting issues.
Prerequisite: BUSI0020 Intermediate accounting II
BUSI0046. Advanced information systems development (6 credits)

This course studies how emerging information technologies affect both the information systems development process and the information systems. Topics include computer-aided software engineering tools, distributed systems, electronic data interchange, and web-based technologies. Students will carry out a field study of a new technology or new techniques.

Prerequisites: BUSI0048 Business applications development, and BUSI0052 Database development and management or equivalent

BUSI0047. Applied organization (6 credits)

This is a course on the design of high performance organization in the modern world. Topics include management structures of control and co-ordination, high-commitment work systems, design of compensation systems, virtual organization and the use of IT, organizational learning, organizational change, organization for cultural synergy, organization of international companies.

BUSI0048. Business applications development (6 credits)

This course introduces the basic concepts of programme development for business applications with an emphasis on user interface design and development, database design and querying and operating environments. Hands-on experience in selected application systems development tools will be emphasized.

Prerequisite: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems

Remarks: This course is not available to BBA(IS) students.

BUSI0049. Business ethics (6 credits)

The course introduces concepts and tools that can be used for thinking about ethics and how ethical issues enter into the workplace in the modern world. Students will be guided to recognize ethical issues and dilemmas in business activities; to examine the situational forces at work in various business contexts; to learn the differences between the various approaches to ethics and how they play out in modern society, so as to become better able to devise ways out of ethical dilemmas. Special emphasis will be given to a corporation’s responsibility to its shareholders and to society arising from the globalization of business activity, the growing role of government, and the increasing politicization of society.

BUSI0050. Consumer behaviour (6 credits)

This course is designed to understand how customers behave. It integrates the psychological processes that motivate and direct consumers and organizations in their consumption decisions. Students will learn to apply concepts and measurement tools to managing firms in Hong Kong and Mainland China through exercises, cases and projects. Implications for marketing decisions will be shared.

Prerequisite: BUSI1004 Marketing

BUSI0051. Current topics in marketing management (6 credits)

This course focuses on current topics in managing a firm’s marketing functions. Organized along a seminar mode, students will be exposed through their interactions in Hong Kong. Real life experiences and exposures to firms together with indepth intellectual challenges will be emphasized
throughout the course. Indepth classroom discussion, management cases and applied business projects will be emphasized.
Prerequisite: BUSI1004 Marketing

---

**BUSI0052. Database development and management (6 credits)**

This course studies the principles, design, development and administration of database management systems for business applications. Emphasis will be placed on the user/developer/administrator points of view.

Prerequisite: BUSI0048 Business applications development or equivalent
Eligibility: Students taking or having taken CSIS0278 are not allowed to take this course.

---

**BUSI0053. Decision support and expert systems (6 credits)**

This course studies a range of modern decision technologies that can aid in decision making including decision support systems, group support systems, electronic meeting systems, artificial intelligence, expert systems, genetic algorithms and neural networks. Both technical and managerial issues related to the development and implementation of information systems using the above technologies will be discussed.

Prerequisites: BUSI0048 Business applications development, and BUSI0052 Database development and management or equivalent

---

**BUSI0054. Developing competencies in business creativity and innovation (6 credits)**

This is a skill-building course, which aims to develop core entrepreneurial competencies. These competencies are the mental and behavioural skills required for undertaking the various forms of creative and innovative activity. The course builds upon the course on “Entrepreneurship, creativity and innovation”. The course design emphasizes self-understanding and self-direction, and will be largely workshop based.

Prerequisite: BUSI0015 Entrepreneurship, creativity and innovation

---

**BUSI0055. Electronic commerce and virtual businesses (6 credits)**

This course examines the progress of electronic commerce and focuses on the business opportunities and current technologies relevant to this emerging area of information technology. Students will learn how to set up a business on the Internet.

Prerequisites: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems, or CSIS1127 Introduction to information systems

---

**BUSI0056. Fixed income securities (6 credits)**

*or FINA0804. Fixed income securities (6 credits)*

An integrated analysis of the market institutions, theory and empirical evidence in the area of fixed-income markets. Topics covered: Treasury markets, bond mathematics, arbitrage-free models of the term structure, corporate-debt pricing, convertible bonds, primary mortgage markets and securitization, immunization and portfolio insurance, valuation of futures and options on bonds, embedded options, and interest rate risk management.

Prerequisites: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance, and BUSI0069 Derivative securities or FINA0301 Derivative securities
BUSI0057. High-performance work systems (6 credits)

This course examines the principles and practice of designing and operating systems of work that combine the optimum use of technology with high performance and motivation. Topics include socio-technical systems analysis, teamwork and networking.

BUSI0058. Human resource planning and career management (6 credits)

This course aims to provide an understanding of how the demand and supply of human resources can be brought into balance, and people already in employment can be helped to develop in their work careers. Topics covered include appraisal, counselling, development and training, and career planning. Ways in which HRM managers can facilitate organizational learning are also examined.

BUSI0059. Information systems analysis and design (6 credits)

This course examines the application of information technology to business and analyses the various stages of a system life cycle with the development of computer-based information systems. Techniques for modeling data and process requirements will be discussed.

Prerequisite: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems or CSIS1127 Introduction to information systems

Remarks: This course is not available to BBA(IS) students.

BUSI0060. Information systems development and project management I (6 credits)

This course examines the concepts, techniques, activities and issues for information systems development projects. Student teams will carry out structured projects for project planning and scheduling, cost estimation, risk analysis, team organization, process management and quality assurance. Use of tools and managerial techniques in support of the above activities will be introduced.

Remarks: This course is available to Year III students in BBA IS Major and BBA(IS) only.

BUSI0061. Information systems development and project management II (6 credits)

This is a continuation of the course BUSI0060 Information systems development and project management I. Remarks: This course is available to Year III students in BBA IS Major and BBA(IS) only.

Prerequisite: BUSI0060 Information systems development and project management I

BUSI0062. Information systems management and strategy (6 credits)

This course examines issues related to managing information systems in an organization including role of the chief information officer, information planning and business strategy, and various frameworks for understanding the function of information systems in an organization.

Prerequisite: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems or equivalent

BUSI0063. Internet applications development (6 credits)

This course studies how to develop Internet-based business applications. Resources, tools and services available on the Internet will be introduced. Topics to be covered include: HTML, Java applets, HTTP and CGI, JavaScript, Java Servlets and JSP, Perl, PHP, ASP, Web spiders and search engines, Wireless applications (e.g., J2ME, WAP), Other current topics
Prerequisites: Proficiency in Java Programming; and BUSI0048 Business applications development or equivalent; and BUSI0052 Database development and management or equivalent

BUSI0064. Leadership development programme (3 credits)

This workshop will explore key processes of leadership experientially in a simulated political, social and business environment. The purpose is to provide students with knowledge in leadership theories, models and frameworks with opportunities to experiment with natural and new leadership behaviour in a simulated context. Having gone through these processes in a collective, multi-staged exercise, there will be opportunity for reflection, sharing of experience and integration of practice with theories, in the presence of facilitators.

BUSI0065. Information systems security management (6 credits)

This course studies two key issues in developing business applications on the commercial Internet: management of the web site and security of the information stored on and obtained from the site. Issues including updating, encryption and authentication will be discussed.
Prerequisite: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems or equivalent

BUSI0066. Marketing on the commercial internet (6 credits)

This course studies the progress of the Internet, World Wide Web and related technologies for the marketing, selling and distribution of goods and services. Both technology and business marketing issues will be discussed.
Prerequisites: BUSI1004 Marketing, and BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems or equivalent

BUSI0067. Mergers and acquisitions (6 credits)

A course focusing on the theories and market practices of mergers, acquisitions, corporate restructuring and corporate control. Various valuation, strategic and economic issues are examined through case analysis.
Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

BUSI0068. Multimedia applications development (6 credits)

This course introduces the various multimedia applications and the technologies based on which these applications are developed. Technologies that enable the achieving and retrieval of text, graphics, sound and video via optional storage devices will be examined.
Prerequisites: BUSI0048 Business applications development, and BUSI0052 Database development and management or equivalent

BUSI0069. Derivative securities (6 credits)  
or
FINA0301. Derivative securities (6 credits)

To provide a comprehensive analysis of the properties of options and futures and to offer a theoretical framework within which all derivatives can be valued and hedged. Topics covered: simple arbitrage relationships for forward and futures contracts, hedging and basis risk, stock index futures, swaps, trading strategies involving options, valuation of options using a binomial model and the Black-
Scholes analysis, options on interest rates, stock indices, currencies and futures, and exotic options.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

---

**BUSI0070. Reward and compensation (6 credits)**

This course addresses the design of reward and compensation systems and the contribution they can make to the attainment of an organization’s strategic objectives. Among the specific techniques covered are job evaluation, design of incentives, performance-related pay, and non-monetary rewards.

---

**BUSI0071. Strategic marketing management (6 credits)**

This course is designed as a capstone course that integrates a firm’s marketing decisions. It covers a firm’s strategic market orientation, its allocation of resources and effectiveness of its marketing strategies. The course emphasizes managerial implications for different types of firms. Students will learn how to apply the course contents through in-depth studies of firms, research projects and management cases.

Prerequisites: BUSI1004 Marketing, and BUSI0031 Marketing research

---

**BUSI0072. Team building programme (3 credits)**

The objective of the workshop is to explore key aspects of group dynamics through a process of experiential learning. The aspects that we shall be considering include leadership and communication, planning and organizing, decision-making and problem solving, trust and team building in the context of business and management. The activities you will undertake consist of a series of problems to be resolved through the combined efforts of your group members. The problems are physical in nature, rather than hypothetical and cognitive, and requires the application of organizational skills for successful and efficient solutions.

---

**BUSI0073. Data communications and networking management (6 credits)**

This course introduces the concepts and terminology of telecommunications and computing network in support of business activities including data, voice, image and communication technologies, networking and communication architectures, protocols and standards. The development of Hong Kong telecommunication infrastructure will also be discussed.

Prerequisite: BUSI0059 Information systems analysis and design or equivalent

Eligibility: Students taking or having taken CSIS0234 are not allowed to take this course.

---

**BUSI0074. Telecommunications policy and business (6 credits)**

This course provides an overview of recent developments of the telecommunications industries in Hong Kong and around the Asia-Pacific Region. Telecommunications infrastructure policies introduced by respective governments in the Region and the impacts of these policies on business operations will be examined.

Prerequisite: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems or equivalent

---

**BUSI0075. Current topics in human resource management (6 credits)**

This course focuses on current topics in managing a firm's human resource management functions. Indepth classroom discussion, management cases and applied business projects will be emphasized.
BUSI0076. **Current topics in information systems (6 credits)**

Study of selected areas of information systems and information technology. Topics vary with recent developments and current interest.

---

BUSI0077. **Selections and training (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the basic concepts of selections and recruitment, training and development of different employees, and human resources utility analysis. In particular, students will be exposed to different recruiting process and the whole spectrum of training and development techniques and demonstrates how they can add value to business success.

---

BUSI0078. **Compensation and benefits (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the basic concepts of pay and compensation policy of different employees. In particular, students will be exposed to the fundamental pay and benefits administration, along with the importance of rewards and the impact of rewards on employee attraction, motivation and retention.

---

BUSI0080. **International financial management (6 credits)**


---

BUSI0082 **Professional preparation program I (No credit)**

To prepare BBA and BBA(Acc&Fin) Year 1 students for a career in professional accounting, this non-credit course is a full-year course including a series of seminar/workshop discussing career opportunities and professional ethics, developing interpersonal, communication and time-management skills and also social events providing opportunities to interact with accounting and business professionals. Class meets once a month for an hour and half during the first academic year. Pass/Fail grade.

---

BUSI0083 **Professional preparation program II (No credit)**

To prepare BBA(Acc&Fin) Year 2 students for a career in professional accounting, this non-credit course is a full-year course including presentations by leading business and accounting professionals on current business and accounting issues and seminars/workshops developing skills in job search, interview, leadership and organization. Class meets once a month for an hour and half during the second academic year. Pass/Fail grade.

---

BUSI0084. **Advanced topics in auditing (6 credits)**

This course extends the first Auditing course to further examine various advanced topics including advanced auditing techniques, auditing for operations and efficiency, auditing web based information, EDP auditing, environmental auditing, forensic accounting and contemporary issues of auditing. Prerequisite: BUSI0006 Auditing and BUSI0003 Advanced Financial Accounting
BUSI0085. **Advanced topics in taxation (6 credits)**

The course is an in-depth review of the law and practice of taxation for planning and management in the Hong Kong environment. The subject will discuss how international tax principles affect foreign direct investment decisions and highlight the relationships between the international tax principles and the local tax system. General discussion of the Mainland tax system will also be included.

Prerequisite: BUSI0018 Hong Kong Taxation

---

BUSI0086. **Controllership (6 credits)**

This course is a comprehensive examination of the diverse functions of a controller within the contemporary business enterprise. Topics cover include strategic cost management, the advanced use of information for management planning, control and decision making, the evaluation of incentive and performance measurement systems as well as international and contemporary management accounting issues.

Prerequisite: BUSI0028 Management Accounting II and BUSI0020 Intermediate Accounting II

---

BUSI0087 **Business case analysis (3 credits)**

This course is designed to show students how to deal with complex business issues. Most business issues are complex and multifaceted. It puts students in a rich teaching and learning environment that encourages asking the right questions, formulating problems, and discovering and designing doable courses of action. Through a large number of case studies students learn to think laterally, develop a variety of ideas, explore their leadership potential within groups, and communicate their ideas articulately.

Remarks: This course is available to Year II or above students of the Faculty of Business and Economics only.

---

BUSI0088. **Artificial Intelligence for Business Applications (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the fundamentals of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and their applications in business. Students will learn how to use various AI techniques to solve real-world business problems and gain hands-on experience in developing and using different AI tools. Topics to be covered include: basics of AI, uses of AI in business applications, AI algorithms, e.g., neural networks, decision trees, genetic algorithms, intelligent agents, human computer interaction, knowledge management technologies, document management, AI for customer relationship management, expert systems, data mining, text mining, web mining, other current topics.

Prerequisites: Proficiency in Java Programming and BUSI0048 Business applications development or equivalent; and BUSI0052 Database development and management or equivalent

---

BUSI0089. **Studies on China’s competitiveness (6 credits)**

Studies on China’s Competitiveness will focus on the competitiveness of the economy and industries of Mainland China and examine China’s competitiveness on a regional, industry and activity basis. Globalization and China’s accession to WTO will present unprecedented opportunities and challenges for China’s economy and industries. As such, China’s position in the globalized world economic system and its ability to move up the value-added ladder is critical to its sustainable economic development. Given Hong Kong’s close links to the economy of the Chinese Mainland, China’s economic future will heavily influence that of every industry in Hong Kong. Through a detailed analysis of a cross section of Chinese industries, the course will help the students to have a better
understanding of the current status of China’s competitiveness and future dynamics.

BUSI0090. The European business environment (6 credits)

This course is intended for those who wish to study the evolution of the European Business Environment and the processes by which it operates. It investigates the broader political, cultural, economic, legal and philosophical basis of the business milieu mostly in western Europe but with, when appropriate, reference to the Eastern European states. It includes the typologies of businesses as conducted in selected states where the free market, remnants of state control and the regional and global influences all have a part to play. Teaching would be based on lectures, case studies and simulations with visiting lectures from various Consulates to enrich the content.
Assessment: For this course the assessment would be by one written final examination of two hours carrying 60% of the total, one individual submission based on a case study (25%) and one group classroom session in analysis of a business problem (15%).

BUSI0091. Business intelligent systems (6 credits)

This course is designed to provide an overview of business intelligent systems (BIS) and their use in the business environment. Topics include business intelligent systems/technology concepts, introduction to various BIS (e.g., Knowledge Management Systems), and business cases for BIS development and adoption.
Prerequisites: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems

BUSI0092. Advanced database management & data mining (6 credits)

The course will consist of two parts. In the first part of the course, advanced database concepts such as views, triggers, stored procedures, SQL*Plus and PL/SQL, will be covered. Other topics that may be covered include database administration and performance tuning. In the second part of the course, various techniques in data mining such as decision trees, neural networks, clustering etc. will be covered with suitable business related examples.
Prerequisite: BUSI0052 Database development and management or CSIS0278 Introduction to database management systems

BUSI0093. Enterprise resources planning systems (6 credits)

This course is designed to provide an overview of enterprise resource planning systems and their use in the business environment. Topics include basic Enterprise Resource Planning Systems concepts, business processes, functions and data requirements as well as systems implementation issues.
Prerequisites: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems

BUSI0094. Managing e-business transformation (6 credits)

The course provides a roadmap for managers planning to transform their companies into an inter-networked enterprise where shared infrastructures are used to link customers, suppliers, partners and employees to create superior economic value. It covers e-business strategy, infrastructure, process management, and integration and implementation. The course is based on the premise that integrating Internet technologies throughout the value chain is crucial in building and managing customer relationships and thus brand equity.
Prerequisites: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems
BUSI1001. Business law (6 credits)

An introduction to the Hong Kong legal system, the fundamentals and general principles of Hong Kong law, and other legal concepts which a manager may be expected to encounter in the business environment.

BUSI1005. Organizational behaviour (6 credits)

A course on the concepts and key research findings which can help us to understand the human behaviour in organizations. Topics include motivation, leadership theory, group dynamics, morale, communications, control techniques and organizational culture.
Prerequisite: BUSI1007 Principles of management

BUSI3001. Global analysis team project (6 credits)

The primary objective of this course is to develop the students’ capability to understand the strategic situation in a business, economic, social, political and/or environmental aspect in the global arena. Students are also expected to devise viable alternatives for dealing with the key issues facing it. They will partner with students from overseas universities to work on this global analysis team project in their final year of study.

BUSI 3002. Leadership development programme (3 credits)

This course aims at enabling students to develop themselves as leaders of organizations and to embark on paths of personal leadership development. The following concepts will be covered: motivation, lifelong leadership development, personal leadership development plan, stress and adversity management, peer mentoring, group dynamics, work and life balance as well as purpose-driven leadership.

BUSI 3011. Corporate governance and social responsibility (6 credits)

In this course, students learn about the complex responsibilities facing business leaders today. It will explore the use of accounting information and internal control in ensuring efficient and effective operations, reducing the cost of capital, production and distribution, and complying with legal, regulatory and corporate oversight requirements. It also teaches students about ethics and governance systems that leaders can use to promote socially responsible conduct by organizations and their employees, and shows how personal values can play a critical role in effective leadership.

BUSI 3012. International and cross-boundary trade law (6 credits)

This course covers the legal aspects of the international trade. It also provides students with background on international legal framework for cross-border trading and business activities, as China embarks on liberalization of its business environment as a member of the World Trade Organization.

BUSI3511. Selected Topics in Marketing Strategy (6 credits)

This course is designed to focus on selected topics that are of salience to managing firm marketing strategies and operations in Mainland China or Hong Kong. It may include but not restricted to the following contemporary marketing issues including branding, new product development, marketing high-technology products and customer relationship management.
BUSI3512. Developing Marketing Competence (6 credits)

This course is designed to explore various issues on how firms develop and manage their marketing operations in our consistently changing market environment. How firms assess and learn from its environment, design their internal strategic cultures, develop proper strategic options, ensure its key marketing functions operate efficiently and effectively are key topics to be covered. The course will use case studies and guest lectures extensively.

BUSI3601. Supply Chain Management (6 credits)

The course is designed to prepare attendants to apply concepts, strategies, and information technology in supply chain management. Traditionally industries focus on operation evaluation and performance improvement of business processes; however, the deficiency of supply chain coordination results in severe downgrade of business competitiveness. With advent of information technology, computers not only improve operation and management and also strategic decision-making as well. This course focuses on the systems approach to the planning, analysis, design, development, and evaluation of supply chain management.

- Introduce principles and approaches to enhance knowledge and experience in management decision-making in business logistics.
- Study modern information technology to reduce cost and improve service in supply chain management.
- Carry out case study and project on information access, information coordination, and information processing for supply chain management in various business environments.

Pre-requisite: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems or equivalent

BUSI3602. IT and Entrepreneurship (6 credits)

This course is designed to introduce students to the core concepts of Entrepreneurship with a special emphasis on those entrepreneurial settings involving the use of information technology (IT). Students will be exposed to the key processes, challenges, risks and rewards of starting up an entrepreneurial business and are expected to apply the concepts and knowledge learned in the course to develop an entrepreneurial business plan that could be presented to potential investors and venture capitalists.

Pre-requisites: BUSI1003 Introduction to management information systems and BUSI1007 Principles of management
Description For Undergraduate Courses Offered By
School of Economics and Finance 2005-06

“ECON1001 Introduction to Economics I” is a prerequisite for all year 2 and year 3 Economics and Finance courses. Additional prerequisites are specified in the descriptions for the courses concerned. Not all courses listed below will necessarily be offered in 2005-06.

YEAR ONE

ECON0003. Great Economists of Our Time (3 credits)

Through the biographies of 12 of the great economists of the 20th century, this course introduces students to the power of economic analysis of real world observations and problems, and in a broader context, to the fascination of intellectual pursuits. This course also serves to illustrate the central ideas of economics, which are still very much in use today.

ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)

An introduction to the basic concepts and principles of microeconomics - the study of demand and supply, consumer theory, cost and production, market structure, and resource allocation efficiency.

ECON1002. Introduction to economics II (6 credits)

This course is an introduction to macroeconomics – the study of business cycle fluctuations and long run economic growth. Topics include the measurement of national economic performance; the problems of recession, unemployment, and inflation; money supply, government spending, and taxation; fiscal and monetary policies for full employment and price stability; the determination of the exchange rate; and international trade and payments.

ECON1003. Analysis of economic data (6 credits)

This course studies the measurement and interpretation of economic variables, and how to model their relationships using appropriate empirical methods. Topics include interpretation of headline statistics, describing economic aggregates, modeling of economic relationships and drawing conclusions from observations.

Remarks: Not open to students taking or having taken STAT0301, STAT0302, STAT0601, STAT0602, STAT1000, STAT1001, STAT1003, STAT1006, STAT1007, STAT1008, STAT1301 or STAT1801.


This course aims to provide students with an understanding of the most important issues in Asian financial markets, develop their interests and knowledge in areas related to business and finance in Asia (with a focus on Hong Kong), and give them hands-on experience in writing reports and presenting analytical results.

Remarks: Open only to students of the Faculty of Business and Economics.

FINA1002. Introduction to finance (6 credits) or
BUSI0016. Introduction to finance (6 credits)

An introduction to finance with an emphasis on the decisions and issues faced by the firm. The course will also cover the interrelated topics of individuals choosing between different investment alternatives, and the functioning of capital markets in equating the supply and demand of capital.
Specific areas covered include: the basics of valuation using discounted cash flows, valuation of stocks and bonds, valuation and choosing between competing projects, risk and return, the cost of capital, and financial planning and forecasting. Throughout the course, emphasis will be placed on the basic paradigms in finance including net present value, the capital asset pricing model and market efficiency.
Remarks: It is advisable to take BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting prior to this course.

YEAR TWO

ECON0701. Introductory econometrics (6 credits)
Econometrics is the branch of economics that formulates statistical methodology for use in analyzing economic data. Consequently, the objective of this course is to prepare students for basic empirical work in economics. In particular, topics will include multiple regression analysis, statistical inference and hypothesis testing, functional form specification, time series models, and limited dependent variable models. Students will have the opportunity to use actual economic data to test economic theories.

ECON2101. Microeconomic theory (6 credits)
The laws of demand, supply, returns, and costs; price and output determination in different market situations; theory of factor pricing and income distribution; general equilibrium; interest and capital. Remarks: Not open to students taking or having taken ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis.

ECON2102. Macroeconomic theory (6 credits)
Theories of income, employment, and the price level; analysis of secular growth and business fluctuations; introduction to monetary and fiscal policy. Remarks: Not open to students taking or having taken ECON2114 Macroeconomic analysis.

ECON2113. Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)
Examine microeconomic issues with applications. Topics include: consumer behaviour, cost structure, market structure, theory of the firm, factor market and general equilibrium. Remarks: Open only to non-B.Econ, non-B.Fin and non-B.Econ&Fin students; candidates who have taken ECON2101 Microeconomic theory are not allowed to take this course.

ECON2114. Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)
Economics of inflation, unemployment, income and output determination in the short run and the long run. Money, interest rates and exchange rates. Macroeconomic stabilization policies and open economy macroeconomic issues. Remarks: Open only to non-B.Econ, non-B.Fin and non-B.Econ&Fin students; candidates who have taken ECON2102 Macroeconomic theory are not allowed to take this course.

FINA0302. Corporate finance (6 credits) or
BUSI0011. Corporate finance (6 credits)
A course on the advanced treatment of corporate financial decisions. Topics to be covered include corporate valuation; cost of capital; capital structure; leasing; mergers and acquisitions; options;
warrants; and convertible bonds.
Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

FINA2802. Investments (6 credits) or
BUSI0024. Investments (6 credits)

A comprehensive analysis of various investment vehicles and portfolio management techniques. Topics covered: modern portfolio theory and asset pricing models, portfolio management, investment strategies, analysis of common stocks and bonds, and introduction to derivatives securities.
Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

YEAR TWO OR YEAR THREE ELECTIVES
(ECONOMICS COURSES)

ECON0103. Economics of human resources (6 credits)

This course studies the allocation of human resources through the labour market and the utilisation of human resources inside the firm. Issues related to investment in human capital, wage determination, labour force participation, worker mobility, hiring decisions and other personnel practices are examined.

ECON0104. Public finance (6 credits)

Study of the role of government in the economy, using microeconomic theory. The course covers public expenditure analysis and methods of financing government expenditures. It explores the underlying theory of welfare economics as well as the economic effects of public policy such as public sector pricing, expenditure and tax policies.

ECON0106. Games and decisions (6 credits)

This course offers an introduction to game theory. It covers core concepts in game theory and its applications. The core concepts include sequential games, game tree, subgame-perfect equilibrium, simultaneous games, game table, Nash equilibrium in pure strategies, mixed-strategy Nash equilibrium, and expected utility. These concepts are used to provide analyses of the role of reputation, and penalties and rewards in sustaining cooperation; the importance of credibility in commitments, threats and promises; the problems, and solutions, of public goods and externalities; behavior under asymmetric information: moral hazard, adverse selection, signaling, and screening; and interaction between individuals when the assumption of perfect rationality is relaxed.

ECON0107. History of economic thought (6 credits)

A reflection on the various ways modern economic ideas trace their roots to some major analytical writings of the old masters. Over time, some paradigms were better developed and vigorously refined, while some important questions were lost. The course begins with the French School founded by Quesnay, and then proceeds along the English tradition: Smith, Ricardo, Mill and finally the Cambridge School from Marshall to Keynes. The Austrian School will also be introduced, covering some writings from Wicksell to Hayek.

ECON0109. Topics in macroeconomics (6 credits)

This course provides students with an up-to-date account of the theory and practice of modern
macroeconomics. The following areas that have shaped modern macroeconomic research will be covered: real business cycle theory, endogenous growth theory, and new Keynesian theories of labour markets, asset markets and stick prices. Other selected topics on fiscal and monetary policy will also be discussed.

Prerequisites: ECON2101 Microeconomic theory or ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis, and ECON2102 Macroeconomic theory or ECON2114 Macroeconomic analysis

ECON0204. The economics of finance (6 credits)

A survey of the economic theory underlying corporate and investment finance models, with an emphasis on financial instruments. Topics include: balance sheet management and evaluation, capital market equilibrium and efficiency, evolution of credit and money market instruments like financial swaps, stocks and bonds, financial futures and options. Eurocurrencies and the role played by banks, insurance companies and other financial institutions.

ECON0205. Theories of investment (6 credits)

Applications of the theory of choice over time (capital theory) to the investment decisions of individuals, firms and economies, under different assumptions regarding certainty, uncertainty, and adjustment costs.

ECON0206. Capital theory (6 credits)

General equilibrium theory involving time under certainty conditions. The concepts of full information, stationary state, and steady state. Assumptions about information costs, transaction costs and complete markets. Fisher's separation theorem. Theory of consumption over discrete and continuous time. Theory of production over discrete and continuous time. Determination of general equilibrium over time. Intertemporal prices and interest rates.

ECON0207. Monetary economics (6 credits)

This course discusses the role of money in the economy, including how money affects inflation, interest rates and output and employment in both the static and dynamic contexts. Related topics are theories of money demand and supply, the conduct of monetary policy, rules vs. discretion, adaptive and rational expectations, time inconsistency, origin of money, and electronic means of payments. Remarks: Candidates who have taken ECON0201 Money and banking are not allowed to take this course.

ECON0208. Economics of banking (6 credits)

This course examines the functions and behaviour of banks from an economic rather than a management perspective. Topics include origin of financial intermediaries, banks vs. non-bank financial institutions, organization of the banking industry, lender-borrower relationship, equilibrium credit rationing, banks as delegated monitors, banks in the macroeconomy, bank runs and systematic risks, risk management of the banking firm, and the regulation of banks. Remarks: Candidates who have taken ECON0201 Money and banking are not allowed to take this course.

ECON0209. Finance and development (6 credits)

This course studies the interaction between the financial sector and the rest of the economy, that is,
how financial markets and institutions affect economic performance and vice versa. Topics include flow-of-funds accounts, financial structure and economic development, financial repression, financial liberalization and financial deepening, financial reform in developing and transition economies, banking crises and currency crises, capital account liberalization, the globalization of world capital markets, and financial policies and regulation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECON0301</td>
<td>Theory of international trade (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The theory of international trade: the bases, direction, terms, volume, and gains of trade. The effects of tariffs, quantitative restrictions, and international integration.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECON0302</td>
<td>International finance (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The interpretation of balance of payments and the adjustment to national and international equilibria, through changes in price levels, exchange rates, and national income. Other topics may include: foreign exchange market and Eurocurrency market, alternative exchange rate regimes, capital movements, exchange controls, and international monetary organizations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECON0401</td>
<td>Comparative economic systems (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alternative approaches to the understanding of the operation of economic systems, including an approach based on different structures of property rights.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECON0402</td>
<td>Industrial organization (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This course studies the pricing and output decisions of firms and the performance of the market under various market structures. Topics include theories of oligopoly; product differentiation; the effects of imperfect and asymmetric information; the examination of pricing practices such as price discrimination, tie-in selling, and resale price maintenance; collusion and anti-competitive behaviours, and public policies related to the promotion or restriction of competition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECON0403</td>
<td>The economics of property rights (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Implications of different structures of property rights for economic behaviour; rights structures classified in terms of exclusivity and transferability; costs of enforcing rights and of forming contracts as main constraints in the derivation of hypotheses; the Coase Theorem and the theories associated with contracting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECON0405</td>
<td>The economics of law (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Economic analysis applied to law. Topics may include: efficiency of law, rules of liability, tort rights and remedies, criminal sanction, legislative processes as resource allocating and income distributing mechanisms.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECON0406</td>
<td>The economy and the state (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Economic analysis is applied to the study of public choice and the relationship between the state and the economy. Topics include: social choice, collective action, voting and elections, interest groups, bureaucracy, constitutions, law and courts, property rights and institutional change.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ECON0501. Economic development (6 credits)

Characteristics of underdevelopment; factors in economic development; theoretical and policy aspects of development.

ECON0503. Urban economics (6 credits)

Urban economics is the study of the location choices of firms and households. It examines the question of the where of economic activity, a question largely ignored by the other branches of economics. Topics include the growth and development of cities; land use within cities; urban transportation; housing and public policy; urban problems such as pollution, poverty and crime; and market forces determining the locations of ports and other transshipment points.

ECON0504. Transportation economics (6 credits)

Microeconomic theory applied to transportation, with an emphasis placed on intercity freight and passenger transportation. Topics include: cost function approach to transport supply, economies of scale and traffic density, structure of demand among discrete modal choices, value of time, forecasting of demand and modal split, optimal pricing and investment in infrastructure, contestable markets and the theory of network competition, and regulation of rates, entry and exit.

ECON0601. Economic development of China (6 credits)

An analytical study of the major problems in China's economic development since 1949. Topics include: economic heritage, development strategy, economic organization, planning, management, reform, and an evaluation of the Chinese experiments.

ECON0602. Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)

This course has three parts: China trade, Chinese financial markets and direct investment in China. For China trade, topics include: structure and trend of Chinese exports and imports, reform of Chinese foreign trade regime, foreign exchange rate regime and China's role in the new trade environment under the World Trade Organization. For Chinese financial markets, emphasis will be placed on Chinese financial institutions and markets including: the central banking system, the commercial banking industry, government and corporate debt markets, the stock market, and the foreign exchange market. For direct investment in China, theories of corporate finance and corporate governance will be used to analyze the behaviour of Chinese enterprises and the implications of such behaviour for foreign joint ventures. Government regulations will also be covered.

ECON0603. The economic system of Hong Kong (6 credits)

The course provides a comprehensive discussion of the salient aspects of the Hong Kong economy. Topics include Hong Kong’s national income accounting and economic development, the monetary system and exchange rate regime, the financial system, public finance and fiscal policy, external trade and foreign investment, economic relations with the Mainland, the labour market and employment, the property market and housing policy, regulation of public utilities and competition policy, industrial development and policy, and income distribution. Emphasis will be given to both economic analysis and institutional arrangements of the major economic sectors and related policies. Attention will be given to topics of recent public concern.
ECON0605. Economic history of China (6 credits)

An overview of China’s economy from the Han dynasty to the 20th Century and its relation with the rest of the world. Growth in productivity and population, development of transportation and market infrastructure, money and credit in the two Han, Sui/Tang, Song/Yuan, and Ming/Qing era. China’s foreign trade in classical, medieval and modern times. European discovery of the New World and its impact on China’s economy and trade. Comparisons of Ming/Qing China with early modern Europe. Reasons why China fell behind and why the Industrial Revolution did not happen in Ming/Qing China. Implications for the 21st century.

ECON0606. Current economic affairs (6 credits)

This seminar-style course is designed to train students to analyse economic problems of the day, particularly those relating to the Hong Kong economy. Students are expected to conduct supervised research on current economic problems and to lead and participate in classroom discussions.

ECON0702. Mathematical methods in economics (6 credits)

The main emphasis of the course is to explain the mathematical structure of some undergraduate level economic theories, in terms of the way in which each particular mathematical assumption is translated into their economic counterpart. The course covers multi-variable unconstrained maximization, constrained maximization, comparative statics, and a brief introduction to some dynamic economic models.

ECON0703. Mathematical economics (6 credits)

Modern economic theory treated mathematically. Topics may include: applications of optimization to choice theory, applications of the implicit function theorem to comparative statics, applications of differential and difference equations to stability of equilibrium, applications of linear mathematics and fixed point theorems to Leontief and Arrow-Debreu models.

ECON0706. Uncertainty and information (6 credits)

This course examines the effects of uncertainty and imperfect information on individual decision making and on market equilibrium. Topics may include the expected utility hypothesis, risk bearing and risk sharing, search, adverse selection, signaling, contract theory, mechanism design, information acquisition and information transmission.

ECON0707. Economic forecasting (6 credits)

This course introduces basic techniques in forecasting economic structural relationships. Topics include smoothing, filters, arima models, unit roots and stochastic trends, vector autoregressions, cointegration and error correction, regime switching, volatility, diagnostics, model selection, forecast evaluation and combination.

Prerequisite: ECON0701 Introductory econometrics

ECON3108. Selected topics in price theory (6 credits)

This course acts as a platform to provide an overview of topics that are conceived to be pivotal in economics. The topics are essentially micro-based, but have applications in other disciplines like macroeconomics and finance. Specific topics are picked by the instructor. Previous examples include
venture capital and private equity; property rights, theory of the firm, incomplete contracting, financial contracting, bankruptcy, and corporate voting.
Prerequisites: ECON2101 Microeconomic theory or ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis

---

**ECON3505. Project evaluation (6 credits)**

This course covers the economic evaluation of projects from a public sector viewpoint using microeconomic tools. It explores the normative aspects of evaluating public projects and policies, the measurement of welfare change and public investment criteria, and employs basic financial analysis. Economic and financial evaluation of government projects and Build-Operate-Transfer infrastructure projects (so-called BOT projects) will be discussed.
Prerequisites: ECON2101 Microeconomic theory or ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis

---

**YEAR THREE ELECTIVES**
(ECONOMICS COURSES)

**ECON3801. Reading course (6 credits)**

This course consists of supervised reading and written work. Candidates may specialize in one topic under the supervision of faculty members of the School of Economics and Finance. Examples of topics are: the problem of social cost, investment in human capital, general equilibrium theory, empirical methods in international trade, international monetary relations, theories of saving and the East Asian economies, and current economic problems of Hong Kong.
Candidates must submit the title of their project within the first two weeks of the semester for approval by the Director of the School of Economics and Finance. An original project paper is required in lieu of a written paper in the Examination. The project paper shall not exceed 10,000 words in length, and must be completed and presented not later than the last day of the examination period for that semester. Candidates shall submit a statement that the project paper represent their own work (or in the case of joint work, a statement countersigned by their co-worker(s), which shows the degree of their work) undertaken after the registration in the course.

**ECON3802. Dissertation (12 credits)**

Candidates may write a dissertation under the supervision of faculty members of the School of Economics and Finance. Topics offered may vary from year to year, depending on the research interests of the lecturer. A satisfactory dissertation may be offered in lieu of two written papers in the Examination.
Candidates must submit the title and an outline of their dissertation for approval by the Director of the School of Economics and Finance not later than December 1 of the final year of the curriculum, and the dissertation, which should not exceed 20,000 words in length, shall be completed and presented not later than May 31 of that academic year. (Note: The course extends over two semesters. Candidates must enroll in the first semester.)
Prerequisite: Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above at the time of enrolment
Remarks: Open only to BEcon/BEcon&Fin students and students major in Economics.

---

**YEAR TWO OR YEAR THREE ELECTIVES**
(FINANCE COURSES)

**FINA0102. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits) or BUSI0017. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)**

This course is designed to introduce and analyze the structure, operations and functions of the financial system. The course starts with an introduction to financial markets’ role in the economy, and
the determination of interest rates and valuation of cash flows. The course then discusses various financial markets including money markets, bond markets, mortgage markets, stock markets and derivatives markets. Financial institutions will be discussed with an emphasis on their major functions and operations.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

FINA0103. International banking (6 credits)


FINA0104. Management of commercial banks (6 credits)

This course introduces basic bank management techniques that include: asset and liability management, liquidity and reserve management, credit analysis, loan pricing and off-balance-sheet banking. Regulatory issues of commercial banks are also discussed.

FINA0105. International financial management (6 credits)


FINA0106. Insurance: theory and practice (6 credits)

Insurance is the study of risk financing through risk pooling. The use of insurance to reduce the adverse financial impact in case of a loss has become an important element of financial and risk management in our society. This course will cover the theories underlying each major type of insurance products; the characteristics of the contractual agreements pertaining to insurance products; the structure of the insurance industry and its impact on the pricing of insurance products; the operation of insurance companies and the need for government regulations of the industry.

FINA0301. Derivative securities (6 credits) or BUSI0069. Derivative securities (6 credits)

To provide a comprehensive analysis of the properties of options and futures and to offer a theoretical framework within which all derivatives can be valued and hedged. Topics covered: simple arbitrage relationships for forward and futures contracts, hedging and basis risk, stock index futures, swaps, trading strategies involving options, valuation of options using a binomial model and the Black-Scholes analysis, options on interest rates, stock indices, currencies and futures, and exotic options. Prerequisite: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance

FINA0401. Empirical finance (6 credits)

This course is a survey and introduction to the empirical research methods commonly used in the analysis of financial markets and how they are applied to actual market data. Topics may include: properties and patterns of returns, tests of asset pricing models and term structure models, efficient
markets hypothesis and return anomalies, event study methodology, and estimating time-varying volatility models.
Prerequisite: ECON0701 Introductory econometrics

FINA0402. Mathematical finance (6 credits)

FINA0501. Asian financial institutions (6 credits)
History and institutional aspects of financial markets in Hong Kong, Singapore, Thailand and other Asian economies. Regulatory policies and practices.

FINA0804. Fixed income securities (6 credits) or
BUSI0056 Fixed income securities (6 credits)
An integrated analysis of the market institutions, theory and empirical evidence in the area of fixed-income markets. Topics covered: Treasury markets, bond mathematics, arbitrage-free models of the term structure, corporate-debt pricing, convertible bonds, primary mortgage markets and securitization, immunization and portfolio insurance, valuation of futures and options on bonds, embedded options, and interest rate risk management.
Prerequisites: BUSI0016 Introduction to finance or FINA1002 Introduction to finance, and BUSI0069 Derivative securities or FINA0301 Derivative securities

FINA0805. Real estate finance (6 credits)
An introduction to real estate economics, mortgage market, real estate auctions in Hong Kong, pre-sale market in Hong Kong, pricing of land and residential/commercial properties, mortgage-backed securities and mortgage company.

FINA1001. Financial statement analysis (6 credits)
This course covers the basic issues and principles of fundamental analysis, which deals with the valuation of a firm’s equity shares and debt by using the information of financial statements. The objective of this course is to enable students to understand the key financial statements, important elements of financial statement analysis, and the application of financial statement analysis to forecasting and valuation analysis.
Co-requisite: BUSI1002 Introduction to Accounting

FINA3806. Risk management (6 credits)
This course introduces students to corporate financial risk management. Topics include identification and measurement of financial risk, and management of financial risk using forwards, futures, swaps, options, and innovations such as caps, floors, collars, break and range forwards, and swaptions.
Prerequisites: BUSI0011 Corporate finance or FINA0302 Corporate finance, and BUSI0024 Investments or FINA2802 Investments
FINA3807. Special topics in finance (6 credits)

This course covers current developments in finance. Possible topics include security trading and market making, venture analysis, financial contracting, investment strategies for local markets and other current issues in finance. The exact topic to be offered will be determined by the lecturer(s).
Prerequisites: BUSI0011 Corporate finance or FINA0302 Corporate finance, and BUSI0024 Investments or FINA2802 Investments

YEAR THREE ELECTIVES
(FINANCE COURSES)

FINA3601. Reading course (6 credits)

The course consists of supervised reading and written work. Candidates may specialize in one topic under the supervision of faculty members of the School of Economics and Finance. Candidates must submit the title of their project within the first two weeks of the semester for approval by the Director of the School of Economics and Finance. An original project paper is required in lieu of a written paper in the Examination. The project paper shall not exceed 10,000 words in length, and must be completed and presented not later than the last day of the examination period for that semester. Candidates shall submit a statement that the project paper represents their own work (or in case of joint work, a statement countersigned by their co-worker(s), which shows the degree of their work) undertaken after the registration in the course.

FINA3602. Dissertation (12 credits)

Candidates may write a dissertation under the supervision of faculty members of the School of Economics and Finance. A satisfactory dissertation may be offered in lieu of two written papers in the Examination.
Candidates must submit the title and an outline of their dissertation for approval by the Director of the School of Economics and Finance not later than December 1 of the final year of the curriculum, and the dissertation, which should not exceed 20,000 words in length, shall be completed and presented not later than May 31 of that academic year (Note: The course extends over two semesters. Candidates must enroll in the first semester).
Prerequisite: Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above at the time of enrolment
Remarks: Open only to BFin/BEcon&Fin students and students major in Finance.


LANGUAGE COURSES OFFERED TO FBE STUDENTS

CBBA0001. Practical Chinese language course for business, economics and finance students (3 credits)

This course will cover the following topics: (1) practical Chinese writing skills (2) Chinese characters (3) letter-writing (4) office documents (5) Chinese for special purposes (6) presentation and communication techniques and (7) information technology in Chinese. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Remarks: Only available to BBA/BBA(Acc&Fin)/BBA(IS)/BEcon/BFin/BEcon&Fin students.

CBBL0001. Practical Chinese language course for BBA(Law) students (3 credits)

This course will cover the following topics: (1) practical Chinese writing skills (2) Chinese characters (3) letter-writing (4) office documents (5) Chinese for special purposes (6) presentation and communication techniques and (7) information technology in Chinese. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Remarks: Only available to BBA(Law) students.

ECEN1504. Professional and technical communication for Computer Science (3 credits)

The course is designed to enable computer science and information systems majors to acquire professional and technical communication skills. The focus is on the understanding and using professional and technical language. Topics include: producing and asking questions to elicit information; conducting effective interviews; organizing and analyzing information; writing effective technical reports with a focus on coherence and cohesion; and increasing technical vocabulary. Students are required to design and conduct authentic oral interviews and, produce written technical reports and vocabulary journals.

Remarks: Only available to BBA(IS) students.

ECEN1602. Writing solutions to legal problems (3 credits)

The course follows on from language input into the Legal Research and Writing I course in Sem. 1. Writing solutions to legal problems dovetails closely with a substantive law course (Tort), allowing students to apply and articulate their knowledge of tort law as they frame a written response to the kinds of legal issues typically found in tutorial and examination questions. The initial focus is at the level of the discourse structure of legal arguments and then on the control of the grammar, vocabulary and stylistic features typical of the genre. Students receive substantial individual feedback on 3 problem cycles, featuring 2 revisions of each initial answer attempt. Assessment is wholly by coursework, including 2 extended pieces of writing under examination conditions at the end of the course.

Remarks: Only available to BBA(Law) students.

ECEN1904. English for academic communication for economics and finance students (3 credits)

The course prepares students to respond effectively to the communicative demands of academic study in English. Through text-based activities in class and assigned work related to language and
disciplinary issues, the course develops abilities to analyse and evaluate extended texts, and to produce clear and coherent spoken and written discourses. Particular emphasis is given to the use of source material: how to cite and refer to material, and how to make use of and attribute ideas without copying. Stress is also put on acquiring an academic vocabulary, oral presentation skills, plus careful revision and editing of essays to ensure that lexical and grammatical choices are appropriate. Assessment: 100% coursework.

Remarks: Only available to students from the School of Economics and Finance.

ECEN1906. English for academic communication for business students (3 credits)

The course prepares students to respond effectively to the demands of academic study in English. Through text-based activities in class and assigned work related to language and disciplinary issues, the course develops language abilities in a number of areas. Stress is laid upon developing an adequate academic vocabulary, and strategies to achieve this are taught. Particular emphasis is also given to the use of source material: how to cite and refer to material, and how to make use of and attribute ideas without copying. For oral work, extemporaneous delivery is practiced, without the need to rely on scripts. Pronunciation and grammatical difficulties are addressed as they occur. Assessment is wholly by coursework.

Remarks: Only available to students from the School of Business.

ECEN1907. Business communication (3 credits)

This course prepares students to communicate effectively both at university and in anticipation of work situations which entail the use of English. A major project involves investigation of real business activity in Hong Kong and compiling a written report and a seminar presentation based on interview data. The written reporting involves using an appropriate format, and repeated proofreading of drafts to ensure grammatical accuracy and language of appropriate style and formality. In a separate project, there is emphasis on identification and understanding of idiomatic language, both in informal business situations and in more formal written and spoken texts. Assessment is wholly by coursework.

Remarks: Only available to BBA/BBA(Acc&Fin)/BBA(IS) students.

ECEN1908. English for Academic Communication for BBA (Law) (3 credits)

The course aims to assist students with the demands of academic study in their dual discipline areas. Reading and writing skills are reviewed through diagnostic in-class activities, and independent study strategies and resources to counter any weaknesses identified will be promoted. The importance of suitable attribution of source material and the avoidance of plagiarism will be stressed. Speaking and listening skills will also be reviewed with an emphasis on extemporaneous rather than scripted delivery. Complex sentence structure will be studied to facilitate understanding of the kind of language met with in ordinances and other legal documents. The importance of vocabulary development will be stressed, and strategies for learning and dealing with new words will be addressed by using contextual reading and listening activities related to the students’ field of study. Assessment - coursework 100%.

ECEN1909. English for International Business and Global Management (3 credits)

This course in a series of intensive workshops reviews academic language issues encountered during the first two semesters of university study, and prepares students to be active and confident users of English in international contexts. Reading and writing skills are reviewed through diagnostic in-class activities, and independent study strategies and resources to counter any weaknesses identified will be
discussed. The importance of attribution of sources material and the avoidance of plagiarism will be stressed. Speaking and listening skills will also be reviewed through in-class practice, with the emphasis on international standards of pronunciation and grammar and an extemporaneous approach to oral presentations. Some features of the major native-speaker varieties of English such as British, American and Australasian will be described, and the role of idiomatic language in both formal and informal contexts will be examined. Vocabulary learning and recognition strategies will be studied and independent study skills will be developed.
Assessment - coursework 100%.

ECEN2905. English for professional communication for economics and finance students (3 credits)

The course prepares students to communicate effectively and accurately and prepare themselves for workplace situations which entail the use of English. It requires students to investigate an issue relevant to their studies, improve their interview and presentation skills, and write a variety of professional documents. Assessment: 100% coursework.

Remarks: Only available to students from the School of Economics and Finance.

BUSI0081. Advanced business communication skills (6 credits)

This course focuses on building on the current strengths and sharpening the skills second year students have acquired in the first year course Business Communication. The course aims at helping students develop their business communication skills for a variety of workplace situations. In addition to learning the principles and skills, students are expected to identify and make effective use of in-class and out-of-class practice opportunities.

Remarks: Only available to BBA/BBA(Acc&Fin) students.

OR

ECEN2908. Advanced business communication skills (6 credits)

This course focuses on building on the current strengths and sharpening the skills second year students have acquired in the first year course Business Communication. The course aims at helping students develop their business communication skills for a variety of workplace situations. In addition to learning the principles and skills, students are expected to identify and make effective use of in-class and out-of-class practice opportunities.

Remarks: Only available to BBA/BBA(Acc&Fin) students.
JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES CENTRE

Language Studies Courses offered to BJ students

CSSC1001.  Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students (3 credits)
This course aims at enhancing students’ knowledge and skills in practical Chinese writing in the social sciences. Students will be introduced to simplified Chinese characters, and will be trained to write letters, proposals, reports, press releases and announcements. They will also acquire the skills in making public speeches and presentations. The course involves extensive use of Chinese IT applications. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

ECEN1901.  Academic English for social sciences (3 credits)
This course introduces students to features of speaking and writing in English in an academic context. Through small group work related to language and disciplinary issues the course develops abilities to produce clear and coherent spoken and written discourse for university study in the social sciences. Assessment: 100% coursework.

ECEN1910.  Professional writing for the media (3 credits)
This course emphasizes skills and techniques that contribute to quality writing in English for the general audiences of the media. Through group work and individual exercises, students develop abilities in clear and concise media writing; providing context and attribution for information; using accurate grammar, punctuation and quotation. Assessment: 100% coursework.

JUNIOR-LEVEL COURSES

JMSC0101.  Principles of journalism and the news media (6 credits)
An overview of issues in the practice of journalism and in the news media. Through lectures and seminars, students explore how journalists collect, process and deliver information, what makes news, and the inner-workings of media organizations. Assessment: 100% coursework.

JMSC0102.  News reporting and writing workshop (6 credits) (This course is not offered to non-BJ students)
Training in basic reporting and writing skills through lectures and intensive in-class and out-of-class assignments that replicate newsroom situations. Students will learn to write clearly, concisely and accurately for the news media under deadline pressure. Assessment: 100% coursework.

SENIOR-LEVEL COURSES

Semester III to VI

JMSC0002.  News reporting and writing workshop (6 credits) (This course is not offered to BJ students)
Training in basic reporting and writing skills through lectures and intensive in-class and out-of-class assignments that replicate newsroom situations. Students will learn to write clearly, concisely and accurately for the news media under deadline pressure. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite:  JMSC0101.
JMSC0004. Radio production (6 credits)
The art of radio and broadcast news writing and production, from daily news coverage to longer-format features. Students will conduct field reporting for radio and will use digital audio workstations to produce and mix reports. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.

JMSC0007. New media workshop (6 credits)
An overview of the impact of digital media on journalism and related ethical and social issues; hands-on workshop on web authoring and design. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.

JMSC0008. Multimedia production (6 credits)
The core elements of multimedia story telling. Using the latest digital tools developed by professionals, students will learn to merge photography, video, sound, and graphics into multimedia CDs and web sites. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.

JMSC0009. Desktop publishing (6 credits)
Hands-on workshop in using digital applications to create dynamic graphics and pages for disseminating news and information. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.

JMSC0014. Journalism and media practicum (6 credits)
Research project or production of a finished work of journalism. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.

JMSC0017. Feature writing (6 credits)
Training in the development and execution of stories that focus more on people, issues and trends than on the immediate news of the day. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0018. Chinese news writing (6 credits)
Developing Chinese news writing skills through lectures, reading appreciation and intensive in-class and out-of-class assignments. Students will learn to write breaking news and feature stories for Chinese language news media under deadline pressure. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0019. Media law and ethics (6 credits)
An overview of problems and issues relating to media laws and ethical issues and considerations that affect journalism and journalists. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.
JM0023.  **Advanced reporting: public affairs (6 credits)**
Advanced training in writing stories about government and public policy. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JM0024.  **Advanced reporting: beats and investigations (6 credits)**
Advanced training in writing, interviewing, beat reporting and investigative reporting techniques.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JM0025.  **Journalism traditions (6 credits)**
Comparative studies of the evolution of modern mass media, including newspapers, magazines, radio, and television, with special focus on Greater China and Asia. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.

JM0027.  **The press, politics and government (6 credits)**
Analysis of the role of mass media and other channels of communication in local and international political processes. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101.

JM0030.  **Editing (6 credits)**
Copy editing, graphic principles and processes, new media technology. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JM0032.  **Cultural studies of the media (6 credits)**
The course examines the impact of digital technologies on the arts, culture and public life. Study topics include emerging interactive technologies such as weblogs, online collaboration, mobile communications; the creation and maintenance of virtual communities like Xanga, Flickr and Wikipedia, citizen journalism; and the evolving media ecology in Hong Kong, China and Asia. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101

JM0037.  **Advanced Chinese news writing (6 credits)**
Beat reporting, enterprise reporting and writing; news essays and commentaries writing. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101, JMSC0102 or JMSC0002 and JMSC0018.

JM0038.  **Visual journalism (6 credits)**
Practical and theoretical examination of visual communication processes related to photography, layout and design, and Web information products. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101.

JM0039.  **The magazine workshop (6 credits)**
Reporting and writing for magazines with emphasis on voice, style, subject matter, and organization. The course may also include editing basics, design and an overview of the magazine industry and the role of magazines in society. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.
JMSC0040. Chinese news editing (6 credits)
Fundamentals of Chinese news editing, including headlines, page layout and design, photo editing, information graphics, and appropriate electronic tools. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101, JMSC0102 or JMSC0002 and JMSC0018.

JMSC0042. International news (6 credits)
This course will teach students how to report for an international audience. Seminar participants will work as if they were the Hong Kong bureau for an international news organization and learn to write news and feature stories for a global audience. The course will have two parts. One will introduce students to some of the major global issues dominating international news and provide a basic grounding in international politics. The second part will be practical, and involve students reporting stories as members of a news bureau. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0044. Special topics in journalism I (6 credits)
This course provides an opportunity for students to study in depth an area of journalism of interest to staff and students. Students should consult the Centre for information on the content and prerequisites. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101.

JMSC0045. Special topics in journalism II (6 credits)
This course provides an opportunity for students to study in depth an area of journalism of interest to staff and students. Students should consult the Centre for information on the content and prerequisites. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101.

JMSC0046. Introduction to television (6 credits)
The course would study the television industry in Asia, America and Europe with an emphasis on analyzing the nature of television news and its impact. The course would survey the history of the industry, develop research projects on its rapid development in the region. Survey TV News agendas and ethical issues. Special emphasis on TV programming, news, current affairs and documentaries. Lectures would focus on content analysis and the influence of the medium. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101.

JMSC0047. Writing and reporting for broadcast news (6 credits)
Prerequisites: JMSC0101, JMSC0102 or JMSC0002 and JMSC0028 or JMSC0046.

JMSC0048. Television news production, shooting and editing (6 credits)
An intensive course in techniques of video shooting, editing. Emphasis on the mechanics of shotting and editing for TV News. Taught in an environment multi-tasking. Designed for those keep on learning good production values. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0028 or JMSC0046.
JMSC0049. Broadcast newsroom and management (6 credits)
This course focuses on "backroom" of radio and television news. Newsroom operations, finance, budgets, decision making, 24-hour news channels structure and management. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0028 or JMSC0046.

JMSC0050. Radio news reporting and writing (6 credits)
This course focuses on the radio medium. Radio programming, reporting, writing. Several radio programmes will be produced during the semester. A survey of the influence of radio, locally and internationally will be included. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0201. Journalism summer internship (3 credits) (This course is not offered to non-BJ students)
Interns in the media industry for a minimum period of eight weeks during the summer vacation of the first or second year of study. A report shall be submitted to the programme director within 6 weeks after the end of the internship. This course will be assessed on a pass/fail basis and will not be counted towards the calculation of the CGPA/WGPA or honours classification. However, it will be recorded on the official transcript.

Semesters V to VI

JMSC0026. Independent study (6 credits)
Individual projects in journalism. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisite: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0031. Business and financial journalism (6 credits)
Specialty training in financial journalism, with guest talks by financial journalists and business news sources. Lectures will focus on such skills as reading financial documents, working with statistics, reporting on enterprises and covering competition in a global economy. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0033. Literary journalism (6 credits)
The goal of this course is to learn how journalism becomes non-fiction literature. Students will read works of recognized quality produced in English in Asia and abroad, and analyze why they succeed on a literary level. The class will identify the tools and techniques writers employ to construct enduring true stories. Over this journey, students will become better readers and better writers. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0034. Covering China (6 credits)
The course introduces students to the methods, as well as the ethical and cultural issues, involved in reporting on contemporary China. It will examine the public information structure in the People’s Republic of China, news sources and the use of published documents and statistics, with special focus on the politics and economy of China. It will also give an overview of the state of the media and news topics in China. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.
JMSC0035.  **Advanced computer-assisted reporting (6 credits)**
The course introduces students to the tools of computer-assisted reporting, including spreadsheets, relational
database analysis, basic statistical analysis, mapping software, and accessing online data. Students will learn
to use computer-assisted reporting techniques to produce breaking news stories and enterprise stories for print,
broadcast and online media. Assessment: 100% coursework
Prerequisites:  JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0036.  **Research methods and investigative reporting (6 credits)**
This module takes students’ reporting skills to a deeper level than those required by press conferences,
calamities and other stories driven by a single news event. It will introduce students to the methods of
public document access and research, basic database analysis, spreadsheets, and other social science
research tools. It will examine ways to develop and use confidential and expert sources, and to integrate
interviews with document research to produce in-depth reporting projects that serve the public interest.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites:  JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0041.  **Business and financial journalism in an age of globalization (6 credits)**
This course will analyze a range of economic, financial, and business issues that are relevant to
journalism in an age of increasing globalization. The historical perspective provided in this course will
cover the rise of Asia’s economies in recent decades, the onset of the 1997 financial crisis and the
subsequent brief recovery, followed by the current economic downturn. The opening of markets for trade
and capital, as well as the advent of a debate about global standards of corporate governance and
economic policy, will provide the background for an examination of what journalists today need to know
to cover an increasingly complex economic landscape. The aim of the course is to provide reporters with
the historical and critical tools needed to get beyond the cliches that cloud so much of contemporary
business and financial journalism. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.

JMSC0043.  **Reporting public health issues (6 credits)**
This course will provide students with the basic knowledge they require to report on medicine and health
in an intelligent, informed way. Participants will learn about the medical profession and how it functions,
how to evaluate different sources of information on health, and come to grips with some of the ethical
issues and dilemmas health reporters face. By the end of the course, students will have acquired the skills
needed to report news and feature stories on health topics. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: JMSC0003 or JMSC0101 and JMSC0102 or JMSC0002.
FACULTY OF LAW

Department of Law

LLAW1001. and LLAW1002. Law of contract I and II (12 credits)

The function of contract; formation of a valid contract; offer and acceptance; capacity; illegality; interpretation of the terms of a contract; misinterpretation; mistake; duress and undue influence; privity; performance; discharge and breach; quasi-contract; remedies; principles of agency.

LLAW1005. and LLAW1006. Law of tort I and II (12 credits)

General principles of liability, negligence, defences to negligence, vicarious liability, loss distribution, fatal accidents, duty of care towards employees, statutory compensation for employees, breach of statutory duty, occupiers' liability, nuisance, Rylands v. Fletcher, trespass to person, trespass to property, other intentional torts to person and property, defences to trespass, defamation, other interests protected by the law of tort, remedies (damages and injunction).

LLAW1008 The legal system (6 credits)

An overview of major legal systems in the world (common law, civil law, socialist law, religious law), including a brief overview on a comparison between the common law system and the PRC legal system; the ideology of the common law system and the rule of law, justice and separation of powers; development of the Hong Kong legal system; classification of law, sources of Hong Kong law; law making process; Hong Kong court system; doctrine of stare decisis; access to justice and legal aid; legal profession and legal services; jury system; law reform; Government lawyers and organization of Government legal services; the language of the law; interface between the PRC legal system and the Hong Kong legal system

LLAW1009 Law and society (6 credits)

This course aims to capture the dynamics between law and society, namely, how law is shaped by social changes, perception and thought, and how society is moulded by legal rules and norms. Broad interdisciplinary knowledge and perspectives relevant to the study of the relationship between law and society will be discussed. Theoretical, empirical and policy considerations will be taken into account. General themes chosen to highlight the above dynamics will include the relationship between law and political power, law and economic development, law and history, law and family, and law and social life. Specific topics covered may vary from year to year and may include the following: the rule of law and the liberal constitutional state; law and economic development in the age of globalisation; the anthropology of law; law and culture; law and morality; the historical and philosophical foundations of western and Chinese law; current socio-legal issues in Hong Kong.

LLAW2001 Constitutional Law (6 credits)

The nature and characteristics of constitutions; constitutional doctrines: constitutionalism, the rule of law, the separation of powers, judicial review, autonomy, democracy, and human rights protection; the resumption of sovereignty and the Basic Law of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, its framework and content, interpretation and amendment; international dimension and external affairs; the Constitution of the People's Republic of China and their inter-relationship; comparison of the constitution of Hong Kong with the territory's colonial constitution and constitutions in other parts of the world; the relationship between Hong Kong Special Administrative Region and the Central Government of the People's Republic of China; the executive, legislative and judicial organs of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region and their inter-relationships; human rights protection in
Hong Kong; the prospect of constitutionalism in Hong Kong; judicial review of administrative action; control of law-making by delegates; the ombudsman; administrative appeals.

---

**LLAW2003. Criminal law I (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the principles of Hong Kong criminal law and liability. Topics include the nature and classification of crime, elements of criminal procedure in Hong Kong, the burden of proof and the impact of constitutional human rights, and the general principles of criminal responsibility, including criminal defences and degrees of participation. Offences considered will include homicide and theft.

[Co-requisite: LLAW2004 Criminal law II]

---

**LLAW2004. Criminal law II (6 credits)**

This course examines further aspects of criminal law and liability in Hong Kong, including additional criminal defences and inchoate liability. It will examine the application of the general principles of criminal responsibility in selected criminal offence areas, including homicide, assaults, sexual offences, and theft and deception. Where possible, students will be encouraged to consider alternative approaches to the principles of liability, and to develop social policy analysis skills.

[Prerequisite: LLAW 2003 Criminal law I]

---

**LLAW2009. Introduction to Chinese law (6 credits)**

A general overview of the legal system and the basic principles of law in force in mainland China today. Topics to be covered include the historical background to the contemporary Chinese legal system; constitutional law; sources of law; the law-making institutions and processes; the courts, procuratorates and legal profession; basic principles of civil and criminal procedure and administrative litigation; basic principles of civil, commercial, administrative and criminal law; and the impact of globalisation on Chinese legal developments.

---

**LLAW 1010 Legal research and writing I (3 credits)**

Case reading: distinguishing law/fact; learning the structure and language of common law judgments; identifying relevant facts; identifying and defining legal issues, ratios, arguments, reasoning with precision; learning the ways in which judges in one case treat the judgments in earlier cases; precedent in action.

Basic legal writing skills using short weekly marked up and graded writing assignments in the format of case briefs, letters to clients, closed internal memoranda. Emphasis will be placed upon correct use of general English and appropriate legal terminology, clarity of expression and logical, effective organisation of ideas and arguments.

Learning skills: pre-class preparation; in class exercises, participation in class discussions using group and Socratic methods.

---

**LLAW 1011 Legal research and writing II (3 credits)**

All about legislation: the anatomy of an ordinance; the life cycle of an ordinance; the nature and use of the revised and loose-leaf editions of the Laws of Hong Kong and the Legal Supplements to the Gazette; the structure of the English Statute Book, the nature of subordinate legislation; reading ordinances; statutory interpretation in common law jurisdictions.

Basic legal writing skills using short, weekly marked up and graded writing assignments involving precise identification and resolution of statutory interpretation problems.
Learning skills; pre-class preparation, in class presentation on part of the life cycle of an ordinance, participation in very small group discussions with systematic reporting and feedback.

LLAW 1012  Legal research and writing III (3 credits)

Library research involving identifying and physically locating appropriate Hong Kong and English case law and statutory provisions using (i) paper and (ii) electronic sources with emphasis upon thoroughness, efficiency and being as up to date as practically possible; basic research tools for Canada and Australia; use of legal encyclopedias, especially Halsburys, and digests such as Current Law and Hong Kong’s own materials; a first introduction to legal journals.

Students will be expected to do a number of ungraded, narrowly focused research assignments, designed to assist students in familiarizing themselves with legal research tools and methods. They will then be expected to complete a research plan, a research file, an office memo, a barrister’s skeleton, oral argument and final judgment – all based on an assigned research request (a different research request set by each tutor).

LLAW 2012  Commercial law (6 credits)

This course will introduce the fundamental principles of commercial law through the integration of legal issues associated with contracts, personal property, security and finance and equity in the context of commercial transactions. It focuses on the types of commercial transactions, the legal relations between parties thereto, issues arising from interrelated financial transactions, and credit and security. It covers introduction to personal property, rights in rem and rights in personam, bailment; commercial transactions (sale of goods and services, statutory control on unconscionable terms; implied terms and exemption/limitation clauses; transfer of title, nemo dat); gift; negotiable instruments, assignment of choses in action and security interests (retention of title, lien, pledges, mortgages, fixed and floating charges, guarantees); protection of interests in property and remedies (conversion, detinue, trespass, unjust enrichment, set-off); introduction to bankruptcy and corporate insolvency; settlement of commercial disputes.

LLAW2013 and LLAW2014  Land law I and II (12 credits)

Introduction: concept of a proprietary interest; what is property law; classification of property; the nature of a trust.

Ownership, title and possession: legal ownership; title; leasehold estates in Hong Kong; ownership and possession; tenure and estates; equitable interests; possession-recovery and protection of possession; adverse possession and possessory title.

Priority: doctrine of notice; statutory intervention (e.g. land registration); subrogation.

Creation and transfer of proprietary interests in land: creation; assignment; intervention of equity (e.g. Walsh v Lonsdale, part performance, estoppel, constructive and resulting trusts).

Future interests: remainders and reversions; trusts for sale; vested and contingent interest; rules against inalienability.

Concurrent interests: joint tenancy and tenancy in common; ownership in multi-storey buildings; severance; termination.

Leases: nature of leases; relationship of landlord and tenant; termination; statutory intervention.

Easements: nature; creation and determination.

Licences: revocability; enforceability.

Covenants: between landlord and tenant; between adjoining and co-owners; role in use and management of land.

Security interests: mortgages; charges; pledges; liens.

Land registration and priorities.
LLAW 2015   Legal research and writing IV (3 credits)

Using materials from a range of substantive law courses, students will be required to complete a number of written assignments such as a draft legal brief and a revised version, clauses for or answering problem questions in relation to simple hire purchase, car parking, employment or tenancy agreements; a simple set of pleadings, an essay critically commenting on a legal journal article.

LLAW 2016   Legal research and writing V (3 credits)

Students will be required to complete two supervised assignments, each involving the preparation of a research plan, working bibliography (if appropriate), full draft and final polished product. One assignment, to be completed in the first semester, will required research in an area of private law, probably in the form of an open memorandum. The other assignment will require research in an area of public or comparative law with the additional requirement of a presentation of the paper to a seminar of peers as a work in progress. The second assignment and presentation will be completed in the second semester.

LLAW3001.   Introduction to legal theory (6 credits)

This course encourages critical reflections on the nature of law, the central issues of jurisprudence and the concepts and techniques used in the operation of legal systems. Topics to be covered may include some of the following: the relationship between law and morality; natural law; legal positivism; Ronald Dworkin's jurisprudence; utilitarianism and economic analysis of law; justice; liberty; rights; the Rule of Law; punishment; adjudication and legal reasoning; legal realism; sociological jurisprudence; critical legal studies; feminist jurisprudence; postmodern jurisprudence.

LLAW3007   Alternative Dispute Resolution (6 credits)

This course will examine the traditional methods of dispute resolution such as judicial adjudication, and consider alternative dispute resolution from both a Hong Kong and an Asian perspective. This course is composed of two main parts:
(a) an introduction to traditional methods of dispute resolution and a critique of their advantages and disadvantages; and
(b) an examination of alternative dispute resolution methods, which will cover the following:
   (i) the origin and development of the alternative dispute resolution movement, and
   (ii) an in-depth study of the following methods: confidential private listening; negotiation, mediation and conciliation; arbitration; good offices/ombudsman; mini-trials/summary jury trials; private courts, dispute resolution centres and online web-based ADR schemes.

These methods of alternative dispute resolution will be examined by considering their present and potential application in Hong Kong and other parts of Asia, in such areas as: administrative complaints, commercial and construction disputes (both domestic and international), labour relations, landlord and tenant disputes and matrimonial disputes. Students will also engage in role playing exercises in simulated negotiation, mediation and arbitration with video taped assessment.

LLAW3010.   Business associations (6 credits)

Outline of different types of business associations.
Partnership: their nature and creation and the rights and duties of the partner inter se and vis-a-vis third parties.
Registered companies: their development and nature; problems relating to incorporation; separate corporate personality; limited liability; memorandum and articles of association; ultra vires doctrine; an overview of membership, management and control.
LLAW3022. Human rights in Hong Kong (6 credits)

History of enactment, the Bill of Rights Regime, ICCPR, implementation of human rights treaties, Basic Law, interpretation, scope of application, inter-citizen rights, locus standi, permissible limitations, derogation and reservation, enforcement and remedy. Study of selected rights, including civil and political rights, economic, social & cultural rights and people's rights. Topics covered include impact on civil and criminal process, right to a fair and public trial, arrest, search and seizure, torture and degrading treatment, liberty and security of person, freedom of association and assembly, freedom of expression, right to nationality, right to family, right to political participation, discrimination and equality, right to housing, social securities, education and environment.

LLAW3034 Labour Law (6 credits)

This course is intended to provide an introduction to the major issues in labour and employment law in Hong Kong. It is concerned with the law governing the workplace: the common law of the contract of employment, the statutory provisions regulating the contract of employment and governing the rights and obligations of workers and employers, workers’ entitlements under legislation, workplace safety, the right to compensation for work-related injury, protection against discrimination, and collective rights such as the right to form trade unions, to bargain and to strike. International law, in the form of the International Labour Organisation conventions as well as the major UN conventions on human rights, and their interface with domestic law, will be considered.

LLAW3040 Medico-Legal Issues (6 credits)

This course examine how the law regulates medical practice. Topics examined include consent to medical treatment, abortion, pre-natal injuries, death and withholding life sustaining treatment, euthanasia, organ transplant, confidentiality and access to medical records.

LLAW3043 Principles of Family Law (6 credits)

This course covers basic principles of Hong Kong family law and its historical development. It examines marriage formation, nullity and legal consequences of marriage. It covers protection of spouse and children from domestic violence. This course also covers judicial separation, divorce and ancillary relief. The law relating to children is also examined with emphasis on parental responsibility, child adoption and child protection from abuse and neglect. Also studied is the impact on family law of the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child and other international treaties binding on Hong Kong.

LLAW3044 Public International Law (6 credits)

Topics will include some of the following: introduction to the nature of international law and its historical development; sources of international law; the relationship between international and municipal law; the subjects of international law; the concept of sovereignty and state recognition; state jurisdiction; the acquisition and loss of territory; state responsibility; state succession; treaties and other international legal agreements; the pacific settlement of disputes; the use of force; international institutions; human rights. The above is intended merely as a guide to the general nature of the subject matter to be covered. Special reference will be made throughout to considerations which are particularly relevant in the Hong Kong and Southeast Asian contexts.
LLAW3046  Child and the Law (6 credits)

This course covers the law of parent and child with emphasis on the emerging concept of parental responsibility and the rights of the child. It examines the increasing importance of parentage as a status and the effect of Parent and Child Ordinance (1993) on the status of children in Hong Kong. Also examined here is the effect of divorce on children and the enforcement of child support obligation. The course also examines the importance of listening to children in family proceedings and the role of mediation in the settlement of family disputes over children. Also considered is the law of child adoption and protection from abuse and neglect.

LLAW3047. The Hong Kong basic law (6 credits)

The background to the Basic Law (the Joint Declaration and the process of drafting and agreeing on the Basic Law), basic Chinese and Western liberal constitutional concepts relevant to an understanding of the structure and orientation of the Basic Law, the relationship of the Basic Law to the Chinese Constitution, the relationship between the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region and the Chinese central government, the institutional structure of the Hong Kong SAR, especially the relationship between the executive and the legislature, the concept and special aspects of 'one country, two systems' (e.g. the economic system preserved in the Basic Law), human rights, judicial review and constitutional litigation.

LLAW3057. International criminal law (6 credits)

This course explores the rationale, origins, normative development, institutional mechanisms and role of international criminal law. To do this, we trace the roots of international criminal law in customary laws of war and early attempts to enforce rules prohibiting war crimes, before reviewing the operation of the Nuremberg and Tokyo International Military Tribunals that were established after the Second World War. We then take account of the Geneva Conventions, 1949, and the rise of international human rights law, focusing on the crimes of aggression, genocide, war crimes and crimes against humanity. We then delve into the law and practice of the ad hoc International Criminal Tribunals for the former Yugoslavia and Rwanda and relate their establishment and operation to the emerging system of international criminal law, and the process under way to establish the International Criminal Court. Other problems of international crime, including terrorism, drug-trafficking, hostage-taking and hijacking, also will be considered against the backdrop of the domestic and international socio-political realities of our time.

LLAW3062. Human Rights in China (6 credits)

This course will examine the international and domestic dimensions of the protection of human rights in the People's Republic of China. It will examine the applicability of international human rights standards to the PRC, the stance of the PRC in relation to international national mechanisms for the protection of human rights, and the place of international standards in domestic law. The course will consider the theoretical debates about the origin and contingency of human rights standards, questions of priorities in human rights, and the issue of rights in Chinese cultural contexts. It will also examine the extent of human rights protections available under the Chinese constitution and other laws, and will focus on selected issues, which may include the criminal justice system, freedom of expression, freedom of association, freedom of religion, labour rights, gender discrimination, and minorities/self-determination. The course will also examine the social and political forces that may contribute to the improvement of human rights in China.
LLAW3069  Regulation of Financial Markets (6 credits)

This foundation course addresses the nature and operation of financial markets and the role of regulation. Coverage, based on comparative analysis and international standards, will include major financial sectors (banking, securities, insurance), supporting legal and institutional structures, and current issues and trends.

LLAW3080  Governance and Law (6 credits)

This course seeks to understand why the state regulates certain activities and behaviour in society, what different forms of regulation exist, when and what kind of legal regulation is deemed necessary, how legal regulation is enforced, and checks balances against abuse in enforcement. This course is jointly taught by staff from the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Law. The main objective of the course is to explore the interface between the study of Politics and Law in understanding governance. Relevant case studies will be included for illustration and discussion. To take this course, student must have successfully completed POLI1002 Fundamentals of Public Administration and LLAW3093 Administrative Law. Students are allowed to take either POLI0064 or LLAW3080 to fulfill the respective programme requirements for the Department of Politics and Public Administration or the Department of Law.

LLAW3090  Legal aspects of white collar crime (6 credits)

The course applies international and comparative perspectives to the problem of white collar crime in the HKSAR. The topics covered include defining ‘white collar crime’, money laundering, terrorist financing, forfeiture/confiscation of crime tainted property, corporate criminal liability, punishing the corporation, investigating and prosecuting white collar crime, and possibly others.

LLAW3093  Administrative Law (6 credits)

The topics which may be included in the course in any particular year include theories of administrative decision-making, judicial review of administrative action (ultra vires and procedural fairness, Wednesbury unreasonableness, proportionality, abuse of power), delegated legislation, administrative law remedies, control of law-making by delegates, the practical aspects of bringing an action for judicial review under Order 53 of the Rules of the High Court, non-curial means of control and scrutiny of administrative action (Ombudsman, Administrative appeals, public enquiries), the structure and operation of administrative tribunals in Hong Kong, the Bill of Rights and review of administrative decision-making in Hong Kong, and access to information.

LLAW3101  Cybercrime (6 credits)

‘Cybercrime’ refers to computer-mediated activities which are either criminal or regarded as illicit and which can be conducted through global electronic networks. It encompasses cybercrimes against the person (e.g. cyber-stalking, cyber-pornography), cybercrimes against property (e.g. hacking, viruses, causing damage to data, cyber-fraud), and cyber-terrorism. The computer-age has also provided organized crime with more sophisticated and potentially secure techniques for supporting and developing networks for a range of criminal activities, including drugs trafficking, money laundering, illegal arms trafficking, and smuggling.

Cybercrime poses new challenges for criminal justice, criminal law, and law enforcement. This course will examine the nature of and problems created by cybercrime, along with some of the legal and policy challenges arising in relation to the development of national and international law enforcement and regulatory responses to cybercrime.
LLAW3091. Ethnicity, human rights and democracy (6 credits)
The rise of ethnic consciousness and the prevalence of conflicts based on diverse ethnic claims raise fundamental problems for rights and democracy. The course examines the causes of the rise of ethnicity and the challenges it poses to rights and democracy. The dominant modes of rights and liberal democracy, based on notions of the individual (or citizen) and social homogeneity, seem to clash with the claims of groups rights and cultural relativism. Many recent developments in the regime of rights and international law respond to this clash: the rise of rights of indigenous peoples, consociational democracy, new modes of expression of self-determination, developments in the rights of minorities, various forms of autonomy, the expansion of the scope of humanitarian intervention, and the adaptation of bills of rights to accommodate multi-culturalism.
FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES

Language Studies Courses offered to BSocSc students

CSSC1001. Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students (3 credits)
This course aims at enhancing students’ knowledge and skills in practical Chinese writing in the social sciences. Students will be introduced to simplified Chinese characters, and will be trained to write letters, proposals, reports, press releases and announcements. They will also acquire the skills in making public speeches and presentations. The course involves extensive use of Chinese IT applications. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

ECEN1901. Academic English for social sciences (3 credits)
This course introduces students to features of speaking and writing in English in an academic context. Through small group work related to language and disciplinary issues the course develops abilities to produce clear and coherent spoken and written discourse for university study in the social sciences. Assessment: 100% coursework.

ECEN2902. English for professional communication for social sciences (3 credits)
The course prepares students to communicate effectively and accurately and prepare themselves for workplace situations which entail the use of English. It requires students to investigate an issue relevant to their studies, improve their interview and presentation skills, and write various professional documents. Assessment: 100% coursework

Junior Level Courses

Faculty-level Courses (FOSS)

FOSS1002. Appreciating social research (6 credits)
Social science researchers investigate social phenomena from different perspectives using different research methodologies. This course will provide a chance for students to take a close look at social science research, and attain a general understanding of the different research orientations taken by social sciences researchers. After taking the course, students will be more knowledgeable and equipped to understand general research findings in social sciences. Emphasis will be on nurturing critical thinking skills and aptitudes for appreciating research evidences encountered in future studies and daily experiences. Assessment: 100% coursework.

FOSS1003. Masters in social thought (6 credits)
Over time, outstanding master thinkers in different social scientific disciplines have produced landmark studies and ingenious conceptual frameworks to illuminate the world we live in. This course introduces students to the works and ideas of selected ‘masters’ in social sciences, in particular how they continue to enlighten us, by applying their insights to examine the pressing social issues that surround us in the intricately globalized world of today. The basis for our enquiries will be from the works of writers as diverse as Sigmund Freud, Erich Fromm, J.S. Mill, Emile Durkheim, and Karl Marx amongst others.
1. After taking the course, students will learn the ways of thinking and major insights of selected masters of social sciences.
2. Students will also be able to make use of their insights to reflect on some of the major issues they face in life.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Department of Politics and Public Administration

Students who wish to major/double major/minor in Politics and Public Administration must successfully complete POLI1003 in semester I or II. Unless otherwise specified, the final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and assessment of coursework in a ratio to be announced by individual course instructors at the beginning of each semester. The weighting of examination ranges from 40-60% of total course assessment.

POLI1002. Fundamentals of public administration (6 credits)
This is an introductory course to the study of Public Administration. It seeks to introduce students to fundamental concepts and theories in the discipline. Main themes that will be examined include the traditions, core functions and processes, as well as the politics and accountability of public administration.

POLI1003. Making sense of politics (6 credits)
It is an introductory course offered to students with no previous background in political science. It covers the basic concepts, institutions and processes that one would encounter in the study of politics. Emphasis will be placed on the application of concepts to current issues, including (but not restricted to) that of Hong Kong.

Department of Psychology

Student who intend to major in Psychology must have taken PSYC1001, or PSYC1002 and PSYC1003. Students who have taken PSYC1001 are not allowed to take PSYC1002 or PSYC1003 and vice versa. The final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in a ratio of 40% coursework, 60% examination, unless otherwise specified.

PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits)
Discussion of basic concepts in psychology and a preliminary survey of representative work carried out in various areas of psychological investigation, together with an investigation at some length of one such area. Eligibility: Students taking or having taken PSYC1002 or PSYC1003 are not allowed to take this course.

PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits)
We are all fascinated by the achievements of the human mind or brain. But we may also often ask ourselves how we can do things better, for example, remember more efficiently. This course will help us to understand more about the ways in which we solve problems, how we develop our abilities to communicate through language, and how we think creatively. It will help us to answer questions about why we forget things, how we manage to see things in the world around us, why we sleep and what our dreams mean. We will look at the ways in which the human brain operates, and how it manages to do such amazing things, through reference to research findings, theories and our own practical work. Lectures will include class demonstrations and activities, as well as videos, presented in a way to enhance your interest in, and memory of, what is already a fascinating area. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination. Eligibility: Students taking or having taken PSYC1001 are not allowed to take this course.

PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits)
Through lectures and a series of stimulating class activities, students in this course will learn the latest research discoveries in motivation and emotion, human development, intelligence, personality, psychological testing, stress and health, abnormal psychological functioning, psychotherapy, social
attraction, social influence and social competence. The course is intended to enhance the development of self-understanding and social competence.

Eligibility: Students taking or having taken PSYC1001 are not allowed to take this course.

Department of Social Work and Social Administration

Students who intend to major or minor in Social Work and Social Administration must successfully complete either SOWK1001 or SOWK1003. The final grading will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in the ratio of 60:40. Teachers concerned will announce at the beginning of each semester the assessment ratio for courses not assessed in the 60:40 examination/coursework ratio.

SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)
This is a basic course in the understanding of social policy in the areas of human resources planning and education, land use and housing, ageing and social security, family and support services, etc.

SOWK1002. Introduction to social work (6 credits)
The course introduces the basic principles and concepts of social work. Students will obtain an understanding of the philosophy, knowledge and values which form the base for social work practice, social work as a profession, and the role of the social worker in modern society.

SOWK1003. Introduction to social welfare (6 credits)
This course introduces the basic concepts and function of social welfare. Analysis will be undertaken of the range and variety of social services in Hong Kong including family services, youth centres, outreaching services, school social work, community development, rehabilitation, elderly services, probation and correctional services.

Department of Sociology

The final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in a ratio of 40% coursework, 60% examination, unless otherwise specified. Students may select at most two courses from the following:

SOCI1001. Introduction to sociology (6 credits)
This course introduces students to the nature of sociological enquiry and the basic concepts used in sociological analysis. After some reference to the influence of inheritance and environment on human social behaviour, the course will focus on key concepts used in the analysis of cultures, social structures, social processes and social change. The relationship between research, concepts and contemporary theory will be explored at an introductory level.

SOCI1002. Discovering society (6 credits)
This course introduces students to the sociological way of thinking through reference mainly to Chinese societies such as Hong Kong, Mainland China, and overseas Chinese communities. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

SOCI1003. Introduction to anthropology (6 credits)
This course will explore, through cross-cultural comparison, key social and cultural issues, such as marriage and the family, caste and class, ethnicity and identity, language and culture, state formation, economic values,
gender and religion. The course will draw on studies of the peoples and cultures of Asia.

Cognitive Science Programme

COGN1001. Introduction to cognitive science (6 credits)
This course allows students to gain an understanding of the workings of the mind in the context of the technological advances that are increasingly shaping our lives and our society. The course introduces students to the domain, goals and methods of Cognitive Science, showing how different disciplines converge in their enquiry into how the brain works. With integration as the overall objective, there will be a series of lectures given by specialists within each of the major disciplines (Computer Science, Linguistics, Philosophy, Physiology and Psychology) that contribute to Cognitive Science. Each series of lectures will present case studies highlighting research findings which show how similar questions about the functioning of the human mind are answered from the perspective of each contributing discipline.

Senior Level Courses

Faculty-level Courses (FOSS)

FOSS0001. Media, culture and communication in contemporary China (6 credits)
China has been undergoing dramatic and rapid social change as it becomes embedded in the global economy, and as such, has been the focus of a great deal of media attention. This course investigates the multi-faceted ways in which China’s social, economic, political, and legal cultures are portrayed in different forms of contemporary media. Assessment: 100% coursework.

FOSS0003. Human Security in the global context (6 credits)
What is Human Security? How does the security and well-being of the individual relate to the security of the state? Does the state always provide for the Human Security of its citizens? This course attempts to answer these questions by exploring the contemporary relationship between globalisation, development and Human Security. Human Security refers to the safeguarding of individuals and groups from the threats that may endanger the basic survival of human beings. These threats go beyond our traditional understanding of security threats, (e.g. attack from another state) to include poverty, economic inequality, diseases, human rights abuses, environmental pollution, and natural disasters.

The first section of the course reviews the emergence of Human Security, and its major themes and meanings. This includes a discussion of the differences between the “Freedom from Fear” and the “Freedom from Want” agenda in policy interpretations of Human Security. The course first covers the “Freedom from Want” agenda to explore how poverty and inequality, public health, the environment, and gender, impact on the Human Security of individuals and groups in the development process. The “Freedom from Fear” section then examines how war and violence, in their different forms, relate to Human Security and human rights, including what the normative and practical arguments are in favour of, and against, humanitarian intervention in war and conflict situations. This section focuses on the rights based ideas within the Human Security agenda, and explores the complex moral and ethical debates surrounding the international community’s “Responsibility to Protect” and “Duty to Prevent” in ethnic conflict and humanitarian disasters.

The final section asks if and how Human Security is relevant to Hong Kong people, and explores the role of international organisations, NGOs, and civil society in addressing Human Security concerns. Students are also pushed to consider the challenges facing the implementation of a Human Security agenda in the global context. How can it be meaningfully applied in a policy context? Should Human Security be defined more narrowly to increase its policy worth, or take on a broader definition to include both the Freedom from Fear and Freedom from Want agendas? The use of case studies and simulation exercises throughout the course uses real world examples to help students understand and apply the material.
covered. Students are encouraged to make their own critical judgments about the value of the Human Security agenda towards the end of the course.

Assessment: The course is based on 40% examination and 60% coursework.

---

**FOSS0004. Gender and the global economy (6 credits)**
The systematic study of the role gender plays in development, however the latter was defined, has spanned at least three decades. Gender analysis, or applying the gender lens to look at the world, has proven indispensable to the formulation, implementation and evaluation of human-centred development strategies. Theories and approaches of gender and development have waxed and waned, but the fundamental problems of women’s subordination, the Third World state’s political and economic vulnerability, and increasing poverty amidst a world order of global capitalism remain.

This course begins with an overview of the concept of ‘development’ and theories of gender and development. The latter had paralleled the rise and fall of dominant paradigms. This would prepare us for an in-depth exploration of the macro processes that shape the Third World state and society today: colonialism, national liberation and problems of nation-building, and the ever strengthening force of global capital and global institutions. These processes, combined with local culture and social structure, have differential impact on men and women. Specifically for this semester, we focus on various forms of women’s incorporation into the global economy, and their implications for the household, the community, and the state. Finally, we wonder to what extent solutions and alternatives could be found in development NGOs, the global and local women’s movements, and creative initiatives from civil society.

The course, as such, is necessarily informed by multiple disciplines, and would be of interest to students of cultural studies, economics, sociology, anthropology, politics and international relations. Where appropriate, videos will be used as teaching aid.

Assessment: 40% examination and 60% coursework.

Eligibility: Students taking or having taken POLI0016 are not allowed to take this course.

---

**FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)**
This course introduces students to the study of the relationship between globalization and crime. It is divided into three main sections. The first part of the course introduces students to the major perspectives of globalization and how crime fits into these discussions. The second part of the course examines recent efforts to understand the dialectical process of crime and globalization using examples like the global drug economy, corruption and human trafficking. The third section will contend with the obstacles and strategies for addressing crime in the global context.

This course provides students with a better understanding of the ways in which crime and globalization interact. It is also designed to facilitate students’ critical thinking about how crime operates in the local and transnational context and the difficulties in dealing with crime at these two levels.

Assessment: 50% examination and 50% coursework (30% an individual portfolio and 20% a group project).

---

**FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)**
This course introduces students to the historical and contemporary trends in illicit drug use around the world and public policy efforts to control it. The course is divided into three main sections. The first part of the course introduces students to the rise of opiate use in China and elsewhere, the Opium Wars, and the resulting international efforts to control opiate consumption and production. The second part of the course examines contemporary international and local efforts to deal with current drug use including heroin, cocaine and amphetamine type stimulants. The third section will be devoted to examining efforts to shift from a crime oriented perspective of illicit drug use to that of a public health approach focusing on ways to educate and reduce the harms associated with illicit drug use. Examples are drawn from a number of countries including Hong Kong, China, Thailand, the U.S., the United Kingdom, Australia and the
This course provides students with a better understanding of the construction of social control policies in relation to the consumption of “pleasurable substances.” It is designed to facilitate students’ critical thinking about such questions as: Who is making these policies? Why are these policies being made? Who are these policies directed at? What impact have these policies had?

Assessment: 50% examination and 50% coursework (30% an individual portfolio and 20% a group project).

---

**FOSS0007. Policy/practice research project (9 credits)**
This course is under the Social Exposure Programme of the Faculty which aims at assisting students to develop critical thinking, analytic ability, and to improve their effective interpersonal and communication skills. A student or a group of students of not more than 3 may choose a policy/practice research project of individual interest from a list provided. The responsible teacher of the project will provide supervision to the student(s). The work involved should not be less than 160 hours during term time and/or summer time. The works involved can be literature review, data collection, data analysis, report writing, or a combination of the above work. Assessment: journal: 25%, project involvement: 30%, project presentation: 15%, seminar participation: 15%, individual report: 15%.

---

**FOSS0008. Social science internship (9 credits)**
This course is under the Social Exposure Programme of the Faculty which aims at preparing students to develop a good understanding of social issues through first-hand practical experience and applying knowledge and skills learned to real life situations. Students are expected to become more socially aware, develop critical thinking and analytic ability, and improve their effective interpersonal and communication skills. A pair of students will be placed in an NGO, a public authority or a Centre affiliated to the Faculty for a period of not less than 160 hours during term time or summer time. Students will work for the organization under the supervision of its relevant staff. The work may involve preparation of reports, carrying out research work or other relevant activities. Assessment: journals:25%, project involvement:30%, seminar participation:15%, project presentation:15%, group report:15%.

---

**FOSS0009. Social justice summer internship (9 credits)**
This Internship is similar to the Social Science Internship except that a social science student will pair up with a law student. They will work full time in the internship organization during summer for a period of not less than 160 hours. The pair will work for the organization at the supervision of its relevant staff. They may help with preparation of reports, carrying out research work or other relevant activities. The uniqueness of this scheme is for social science students to acquire the knowledge and understanding of the socio-legal aspects of different social issues through the collaborations and interaction with law students. Assessment: journal: 25%, project involvement: 30%, seminar participation: 15%, project presentation: 15%, individual report: 15%.

---

**FOSS0010. East Asian politics and societies (6 credits)**
This course provides a multidisciplinary survey of contemporary political, economic, socio-cultural issues in three countries (areas) in East Asia in the era of globalization: Taiwan, South Korea and Japan. Three broad themes of topics will be examined: political system, political economy and social-cultural issues. We will ask following major questions: What are the basic features of political systems in these countries? What are the salient political issues in these countries? Why and to what extent do these countries succeeded in achieving industrialization? How are these countries coping with the increasing challenges of globalization? What are the impact of globalization on the societies and cultures of these countries? It attempts to posit these issues and questions within the broader contexts of theoretical perspectives of political science and sociology. Assessment: The course is based on 50% examination and 50% coursework.
Eligibility: Students taking or having taken POLI0012 are not allowed to take this course.

---

**FOSS0011. Researching media and culture (6 credits)**

This course provides students with both analytical and practical tools to conduct research on culture and media. It examines the logic and procedures involved in qualitative and quantitative research, focusing on the formulation of the research problem to research design, data collection, data analysis, and finally presenting research results. Through workshops and tutorials, students will acquire practical skills in doing research in media and culture, particularly content analysis, textual analysis, industry studies and reception studies. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FOSS0013. Understanding global issues (6 credits)**

This is an introductory course on world politics. The purpose of this course is to help students to understand major global issues and familiarize them with basic concepts, approaches, and controversies in international relations studies. As we are living in a 'shrinking' world characterized by unprecedented levels of global interdependence, the course will also focus on the processes and impacts of globalization on international relations. Some of the issues studied in the course will include humanitarian intervention, global economic governance, poverty and inequality, international security threats, and transnational environmental problems. Eligibility: Students taking or having taken POLI0021 are not allowed to take this course.

---

**FOSS0014. Cultural studies and modern societies (6 credits)**

Cultural studies has been one of the frontier subjects in social sciences and the humanities in the past two decades. This course introduces students to the major theories and methods involved. It does this by examining a range of substantive cultural phenomena accompanying the rise and transformation of modern societies. These include the rise of mass entertainment industries and their influence on social outlook and behaviour; the role of consumption in maintaining social identities and status hierarchy; street culture and youth behaviour; the search for fantasies in the shopping mall; new regimes of body management and their impact on gender relations; the survival of the most traditional ritual practices in a high-tech society; the impact of the globalization of production and consumption on notions of pleasure, space and time; and the triumph of image over substance in the media-saturated post-modern world. The learning approach adopted, befitting the complex nature of the issues, will be multi-disciplinary and multi-layered, consisting of theoretical engagements as well as practical project work. Students interested in modern media, journalism, popular culture and globalization will find the knowledge offered in this course indispensable. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**FOSS0015. Sexing culture and identity (6 credits)**

What is gender? What is sex? How does our culture portray a “normal” female and male? How do popular culture, the law, medicine and science shape our sense of being women and men? How are we to perform these gendered expectations? Do we have two sexes only? What is transgender and transexuality? Ideas and ideals about women’s and men’s roles in contemporary society are a contentious and multifaceted topic. This course, co-taught by lecturers of different academic trainings, is designed to introduce students to a number of concepts and theoretical approaches to the study of gender and sexuality. It aims to help students to have better understanding of cultural constructions of gender and sexuality and the many debates and controversies surrounding these areas. To unravel cultural assumptions about gender and sexuality, it will use a variety of texts including films, documentaries, fictions, popular psychology, and scholarly journal articles to interrogate how different societies create certain ideals of femininity, masculinity, and sexuality to make us who we are. Assessment: 100% coursework.
FOSS3003.  Research project/internship in global studies (6 credits)
This 6-credit, year-long independent studies project is compulsory for candidates who major in this programme and is designed to offer majors the chance to apply their theoretical training to a real world issue.
For the research project, students will design, conduct, and write-up their own research paper under the supervision of their FOSS 3001 supervisor. Students will also be obligated to find an additional research advisor who will have agreed to provide significant guidance and expert advice to the student throughout the course of this project. The final research paper will be approximately 20 pages long (double-spaced, 12 pt font, approximately 5000 words).
For the internship, students will be placed in an organization, which has a regional or global agenda, for not less than 100 hours. Students are expected to integrate their classroom learning into their placement experience and develop better understanding of global issues in a real life situation. They have to submit not less than 6 reflective journals, around 500 words each, and a 2000 words final report at the end of the course.
Prerequisite: FOSS1002 Appreciating social research or similar research methodology course which is subject to the discretion of Programme Coordinator

FOSS3004  Project/internship in media and cultural studies (6 credits)
It is compulsory for all final year candidates who major in this programme to undertake either a year-long independent research project or internship program. For those who undertake the project, there will be regular research meetings which are designed to allow students to formulate and carry out a project on a topic of their own choosing related to the Media and Cultural Studies programme, under the guidance from a supervisor and advice from an adviser. At the end of the course, students have to submit a final research paper of approximately 5000 words and give a multi-media presentation. For those who are intended to take this course, FOSS0011 is highly recommended.
For those who undertake internship, they will be placed in a cultural or media agency for not less than 100 hours. Students are expected to integrate their classroom learning into their placement experience and develop better understanding of media and cultural issues in a real life situation. They have to submit not less than 6 reflective journals, around 500 words each, and a 2000 words final report at the end of the course.
Prerequisite:  FOSS1002 Appreciating social research or similar research methodology course which is subject to the discretion of Programme Coordinator.
(The choice of research project or internship is subject to the final approval of the Programme Coordinator.)

Department of Politics and Public Administration

Unless otherwise specified, the final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and assessment of coursework in a ratio to be announced by individual course instructors at the beginning of each semester. The weighting of examination ranges from 40-60% of total course assessment.

POLI0001.  A special topic in political science (6 credits)
This course is offered from time to time. Students should consult the Department on the content of the unit on offer.

POLI0002.  A special topic in political theory (6 credits)
Each year (if possible) a political theory course will be offered under this heading. The topic chosen will depend upon the interests of staff and students. Students should consult the Department on the content of the course on offer.
POLI0003. Approaches to foreign policy analysis (6 credits)
The process by which states arrive at foreign policy positions is the central focus of this course. Examples will be drawn largely from the U.S.A., China and the United Kingdom. Major crises and events will be studied in some detail to underline the action-reaction nature of foreign policy. The course is intended for those who have studied International Politics in a previous semester.

POLI0004. Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)
This course examines the political, legal and social dimensions of interaction between bureaucracies and the public. Consideration will be given to the effectiveness of complaint-handling institutions, such as the ombudsman, Freedom of Information Acts, secrecy provisions and the roles played by street-level bureaucrats.

POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
This course discusses the morality of capitalism with reference to such issues as exploitation, social justice and equality. Topics include the philosophical defence of free-market capitalism, egalitarian theories of social justice, Marxist critique of capitalism, the concept of exploitation, and welfare rights.

POLI0006. China and Hong Kong: the politics of transition (6 credits)
The development of relations between China and Hong Kong since 1982 is critical to our understanding of Hong Kong's current political problems. This course focuses on the Basic Law, autonomy, democratization, and Hong Kong's political, economic and legal interaction with China.

POLI0009. Comparative politics (6 credits)
This course introduces students to the methods and issues of comparative politics. It will examine the logic and method of comparative politics and some key issues in the comparative study of political behaviour, institutions and processes, such as political culture, political participation, political parties, intergovernmental relations, state-society relations and political development.

POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
This course discusses basic and practical issues concerning the nature, justification, and limits of democracy. Topics include the concept and foundations of democracy, participatory democracy, the elitist challenge to democracy, Marxist critique of capitalist democracy, rational choice approaches to democracy, and others.

POLI0012. East Asian political economy (6 credits)
This course aims to examine the political processes that underlie the rapid economic transformation of East Asian countries. We will mainly cover Japan and the newly industrializing economies, namely Singapore, Hong Kong, Taiwan, and South Korea, but comparisons with China and other emerging economies such as Malaysia and Thailand will also be made. We will first introduce the salient features of the East Asian model of development and we will then analyze the pattern of political development, the relations between the state and other political actors, the development of administrative system, as well as the impact of international relations and strategic factors on the domestic political and economic processes of these cases. Eligibility: Students taking or having taken FOSS0010 are not allowed to take this course.

POLI0013. Elections and representative democracy (6 credits)
This course examines the relationship between various aspects of elections and representative democracy. Electoral systems, various aspects of the electoral process, the role of representatives, among other topics,
will be studied in relation to democratic principles and theories of representation. Examples will be drawn from both Hong Kong and other political systems.

**POLI0015. Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)**
This course examines major public issues in contemporary societies from the perspectives of ethics and political theory. It aims to enhance students’ abilities to critically analyze controversial ethical issues in public affairs. Topics include the nature and methods of moral arguments, major approaches in ethics and political theory, and selected studies of current public issues in the fields of global ethics, market ethics, and political and administrative ethics.

**POLI0016. Gender and development (6 credits)**
This course introduces the gender dimension to the study of development, especially in an era of globalization. It begins with an overview of the articulation of gender concerns in western development theory and practice in the last three decades, and explores in greater depth the gendered impact of certain key processes at work today. They include war and nation building, the debt crisis, global economic restructuring and labour migration, global governance and the international women’s movement.
Eligibility: Students taking or having taken FOSS0004 are not allowed to take this course.

**POLI0017. Government and business (6 credits)**
This course explores the interplay between government and business within major East Asian countries and how regional economic dynamism is shaping regional international relations in East Asia. The theoretical focus is on how government policy affects the market and how economic forces shape government political decisions. At the international level, it seeks to examine the political basis of regional economic integration and the economic foundation of international political cooperation in East Asia. Issue areas for this course include: the economic dynamism in East Asia, sub-regional economic growth circles, patterns of trade and investment, APEC, and security challenges and economic regionalism.

**POLI0018. The Japanese way of politics (6 credits)**
The main questions to be addressed in this course include: What are the main characteristics of the Japanese democracy? How does it differ from other liberal democracies? Why had the LDP maintained its long-lasting rule between 1955 and 1993? What is the role of the bureaucracy in Japanese politics? How does the business community exert its political influence? What are the main characteristics of the Japanese political culture? How do ordinary Japanese and social groups exercise their political power? What are the main sources of political change in the 1990s? What contributed to the end of the LDP’s dominance in national politics? What are the main changes in the electoral system? How do the Japanese political culture and domestic politics affect Japanese foreign relations?

**POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)**
Hong Kong's international character has been vital to its prosperity and vitality. While Hong Kong's 'foreign affairs portfolio' is controlled by China, Hong Kong retains considerable autonomy in shaping its international destiny. What global course should Hong Kong leaders chart? This class will examine the Special Administrative Region's unique international status, its complex identity as a Chinese world city, and its track record in facing the challenges and opportunities associated with today's highly interdependent global system.

**POLI0020. Hong Kong politics (6 credits)**
This course focuses on the legal, political and institutional structure of the Hong Kong government. The political culture and attitudes of the Hong Kong people are discussed. Other topics include the Chief
Executive, legislative politics, constitutional politics, public opinion, pressure groups, political parties, mass media, and Beijing's policy toward Hong Kong.

POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)
This is an introductory course on world politics. The purpose of this course is to help students to understand major global issues and familiarize them with basic concepts, approaches, and controversies in international relations studies. As we are living in a 'shrinking' world characterized by unprecedented levels of global interdependence, the course will also focus on the processes and impacts of globalization on international relations. Some of the issues studied in the course will include humanitarian intervention, global economic governance, poverty and inequality, international security threats, and transnational environmental problems.
Eligibility: Students taking or having taken FOSS0013 are not allowed to take this course.

POLI0022. Governing China (6 credits)
This course is an introduction to contemporary Chinese politics. The main objective is to understand the ideology, institutions and processes of the contemporary Chinese political system and explore the socio-economic consequences, achievements, and problems of Chinese socialism.

POLI0023. Issues in contemporary Chinese politics (6 credits)
An overview of some recent policy changes in China which are studied in the light of two main themes: the different ways in which political power is manifested, and the changing perceptions of ways in which governance of the state can best be effected: and to what ends.

POLI0024. Issues in public administration (6 credits)
This course offers an opportunity for students to examine current issues in public administration, particularly those facing the Hong Kong government.

POLI0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
This course focuses on the activities and functions of managers in public organizations. Emphasis is put on the environment and context within which public managers operate, and various managerial skills and tools that are essential to effective public managers. Students are expected to acquire skills to manage conflicts, lead, manage resources, communicate, and make decisions in the context of public organizations. Reference is made to the experiences in various public or non-profit organizations in Hong Kong.

POLI0027. Public policy-making: theories and application (6 credits)
This course is designed to introduce students to major theoretical frameworks that have been devised to understand and explain public policy-making. The main questions asked are: why are certain policies made instead of others? What are the major factors that affect public policy-making? Empirical studies from both Hong Kong and elsewhere are included to illustrate the application of the theories. [Students wishing to take this course will normally have taken first year introductory courses in our department. Students are free to take the course from their third semester onward, but as the course involves some level of difficulty, it may be advisable to take the course after the 4th semester.]

POLI0031. Politics of economic reform in China (6 credits)
This course examines the politics of economic reform in contemporary China. Issues covered include the connections between politics and economics, the political debates over economic reforms, the rationale and themes of the economic reform programme and the social and political consequences resulting from
the implementation of these reforms. Reform policies to be studied include rural reform, enterprise reform, central-local relations as well as foreign economic policy.

POLI0033. Problems of the Third World (6 credits)
This course explores the concept and dynamics of "development" through considering a range of concrete problems that have assumed primacy in the Third World today. Issues discussed will include ethnic conflict and displacement; poverty and inequality; foreign aid and neoliberal globalization; urbanization and environmental destruction; and civil society and democratization.

POLI0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)
This course aims to provide a critical introduction to public administration in contemporary China. Key topics that will be covered include the organization of the political system, policy-making and implementation, management and reform of the civil service, local government, public finance, and the relationship between government and business. The political and administrative implications of China’s integration into the world economy will also be examined.

POLI0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)
Public administration in Hong Kong has been going through a series of reform over the last decade or so. This course introduces students to the major issues confronting the bureaucracy, in particular its relationships to other actors in the political system and questions of accountability.

POLI0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
The course examines the environment, institutions, processes and issues involved in the management of people in public organizations, particularly the Hong Kong government. Comparisons are made to the experience of managing people in public organizations overseas.

POLI0038. Public policy and democracy (6 credits)
This course examines arguments for a more fundamental rethinking about the proper roles of government, community organizations, and citizens in public policy-making and new forms of service delivery. Potential consequences of public sector reforms for program effectiveness as well as for political and social citizenship will be considered.

POLI0039. Public policy analysis (6 credits)
This is an introductory course in the production of advice for public decisions and actions. This course emphasizes both the art and craft of policy analysis. The "art" dimension focuses on the skills in defining problems for analysis. The "craft" dimension, on the other hand, is concerned with theories, skills, and techniques that can be used to analyze, design, and assess policy options. Illustration is made with reference to policy problems in Hong Kong.

POLI0040. Public sector management (6 credits)
This course examines the structural design and operation of public section as well as public organizations. Issues such as the use of various forms of organization in public service delivery, the adoption of corporatization and privatization, and public sector reform will be addressed. Reference is made to the experience in Hong Kong.
POLI0041. Research methods for politics and public administration (6 credits)
Relevant, valid and reliable information is essential in making sound political and administrative decisions. This course examines issues on research design, measurement and scaling, sampling, and data collection and analysis, with emphasis on methods commonly used by politicians and public administrators such as mailed questionnaires, telephone interviews and focus groups. The course also examines the use of opinion polls, interpretation of poll results, and their effects on elections.

POLI0044. American democracy (6 credits)
The political system of the United States is often touted as the quintessential democracy in the world. While the democratic ideals embodied in the system have inspired many, the system also contains some important flaws. This course is to put the political system to the test. What are the philosophical foundations of the political system? What role does American political culture play? How are the powers divided among different branches of federal and state governments? How do individuals and interest groups exercise political power? How does the system work? To answer these questions and others, we will examine the philosophical foundations, working mechanisms, and major controversies associated with the American political system.

POLI0045. The political economy of the European Union (6 credits)
This course examines the political and economic dimension of the European Union. It will include a consideration of its political history, structure, policies and the effects of the market on national politics and economics.

POLI0046. Thesis in politics or public administration (12 credits)
The thesis will consist of an investigation into a relevant aspect of politics or public administration which must be chosen in consultation with the supervisor before July 1 in the year preceding the final examination. The thesis must be submitted before April 1 of the following year. Assessment: 100% coursework.

POLI0047. United States foreign policy (6 credits)
How does one make sense of the seeming "arrogance" of U.S. foreign policy? By enhancing student understanding of the causes and consequences of American international political choices, this course seeks to groom well-informed and objective critics of U.S. foreign policy. The course will examine the intellectual foundations associated with and the domestic political actors involved in U.S. international policy formulation and implementation. Students will then have the opportunity to apply this knowledge in a critical evaluation of some of the major international policy decisions made by the U.S. since WWII. The course will conclude with a discussion of the future of U.S. foreign policy, paying particular attention to the impact of the 9-11 attacks on the American world view.

POLI0050. Women and politics (6 credits)
This course asks why gender matters in politics and how women’s integration into political life is important to the fulfillment of democratic citizenship. It will examine shortfalls in reality and seek to understand the processes whereby most women “vanish” from public decision making. Drawing from progressive experiences in different parts of the world, the course explores ways in which politics could be made more women-friendly, and how women’s participation could help transform the nature and content of politics.

POLI0051. Issues in Chinese political philosophy (6 credits)
A comparative study of Chinese and Western political philosophy, with special emphasis on Confucianism
and liberalism. Topics include the nature of classical Confucian political thought, the developments of the Confucian traditions in response to local political changes and to the challenges presented by western liberalism, the contemporary discourse on Confucianism and human rights, freedom, and democracy, and other related issues. Reference will be made to Chinese materials.

**POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)**
This course helps students to have a better understanding of major trends and issues in international relations of East Asia. Instead of providing a comprehensive survey of the history, culture, and national policies of countries in the region, it mainly addresses four issues in the course: What are major trends in regional IR? What is the source of conflict in the region? What are the common interests that unite peoples and states of East Asia? How does the region organize itself? It explains dynamics and patterns of regional international relations in a broad geopolitical and geoeconomic context. Topics in discussion include major powers’ role in the region, the Korean Peninsula, the Taiwan Strait, ASEAN, Southeastern Asia and regional institution-building.

**POLI0058. Managing the global economy (6 credits)**
This course examines the interaction of politics and economics in international relations with reference to the world economy’s most dynamic region – the Asia-Pacific. It identifies the political considerations in global economic relations and analyzes the impact of economic factors on international relations. The course addresses four major areas. First, different theoretical perspectives on the free market global economy such as free trade versus environmental protection and competing priorities in different countries. Second, the key institutions in the global economic system – the World Bank, the International Monetary Fund, and the World Trade Organization (WTO). Third, critical issues in East Asia such as the role of the state in economic management, security and political factors in international economic relations and the prospects of regional economic co-operation. Finally, the major political challenges arising from economic conflicts in individual countries in the Asia-Pacific region.

**POLI0059. China and the world (6 credits)**
China’s place in the world has changed dramatically since the establishment of the People’s Republic of China in 1949. How do we account for the transformation of the country’s position from being a Soviet ally challenging the West, to an independent radical revolutionary state, and then reform-minded country eager to join the international community? As communism collapsed elsewhere after the end of the Cold War China is becoming an emerging global power practising “socialism with Chinese characteristics”. How do we understand and analyze China’s relations with the rest of the world? This course examines China’s interaction with the rest of the world since 1949, with reference on competing perspectives including power-political, economic inter-dependence and historical-cultural analysis. The course concludes with a critical assessment of China’s position in a globalizing world.

**POLI0060. Public financial management (6 credits)**
The purpose of this course is to provide an overview of financial management in the public sector from a theoretical and practical perspective. The focus is primarily on the conceptual, methodological and institutional aspects of public expenditure and revenue management. The subject is approached largely from an economic standpoint, but there is also some exposure to accounting principles. However, no previous knowledge of either economics or accounting is assumed.

**POLI0061. Hong Kong and South China: the political economy of regional development and cooperation (6 credits)**
The growing integration between Hong Kong and south China has profound implications not only for this region, but also for China and Asia as a whole. This course aims to analyze such an important
development and its many implications. It is divided into three parts. Part I offers an overview of the
development of the south China region. Theoretical approaches in the study of regionalism,
tergovernmental relations and globalization and their relevance for understanding south China will also
be examined. Part II analyses the social, economic and political links between Hong Kong and Greater
China and the development experience of south China since the late 1970s. Part III will focus on several
key issues in regional development and cooperation in the south China region, including
intergovernmental cooperation mechanisms, economic and technological development, demographic
flows, boundary control, transportation and infra-structural development, as well as environmental
management.

POLI0062. Political analysis (6 credits)
This senior division course is designed for politics and public administration majors for whom it is
compulsory. Based on classical texts in political science and public administration that illustrate the
methods of our discipline, the course teaches the skills of political analysis. Students will examine topics
such as political culture, bureaucracy, revolution, democracy, social capital, political system, public
choice, war and peace, and so forth. Assessment: 100% coursework.

POLI0063. Performance and accountability in the public sector (6 credits)
This course examines the ideas and practices of ‘contractualism’ in the Public Sector, between and within
bureaus, with external providers of public services and with the general public as users of those services.
Its focus is on the role of ‘performance’ (standards, measurement and evaluation) as a key management
tool in the contract environment. The course explores the potential value of these developments for public
sector accountability.

POLI0064. Governance and law (6 credits)
This course seeks to understand why the state regulates certain activities and behaviour in society, what
different forms of regulation exist, when and what kind of legal regulation is deemed necessary, how legal
regulation is enforced, and checks and balances against abuse in enforcement. This course is jointly taught
by staff from the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Law. The main
objective of the course is to explore the interface between the study of Politics and Law in understanding
governance. Relevant case studies will be included for illustration and discussion. To take this course,
students must have successfully completed POLI1002 Fundamentals of public administration and
LLAW2002 Administrative Law. BSS(Government and Laws) students are allowed to take either
POLI0064 or LLAW3080 to fulfill the respective programme requirements for the Department of Politics
and Public Administration or the Department of Law.

POLI0065. Public organization and management (6 credits)
This course will examine the fundamental theories of (i) organizational behaviours; (ii) organizational
structures; (iii) decision making processes; and (iv) organizational management with particular emphasis
on public organizations. To substantiate the validity of the theories, emphasis is placed on the application
of theory to various organizational settings including public and nonprofit organizations, and the local,
state and federal levels of bureaucracies. At the end of the course, students will have obtained the ability
to develop critical perspectives on the modus operandi of organizations and to formulate problem-solving
mechanisms under complex decision-making situations.

POLI0066. Public administration and the public (6 credits)
"Government is an instrument of the public for acting collectively." What distincts public administration
from business administration is the notion of "the public". In the age of New Public Management, however,
the distinctiveness and the identity of "the public" seem to have been largely lost.
This course seeks to (1) rediscover the "public" in public administration by analyzing various plausible conceptions of the public in relation to public administration, for example, as constituents, clients, customers, and citizens; and (2) evaluate the respective forms and potential for public participation in the processes of administration in these conceptions.

**POL10067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)**

This course explores a set of fundamental issues in liberalism. Liberalism, which is arguably the most influential tradition of political theory today, is about the proper scope of individual freedom and state power. Some of the issues to be discussed in this course are: What is freedom and what is its ground? Under what conditions should the state interfere with individual freedom? Should the state ban or discourage unethical or worthless ways of life? Should the state coerce people for their own good? Should we have the freedom to exclude people whom we don’t like? What is so valuable about personal autonomy? The course aims to assess the strengths and limits of liberalism by examining the arguments for and against the liberal views on these issues.

**Department of Psychology**

In addition to class sessions, each course may include a practical element on which candidates may expect to spend about two hours per week.

The final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and by assessment of coursework in a ratio of 40% coursework, 60% examination, unless otherwise specified.

**Semesters III to VI**

**PSYC0001. Research methods in psychology (6 credits)**

This course adopts a practical approach to teaching the analytical aspects of research techniques in psychology. It is designed to provide students with the necessary background in research design and data analysis for their own independent research into areas of psychological interest. The logic of statistical inference and scientific explanation, their relations to human values, the merits and limitations of quantitative approaches to the study of psychological phenomena will all be discussed. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite: PSYC1001 or PSYC1002 or PSYC1003.

**PSYC0002. Psychological testing and measurement (6 credits)**

This course surveys the major concepts and techniques in the field of psychometrics, and provides students with some hands-on experience with commonly used tests. Topics covered include: the context of testing and measurement; the testing process; test standardization; reliability and validity; intelligence and its appraisal; personality assessment; special domain testing; occupational applications; large-scale measurements; ethics and prospects. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

**PSYC0005. Introduction to counselling and therapeutic psychology (6 credits)**

Provides a theoretical foundation for students who wish to learn the fundamentals of counselling or to explore their potential for professional training in mental health. Some experiential learning will be used. Major approaches; skills and practice; ethics and limitations of counselling. Working with various clinical and non-clinical populations. Cultural values and socio-political contexts. Outcome and process research. Students with personality and abnormal psychology knowledge preferred. Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.
PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)
This course covers how humans learn to deal with information from the environment. Topics include various aspects of perception, memory, concept structure and learning, and thinking. Students will be involved in conducting experiments on cognitive functioning as part of the coursework.
Prerequisite: PSYC1001 or PSYC1002.

PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive psychology (6 credits)
This course covers some recent approaches in the field of cognitive psychology. Topics may include the cognitive unconscious in perception and memory, conditioning versus cognitive learning in humans, neural networks and information processing, as well as other topics reflecting the interests of the teacher.
Prerequisites: PSYC0007.

PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)
This course provides an introduction to developmental psychology from a life-span perspective. The topics include: basic concepts and theories of human development; research methodology and issues in the study of developmental change; biological, environmental and social influences on development; processes of physical development over the life-span; attachment and emotional development; development of perception, language, cognition and morality; development of personality and social relationships. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.
Prerequisites: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003

PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)
An examination of some of the major issues and controversies in the history of psychology which are important for the current debate and its continuation. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0016. The psychology of stress and health (6 credits)
This course adopts a biopsychosocial approach in exploring current issues and research on stress and health. Special emphasis is placed on the Hong Kong situation. Topics covered include: concepts of stress; the roles of cognition, personality and physiology in the stress response; social stressors; coping, stress management and health promotion; concepts of health and wellness; cultural implications. Students in this course shall undertake independent research projects. Assessment: 100% coursework.

PSYC0017. Motivation and achievement (6 credits)
This course is an introduction to theories and research on achievement motivation. The course will cover a variety of topics including: motivation as a personal trait; situational causes of motivation; cognition and motivation; sociocultural influences on motivation and achievement; the role of meaning in motivation; sex differences in achievement and work investment; age and achievement motivation; enhancing motivation in learning.
Prerequisites: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003; and either PSYC0019 or PSYC0020 or PSYC0035.

PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)
This course will critically examine and attempt a synthesis of a number of theories of personality as exemplified in the lives of some of the significant figures in the field. The relationship of specific theories to practical applications, personality assessment and psychotherapeutic techniques may be included. The
major aims of the course are to provide a survey of the breadth and complexity of this field and to provide a perspective from which to examine assumptions about human nature and the evaluation of behaviour. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination. Prerequisites: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

---

PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
The course gives an overview of the field which studies the behaviour of individuals in social contexts. It covers social perception, social cognition, social motivation, attitudes and attitude change, attitude and behaviour, aggression, helping, interpersonal attraction, social influence on individual behaviour and group dynamics. The effects of Chinese culture on various social behaviours will form part of the discussion. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination. Prerequisite: PSYC1001 or PSYC1002 or PSYC1003.

---

PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)
This course provides an introduction to biological aspects of behaviour. The topics include: biological bases of behaviour, development, learning, memory, and abnormal psychology; the nervous system; processes of brain maturation; genetic influences; psychophysiology. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination. Prerequisite: PSYC1001 or PSYC1002.

---

PSYC0023. Psychology of human communication (6 credits)
This course is a laboratory course in applied social psychology. It examines the cognitive and interpersonal bases of human communication. Topics include: the cognitive and interpersonal processes involved in message formulation and comprehension; the communicative functions of nonverbal behaviour such as filled pauses and hand gestures; the cognitive and social consequences of language use; and social cognitive models of persuasive communication. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination. Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

---

PSYC0029. Cognitive development (6 credits)
This course will explore the development of our cognitive abilities and capacities through early childhood, when the most complex and interesting changes occur. Cognition, in the form of problem-solving, memory, attention, categorization, language and so on, is at the core of what makes us human. Changes in these abilities are closely related to developments in our physical, motor, and perceptual capacities, as well as to social and emotional growth. Our understanding of the development of a person’s ability to think, reason and conceptalize has advanced significantly in the past few decades. We will examine both the findings and experimental methods of recent research on these topics. Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

---

PSYC0030. Computational models of perception and behaviour (6 credits)
An advanced course that explores some areas of psychological research where computational models can usefully be developed. Computer models, constrained by neurobiological data, can help reveal how networks of neurones subserve perception and behaviour. Detailed attention will be given to computational analysis of problems in visual perception, biological sensing more generally, and motor behaviour. Computational theories of human visual perception, in particular David Marr’s seminal work will also be discussed. While not an essential prerequisite, students are recommended to have taken Perception (PSYC0051) or a course in sensory neuroscience. Assessment: 100% coursework. Prerequisites: either PSYC1001 or PSYC1002.
PSYC0032. **Engineering psychology (6 credits)**  
This course examines how knowledge in experimental/cognitive psychology is applied to the design of man-machine interface, tools, games, consumer products, etc. Students will appreciate how better designs lead to positive outcomes such as higher user satisfaction, lower accident rate, and lower job stress. Topics include human skills, motor theory, human-computer interaction, safety and health, work design, attention, and performance. Most recent psychological studies on advanced technologies such as virtual reality and three-dimensional displays will be introduced. Students will also learn from site visits how such designs are implemented in real settings. Assessment: 80% assessment, 20% examination.

PSYC0033. **Industrial psychology (6 credits)**  
This course surveys the application of psychological principles and methods to the analysis of the complex relationships that exist between people and their work. Topics include job analysis, personnel selection, personnel training, vocational guidance, work evaluation, occupational stress, and errors. Assessment: 100% coursework.  
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0034. **Introduction to clinical psychology (6 credits)**  
This course will provide a broad exposure to both theory and practice in clinical psychology. It is a foundation course in mental health, counselling and other psychological services. Also it will provide the information and understanding required to make informed decisions about how to cope with the many social problems connected with mental disorders. A wide array of types of mental disorders will be examined. Important themes will be emphasized such as the continuum in behaviour from mental health to mental illness, the diathesis-stress and nature-nurture models and epidemiology. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.  
Prerequisites: PSYC1001 or PSYC1002 or PSYC1003.

PSYC0035. **Introduction to educational psychology (6 credits)**  
This course focuses on how psychological theories are applied to learning, teaching, and facilitation of human growth. The topics include major developmental theories and their application to learning and instruction, learning theories from both behavioral and cognitive traditions, effective teaching methods and practices, learners’ individual and group differences, achievement motivation, and assessment. Students will be involved in learning activities that require self-reflection and integration of daily life experience. Assessment: 100% coursework.  
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0036. **Special topics in psychology (6 credits)**  
This course provides an opportunity to study in some depth an area of psychology of interest to students and a staff member alike. Individual topics may have special requirements for eligibility. Students taking this course may select one topic from the list of topics to be announced in the semester immediately prior to that in which they are taken. Assessment: 100% coursework.  
Prerequisite: PSYC1001 or PSYC1002 or PSYC1003.

PSYC0038. **Psychology of language and bilingualism (6 credits)**  
A study of the processes involved in language comprehension and production, including the acquisition of a native as well as second language. The cognitive bases of language learning and use, the psychology of reading and reading disabilities, the comparison of psychological aspects of the Chinese language and other languages. Cognitive functions of the bilingual, the bilingual brain, psychological factors in second
language learning.
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0040. Cross-cultural psychology (6 credits)
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0041. Consumer psychology (6 credits)
This course examines the psychological processes underlying consumer buying behaviour and the cultural and social factors mediating these processes. Consumer behaviour will be studied from four psychological perspectives: motivational, information processing, attitude and attitude change, and decision-making. Students will learn to apply these perspectives to Hong Kong cases through exercises and mini project(s). The course offers both theoretical and practical orientations to marketing and market analysis. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0044. Organizational psychology (6 credits)
This course surveys the application of psychological principles and methods to the analysis of the complex relationships that exist between people and the social/cultural environment in their work organization. Topics include work motivation, job satisfaction, leadership, group relations, conflicts, organization design, and cross-cultural issues. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0050. Knowing and acting in everyday life (6 credits)
This course investigates knowing and acting as an integral process by which we construct our experiences and interact with the world to maintain our well-being. Pragmatic approaches to knowledge ranging from Western empiricism to postmodern constructionism. Taoism and Buddhism are introduced. Students are encouraged to practice what they have learned by becoming more aware of their own acts of knowing and their consequences in everyday life. Projects and tutorial discussions are designed to aid this practice.

PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)
An introduction to sensation and perception, with an emphasis on the psychology of seeing. Specific topics include the following: examination of the functional properties of sensory systems (e.g., auditory system, color vision, vestibular system, touch and kinaesthesia); phenomenology of sensation and perception; psychophysical limits of perceptual systems; goals of sensory coding; structure and evolution of sensory systems; theories of perception. Perceptual experiments will be conducted by students in laboratory classes.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: PSYC1001 or PSYC1002

PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)
This course provides an in-depth examination of two classic questions in personality and social psychology: What is social about social psychology? and Where is the person in personality psychology? By integrating research findings from experimental psychology, individual differences psychology and social psychology, this course seeks an integrative understanding of how an individual behaves in a social
context. Topics include: person-situation interactions; interpersonal perception; stereotyping; intergroup dynamics; achievement motivation; psychology of the self; language use and interpersonal processes; cultural influences on cognition and behaviour. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination. Prerequisites: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003; and PSYC0020.

PSYC0053. **Advanced research in industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)**
This research-based course focuses on specific topics in industrial/organizational psychology that are pertinent to the latest economic development in Hong Kong and in the Greater China Region. Psychometric assessment of various job attitudes, aptitudes, and work-related personality will be one such topic. Students will develop their knowledge and hands-on skills in selected areas covered in the introductory courses of Industrial Psychology and Organizational Psychology. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: PSYC0033 or PSYC0044.

PSYC0054. **Human neuropsychology (6 credits)**
This course introduces to you the basic principles of Neuropsychology. The objectives of the course are: (1) to introduce basic concepts of neurophysiology and functional neuroanatomy, (2) to review models describing different cognitive functions discussed in this course, and (3) to introduce the concept of brain-behavior connection via reviewing the neuro-anatomical and neuropsychological mechanisms underlying some common brain disorders.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.

PSYC0055. **Research internship in psychology I (3 credits)**
Students will have an opportunity to learn to do research as an intern in ongoing empirical research projects under a teacher’s supervision in the Department of Psychology. The internship includes participating in lab meetings or meeting individually with the supervisor, reading relevant theoretical and empirical articles, assisting in ongoing empirical research projects, and writing an internship report. Information about research projects offering internship placements and application procedure will be available in the Psychology Department webpage. Internship I and II can be done with the same supervisor or two different supervisors. Assessment: 100% coursework.

PSYC0056 **Research internship in psychology II (3 credits)**
Please refer to Research internship in psychology I for the course description. Internship I and II can be done with the same supervisor or two different supervisors. Assessment: 100% coursework.

PSYC0057. **Internship in applied child development (6 credits)**
The internship will provide first-hand experience working with young children as teachers' aides and opportunities for observing children. In addition, you are to enroll concurrently in a seminar programme focusing on your ongoing field experiences, Educational/Social/Legal Policy, and Advocacy.
Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: PSYC0009 and EDUC8001 and EDUC8002

PSYC0058. **Cultural psychology (6 credits)**
The course will survey research topics concerning how psychological processes influence culture and vice versa. Classes will be conducted in a seminar format in which students will actively participate in discussions of the topic of the week. One day before each class, each student will turn in no more than three discussion questions pertaining to the assigned readings and the class will be organized around the
questions and issues raised by the students. Questions will be graded for thoughtfulness and insightfulness. To encourage independent thinking, students will write a review paper, which will then form the basis for a research proposal. For students to fully benefit from the course, some prior knowledge is needed. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003; and PSYC0020

PSYC3001. Thesis in psychology (6 credits)
(For psychology major) An empirical investigation of a psychological problem. The study should be complete in itself; for example it may consist of the replication of a study done elsewhere in order to throw further light on the discussion by bringing in material which is available because of the particular situation in Hong Kong; or a basic investigation of a social or experimental phenomenon which has attracted the attention of the investigator. Weekly lectures will cover theoretical and practical issues in planning, conducting, reporting, and evaluating research in psychology. Thesis research will be supervised individually by teaching members of the Department. Eligible students will be invited by the Department to apply for admissions into this course. Approval by Departmental Head is required for admissions into this course.
Prerequisite: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003; and PSYC0001

PSYC3002. Advanced research methods in psychology (6 credits)
Weekly lectures will cover theoretical and practical issues in planning, conducting, reporting, and evaluating research in psychology. Students will each do an independent empirical research project; weekly tutorial attendance for research supervision is required. Approval by Departmental Head is required for admissions into this course. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: either PSYC1001 or both PSYC1002 and PSYC1003; and PSYC0001

Department of Social Work and Social Administration

Unless otherwise specified, the examination for each 6-credit course consists of a two-hour written examination paper. The final grading will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in the ratio of 60:40. Teachers concerned will announce at the beginning of each semester the assessment ratio for courses not assessed in the 60:40 examination/coursework ratio.

Semesters III to VI

SOWK0002. Working with children and families (6 credits)
This course adopts a developmental perspective in understanding children. Common behaviour problems in children (such as emotional manifestation, oppositional behaviour, conduct disorder, school problems) will be addressed. The principles and procedures of particular intervention theories relevant to the Hong Kong situation will be examined.

SOWK0007. Working with families (6 credits)
This course will examine the concept of a ‘family perspective’ and assist students in gaining an understanding of the major approaches to working with families. Theories on family, methods of assessment, and a range of strategies and techniques for effective intervention with the family as well as their applicability to the local context will be considered.

SOWK0009. Issues and interventions in mental health settings (6 credits)
This course aims to enhance the students’ basic understanding of mental illness by focusing on alternative definitions of mental illness, cross-cultural considerations, etiology, and interventive strategies. The
diversity of roles of the professionals in team work with the mentally ill within the Hong Kong context will also be examined.

SOWK0011. Issues in health care and rehabilitation settings (6 credits)
This course gives students a basic understanding of the relationship between health, handicap and rehabilitation, public acceptance and social stigma, so as to enable the students to work more effectively in health care and rehabilitation settings.

SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
The course explores the philosophies, organization, techniques and development of social welfare provision in China. The work of the service organizations such as Civil Affairs Bureau, Street Offices, Unions, Federation of Women, and Communist Youth League would be studied. Issues of social security, youth policy, women status, child care, the care of the elderly people, the physically and mentally handicapped and professional training would be discussed.

SOWK0013. Social work practice with selected target groups or in specific settings (6 credits)
This course will focus on the practice of social work with selected target groups such as children, youth and delinquents, alcoholics and drug addicts, or in specific settings such as school, hospital, youth centres and correctional facilities. For each group or setting, attention will be focused on gaining a comprehensive understanding of the nature of the problems encountered and the role of social work in solving such problems.

SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)
The theme of this course will be the importance of taking into account the cultural, economic, social and physical environments when examining matters to do with the provision of health care. The aim will be to introduce students to the issues of planning and priorities, financing and resource allocation, management principles, arguments concerning quality versus quantity, community health and public education as they relate to health administration.

SOWK0020. Oncology, palliative and hospice care (6 credits)
Professionals in the field of medical and health settings are expected to be competent in oncology care, palliative and hospice care. The students will learn about the medical, psychological, social, spiritual and policy aspects of care for cancer patients and persons with terminal illness. Cultural, sociological and traditional approaches to death and dying as well as bereavement will be explored through student projects.

SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
The course will examine the issues of social policy in Hong Kong including privatization of welfare services, the impact of ideology of welfare on welfare development in Hong Kong, the issue of equity and equality in welfare provision, community care and service needs of the new arrivals from the mainland. Different theories of welfare will be discussed in relation to local welfare issues.

SOWK0028. Selected topics in social work practice (6 credits)
The course aims at developing knowledge and skills relevant to the understanding and helping of focused target populations, the selection of which will be based on the special nature of specific client groups, problem areas or service settings.
SOWK0029. Comparative social administration (6 credits)
The course is designed to introduce the comparative study of social policy in selected countries in the world, and to examine the provision of social development programmes and social services for analysis and evaluation in cross-country case studies.

SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
The course covers two areas: (a) ‘Professional Law’: human service workers and lawyers, different approaches to the same problem, probation officers, social workers and the courts, children and the law, care and supervision, compulsory measures, adoption law and procedure; the mentally ill and the handicapped; and (b) General Legal Studies: an outline of the legal system and the administration of law in Hong Kong; Family Law; marriage, divorce, maintenance, rights in the matrimonial home; Housing: homelessness and the law, landlord and tenant (private sector and public sector), housing and public health law and practice; legal aid and legal advice schemes in Hong Kong.

SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)
This course will focus on the various approaches in working with delinquents and young people experiencing emotional or behavioural problems. To facilitate skills development, emphasis will be placed on experiential learning through the use of simulated exercises, games and role-play. Throughout the course, case and group examples will be drawn from a variety of local practice settings-probation, residential facilities for juvenile offenders, correctional services, outreach and school social work.

SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)
This course will begin with a critical review of the current state of theory and research on youth problems and delinquency. It will then go on to evaluate existing policies and services directed at youth at risk and juvenile offenders in Hong Kong. Finally it will explore current issues in the field of youth policy and juvenile justice, particularly the overseas development of new programme initiatives. Special emphasis will be given to the relevance of these issues and programmes within the Hong Kong context.

SOWK0037. Human sexuality (6 credits)
This course tells you everything you always want to know about sex but are too afraid to ask: Whom you want to have sex with and why? What would you do in sex and where and when would you do it? Who’s on your mind when you think about sex, Leon Lai or Shu Kei? Which is more pleasurable, heterosexual sex or homosexual sex? What is the best sex that you’ve ever had? Why are having sex with yourself and masturbation acts of revolution? What is pornography – a stimulant to or substitute for sex? Who has a better claim to authority on sex, your family doctor, your lecturer, the host of a radio phone-in program on sex or a sex worker in the street?

SOWK0044. Medical knowledge for social sciences students (3 credits)
Chronic illness, pain, accidents, and terminal illness are a major source of stress in contemporary society. It is important for students to be knowledgeable about the human body and its common illnesses. The objectives of this course include: to familiarize students with the disease patterns in Hong Kong, to study common diseases which present major health hazards, and to acquire a basic understanding of the medical language. No prior knowledge in medicine is required. A basic understanding of human biology will be an advantage. Assessment: 100% coursework.
**SOWK0046. Socio-cultural context of aging (6 credits)**
The aging experience and age-related changes in physical, mental, and social functioning vary across different cultures and societies. This course examines the psychological, environmental, and societal factors accompanying and shaping the process of aging with a special emphasis on examining the Chinese and Western cultures. Specifically, the course focuses on how unique aspects of a particular culture or society determine physical, mental and social well-being in old people. Normal and pathological changes in physical, mental, and social functioning associated with aging will be examined, and the implications of such factors as ageism, economic deprivation, exits from social roles, and being widow, and for the well-being of older adults will be addressed. The roles of family caregivers and human service providers, in the enhancement of the well-being of the elderly will also be explored.

**SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)**
This course explores the evolution of social policy in Hong Kong. Alternative approaches to understanding the political, economic, and social dynamics that influence social policy and the implications of these dynamics for social reform will be considered. The formation of political responses to human problems and the impact of such responses on social policy will be discussed with reference to the constitution, the legislature, the Chief Executive and the Executive Council, political parties, pressure groups and the electoral system.

**SOWK0051. Information and communication technology in human services (6 credits)**
This course is designed to introduce students to the utilization of information and communication technology in human service settings. The major areas are (a) a review of the trends in the human service agencies’ use of information and communication technology; (b) an exploration of software frequently used in the human services; and (c) the ethics of IT usage in the human services.

**SOWK0053. Evaluation of social services (6 credits)**
This course will introduce students to a variety of approaches used to evaluate social services. Students will learn how evaluation techniques can help social service personnel respond to the growing demand for accountability, given that appropriate measures have been taken to collect and analyze data in order to inform decision making. These techniques include: evaluability assessment, designing goals and objectives, choosing an evaluation approach and developing process and outcome measures. Through the course materials, students come to understand the necessity of grounding evaluation approaches within an organization context and the practical issues that arise while implementing an evaluation and using evaluation results. Assessment: 100% coursework

**SOWK0054. Gender and society – a policy perspective (6 credits)**
Men and women's experience of the social world is significantly different but gender as a social construct is frequently overlooked both in academic discourse and in policy planning arenas. Gender effects are clear in health, education, employment, housing, social security provision, political activity and family (both in terms of private relations and family policy). This course will examine the different theories of gender discrimination, the consequent effects on social, economic and political life and attempt to answer the question 'what is to be done about it?'

**SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)**
The aim of this course is to enable students to understand the recent business-oriented reforms in human service organizations. Human service organizations provide welfare, education and medical services to their users. The dynamics of quality improvements, strategic planning, monitoring and control, management information system, performance appraisal, supervision, stress management, teamwork, financial management and change are included.
SOWK0057. Aging and society (6 credits)
This course is to study the ways in which social and cultural factors enter into the aging process. The practical and immediate effects of aging on society are examined. The course provides a comprehensive description of the dimensions of aging. The goal is to provide a holistic view of aging and to point to the ways in which the personal, social and structural levels of the process interact to shape the daily life of the elderly. With these understandings, the ways to deliver appropriate services to the elderly are discussed.

SOWK0058. Managing people in human services (6 credits)
This course introduces concepts for the understanding of organization behaviour and emphasizes on the application of these concepts and the skills in managing people in non-profit making organizations. This course is particularly suitable for students who have not taken any management courses before but will be soon required to take up people management responsibility as a team leader or supervisor in the course of their own professional career development. The topics will include basic concepts on management functions, purposes of a managerial position and the roles of a manager; and skills in managing subordinates including motivation, morale, leadership, coaching, performance management and disciplinary actions.

SOWK0060. Career skills training (6 credits)
Success in one’s career is one of the most important life tasks for most people. Besides teaching students the necessary knowledge and practice of core career skills, this course also trains students to design and conduct career skills programmes. Through participation in this course, students will be able to master the theories and skills of career planning, understand the relationship between labour market dynamics and job searching, analyse the effect of social, economic and political changes on the job market. Through understanding the social psychology of career aspects, students will become more sensitive to human dynamics in the work setting. Assessment: 100% coursework.

SOWK0061. Financial development and management for social service organizations (6 credits)
This course introduces and examines concepts and practices critical to good financial management of social service organizations. The focus is on preparing students to understand the financial activities and reports essential to management and to analyze and use financial information in planning, budgeting and measuring results to promote the organization’s mission and goals. Fund-raising will also be discussed.

SOWK0062. Special topics in policy study (6 credits)
Any special topics in policy study that reflect current topical and changing needs in the community.

SOWK0063. Special topics in administrative study (6 credits)
Any special topics in administrative study that reflect current topical and changing needs in the community.

SOWK0064. Special topics in research study (6 credits)
Any special topics in research study that reflect current topical and changing needs in the community.

SOWK0065. Understanding and working with young people (6 credits)
This course examines the developmental characteristics and needs of young people and their actualization in the local context. Special focus is put on understanding the contemporary local youth culture and how
it reveals the needs of the young people. Major models and concepts in youth work are introduced. Working skills with young people implied from these models and concepts are also introduced. This course is especially suitable for students who intend to join the fields that work with young people, e.g. social work, teaching, church, entertainment, etc.

SOWK0066.  Care management (6 credits)
Care management is a major practice strategy to promote effective service delivery to diverse target populations. It is based on the notion that human service practitioners often work with people who have multiple needs. The major outcomes of care management are better integration of services provided by a cluster of organizations and community of care. This course covers the role of care management in the human services; the method and functions of care management in both direct and indirect services; and the monitoring and evaluation functions of care management practice.

SOWK0068.  Social skills training for human service personnel (6 credits)
This course will consider the theoretical foundation of social skills training. The relevance of social skills training to different areas of human service practice including teamwork and staff training will be discussed. Skills in working with individuals and groups in human service settings will be practiced. The course will be run in form of lectures, demonstrations, class discussion and exercises. Assessment: 100% coursework.

SOWK0069.  Counselling in health care settings (6 credits)
Counselling approaches used in health care such as crisis intervention, grief work, cognitive behavioral intervention, support groups, art therapy, psycho-education skills, bereavement counselling, pastoral care and peer counselling will be examined. Students will be provided with experiential training on skills/techniques in working with patients in hospitals and in the community.

SOWK0071.  Religions and superstitions in everyday life (6 credits)
Using a social psychological framework, the course examines practices commonly observed in Hong Kong and elsewhere, such as church going, the worshipping of gods at home, in the street and in temples, visits to shamans and ceremonies concerned with the dead. These practices are then placed in the wider framework of beliefs and knowledge about the world and about ourselves. The growth and development of belief and knowledge in the individual and in society is explored, in an attempt to understand why people do what they do. All of it leads inevitably to a discussion of science and religion in its historical and current perspectives.

SOWK0074.  Teachers as counsellors (6 credits)
As many students might join the teaching profession when they graduate, a purpose of this course is to help course participants understand the developmental characteristics, needs and struggles of students (children and adolescents). To understand the counselling process and acquire necessary skills in offering counselling to students are also main focuses of this course. It is expected that through the course, participants can be more equipped to be effective helpers in working with students to cope with their school life.

SOWK0075.  Violence in intimate relationships (6 credits)
The issue of violence in intimate relationships (e.g. domestic violence & violence in dating) is examined through multi-lenses. The course introduces the nature of the different kinds of violence in intimate relationships. The knowledge and skills necessary to understand the dynamics of different kinds of violence are taught. How to assess the violent issues, how to identify appropriate intervention strategies
and how to apply the related skills in the working situation are introduced. Particular emphasis is given to the relationship between violence and gender issues. Assessment: 30% readings and participation, 70% term paper.

SOWK0076. New age health care in community (6 credits)
An innovative course aims at promoting holistic health care concepts and intervention models in local context. Topics include: cultural concepts on health and illness, Chinese help-seeking behaviors; concepts on psychosocial needs and intervention, total patient care, team work in health care setting; gender perspectives and health care: working with powerless women and couples; working with sick children and families; community rehabilitation, self-help movement and patient’s rights; geriatric health care, care-giver supports; grief and bereavement, death and hospice care; working with individuals / casework approach; expressive art and group approach; use of emotional healing skills, alternative medicine approaches; research agenda and methods in health care setting.

SOWK0077. International perspective in human services (6 credits)
This course is a joint venture with universities from other parts of the world. The objective of the course is to promote cultural exchanges and appreciation of diversity. The course is designed to provide a forum for discussion and interaction among students from different races and cultural backgrounds. Students will be visiting other participating universities or vice versa. It is expected that through the joint projects which will be developed during the course, students will gain better awareness of how each culture is constrained or aided by their values, beliefs, norms, and attitudes.

SOWK0084. Theoretical foundations in social policy and planning (6 credits)
This course is designed to examine various models for the analysis of social policy, as well as basic concepts of social planning, programme design and implementation. Selected social policy issues in Hong Kong will be critically analyzed to further the understanding of the factors contributing to the development of social service provision systems to deal with these issues.

SOWK0085. Social service research I: methodology (6 credits)
This course is designed to provide a basic grounding in research methodology and to illustrate the major concepts, methods and goals of social service research.

SOWK0086. Social service research II: analysis and utilization (6 credits)
The objective of this course is to enable students to apply and interpret various methods in data analysis, as well as to enable them to critically analyze research reports and make intelligent use of research findings in social policy planning and administration.
Prerequisite: SOWK0085.

SOWK0087. Social service research project (6 credits)
In this course, students are going to conduct a selected group research project of their interest. Under the guidance of the teacher, students can learn and experience the whole research process including: defining research objectives, identifying research questions, designing research methodology and instrumentation, collecting data, analysing data, writing up research report and disseminating the research results. Assessment: 100% coursework.

SOWK0088. Body politics (6 credits)
Are you forever on diet or frantically toning up your muscles? Are you attracted to tattoo, piercing, breast
transplant or other forms of body manipulation? Do you dye your hair, keep it long or shave it clean? Do you desire a body like yours or of the other sex? How private is your body? Did your parents ever beat you up to quiet you down? Do you detest torture while admiring extreme sporters? If you believe in body language, do you know when your body is silenced? Does a handicapped, deformed or ageing body disturb you? And a corpse? Who has control over your body: your family, your lover, your doctor, or the Government? This course provides students with insights in the meaning of body as an object of inquiry. If a body is a playground providing us with sensational pleasures, it is also a battlefield where forces of domination are constantly at war. The complex ways in which our bodies are manipulated, abused and used as source of power will be explored. Guided by a diversity of classical and contemporary perspectives, this course helps you search your soul by getting inside your body.

SOWK0089. Family and society – a policy perspective (6 credits)
This course will study the changing functions of the family system as the most fundamental caring unit in society. Policies affecting the family system, its relation with other social institutions, and measures necessary to strengthen its roles will be discussed.

SOWK0091. Current welfare issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
The format of this course is problem-based. Students and Course Instructor together identify the current welfare issues (CWIs) at the beginning of the term. For each CWI, the Course Instructor assists the students to identify the learning objectives, locate the relevant learning material, develop understanding in the areas identified, and construct the learning experience. Areas of learning may extend beyond the subject of social welfare to cover economics, politics, public finance, public administration, social psychology, sociology, management. In the first term, the Policy Address of the Chief Executive of the SAR Government may be chosen as one of the CWIs. In the second term, the Budget of the SAR Government for 2000-2001 may be chosen. Assessment: 100% coursework.

SOWK0092. Adventure-Based Counselling: theory and practice (6 credits)
Adventure-Based Counselling (ABC) is a popular contemporary approach employed to work with people in order to assist their building and/or promoting of a positive self-concept, improve their interpersonal relationship and enhance their problem-solving abilities. Although it is especially popular among working with young people, it can also be used in working with different age groups, families and couples. This course aims to introduce the basic theories and practices of ABC and to provide training in some micro skills in conducting ABC sessions. The quality of an ABC facilitator and the ethical considerations in employing ABC to work with people will be discussed in the course. The format of the course includes lectures, seminars and ABC workshops for students to participate and experience the process.

SOWK0093. Generation Y: youth (sub) cultures (6 credits)
This course explores various youth (sub)cultures, and will be organized around the following topics: (1) body and beauty; (2) club cultures and drugs; (3) sex and the cyber-space; (4) popular and indie music. This course focuses on the insiders’ perspective, i.e. the ways in which young people actually experience and make sense of their own activities, while sensitizing students to the historical specificity of the construction of youth as a social category and the politics of representation.

SOWK0094. Human service development, promotion, and evaluation (6 credits)
As the society increasingly emphasizes accountability of human services, the organizations providing such services have to develop, improve and deliver these services in a more cost-effective and cost-efficient way to satisfy the changing needs of the citizens. This course examines the roles of social marketing and market research in the human services through application of the principles and practices learned. This course provides students with some essentials, values, knowledge and skills in human
service development, promotion, distribution and evaluation. The students will have the opportunity to
develop and apply decision-making and analytical skills relevant to the functions of social marketing and
market research within the human service.

SOWK0096. Policy provisions for income protection (6 credits)
This course will discuss the concept of social security, its historical development, and functions in society.
Students will be introduced to the planning, financing and administration of the social security systems as
they are operated in Hong Kong and elsewhere.

SOWK0097. Information technology and society (6 credits)
This course examines the various issues related to the impact of the development of information and
communication technology on modern society. Such issues range from family and interpersonal
relationship, organizational changes, social organization, digital divide and politics. Relevant theories,
researches, social interventions and social policy will be covered in this semester course.

SOWK2008. Human behaviour and the social environment (II) (6 credits)
This course studies a spectrum of disturbed behaviours, from concepts of normality, abnormality,
classification and assessment, to the clinical syndromes: neuroses, psychoses, personality disorders,
psycho-physiologic disorders, organic brain syndromes, and mental retardation; sociopathy, sexual
deviations and drug abuses; and behavioural disorders of childhood and adolescence.
Prerequisites: SOWK1004. Human behaviour and the social environment (I) or a equivalent course in the
area of developmental psychology

SOWK3005. Field practicum/project report (12 credits)
Students may choose to write a project report on a topic of their own choice. The project report should be
between 6,000 and 7,000 words in length and should demonstrate the application of some of the
knowledge and skills in social administration. Assessment: 100% coursework.
Prerequisites: SOWK0084, SOWK0085 and SOWK0086.

Department of Sociology

Prerequisites requirements may be specified in some courses. In exceptional cases these may be waived
by the Head of the Department.
The senior level courses are listed below. Not all the courses listed will necessarily be offered every year.
The final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment
of coursework in a ratio of 40% coursework, 60% examination, unless otherwise specified.

Semesters III to VI

SOCI0001. A history of social theory (6 credits)
This course introduces students to the development of sociological thought in the nineteenth and twentieth
centuries.

SOCI0002. Class, wealth and poverty: inequality and injustice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
This course deals with the phenomenon of social inequality. It will cover topics such as theoretical
explanations of this phenomenon; the methodological problems involved; different types of social
stratification including caste, class, gender and ethnicity; the consequences of stratification on life chances
and lifestyles; and social mobility. A comparative approach will be adopted.

---

**SOCI0003. Contemporary Chinese society (6 credits)**
This course attempts to analyse the social system in the People's Republic of China. Sociological explanations of the Chinese Communist Revolution, the process of social reintegration through ideology and organization, the socialist path to modernization, and continuities and discontinuities with social patterns in the past will be discussed.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0052 recommended.

---

**SOCI0005. Criminal behaviour (6 credits)**
This course focuses on the psychology of criminal conduct and social psychological explanations of individual and group offending. Topics include: psycho-social theories of criminal behaviour; mental disorder and crime; sexual and dangerous offenders; therapeutic communities; forensic psychology; serial offenders; and issues in ethics, treatment and intervention. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0071 recommended.

---

**SOCI0006. Critical issues in media studies (6 credits)**
This course addresses the issues related to the construction of reality by the media. In recent years, the media have been subject to various criticisms, including negative reporting, tabloid journalism, and ideological biases. These criticisms will be reviewed with particular focus on the extent to which the media can provide an objective and fair representation of reality.

---

**SOCI0007. Cultural studies: themes and perspectives (6 credits)**
This course introduces students to theories, methods and studies of contemporary culture. Topics include: the problem of cultural creation under capitalism; the impact of the mass media on children; popular stars and their fans; women's magazines and the issue of sexism; the consumption behaviour of young people; modernism and post-modernism.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0019 and SOCI0015 recommended.

---

**SOCI0008. Culture and society (6 credits)**
This course will introduce some of the central concerns of cultural and social anthropology (culture and human nature; the components of culture; the diversity of human cultures and societies; culture and social behaviour; social change) through a study of the theoretical concerns and empirical fieldwork of selected social and cultural anthropologists of the twentieth century.

---

**SOCI0009. Economic development and social change (6 credits)**
This course will be concerned with the dynamics and consequences of economic transformation in the developing world, with a particular focus on industrialization in East Asia. We will begin with a brief survey of some of the general theoretical frameworks that have been used to explain development in East Asia, as elsewhere, before moving on to examine particular societies and thematic issues in the light of these general frameworks. The societies to which most attention will be paid will be Japan, South Korea, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Singapore and Malaysia. The thematic issues to be addressed will include the transformative significance of historical conjunctures, free markets, foreign investment, economic cultures and state policy.
SOCI0010. Education and teaching (6 credits)
Formal educational institutions in society will be examined, using the major concepts and theories of sociology. Emphasis is placed on the relationship between education and other important social institutions such as the family, the polity, and the economy. The questions of equality of educational opportunity and the potential role of education in fostering social change will also be analysed. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)
Women who engage in illegal activities typically acquire a ‘double deviant status’; they are perceived to be violating legal codes as well as gender proscriptions. Women offenders are not simply the shoplifter or the cocaine addict, but the ‘fallen woman’, the ‘wicked temptress’, and the ‘immoral mother’. Such views about women offenders have been the basis for their differential treatment under the law and in punishment systems. The purpose of this course is to critically assess these assumptions and the gendered ways of social control policies.
The course is organized into three main sections. The first part of the course will examine the ‘facts’ on female offenders and theoretical explanations for female delinquency and crime. The next section focuses on women as crime victims, particularly in sexual assaults and domestic violence. The last section of the course traces and compares the development of social control policies (as expressed in the law, the criminal justice system, and corrections) aimed specifically at women offenders in several countries. Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0071 recommended.

SOCI0012. Gender and society (6 credits)
This course will focus on the social construction of gender and the patterns of inequality that result from this process. Themes to be examined are: biology and destiny; social definitions of masculinity and femininity; sex role socialization; consequences of gender differentiation; theoretical perspectives. In addition, the contribution that social theory has to make to the question of the origins of sex inequalities will also be examined. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

SOCI0013. Gender in Chinese societies (6 credits)
This course focuses on gender issues in Chinese societies: how women and men live out their lives in history and at present in China, Taiwan, Hong Kong and other overseas Chinese communities. It also compares gender issues in Chinese and Western societies, as well as in different Chinese communities.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0012, SOCI0011, SOCI0052 and SOCI0003 recommended.

SOCI0014. Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)
This course provides a historical perspective on the transformations in the nature of work during the twentieth century through a focus on changes in corporate organization, technology and production systems, and managerial ideology and practices. It also deals with the impact on the nature and meaning of work of such contemporary developments as new production concepts, the flexible firm, the shift from industrial relations to human resource management and the globalization of production. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

SOCI0015. Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)
This course examines the major research landmarks in the study of popular culture in modern societies. The theoretical and methodological issues raised will serve as a guide for a series of workshops and field projects which investigate the history, nature and social significance of popular culture in Hong Kong.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0043 recommended.
SOCI0016. **Hong Kong society (6 credits)**
An appraisal of the sociological research that has been done and the further research that needs to be done on Hong Kong society, covering such topics as: demographic structures and processes; kinship, marriage and family; the sociology of economic life; the polity; social stratification; systems of knowledge and belief; the mass media.

SOCI0017. **Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)**
This course will focus on Japanese economic organizations and the ways they are influenced by Japanese culture and political and social structures. The topics covered include: development of the large corporation, management structures and styles, education and the employment system, the organization of work on the shop-floor, trade unions and industrial conflict, characteristics of small firms, inter-enterprise cooperation and competition, the role of industry associations, business and the state, Japanese enterprises abroad. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0018 recommended.

SOCI0018. **Japanese society (6 credits)**
This course focuses on some salient features of Japanese culture and society. The topics covered in the course are: the nature of Japanese society, culture and national character, family and kinship, social stratification, rural and urban communities, and social problems. Emphasis is also given to comparing Japan with other countries, especially China. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

SOCI0019. **Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)**
This course explores the dynamics of modern society by looking at the manifold styles and life in modern culture. It examines questions on what underlies styles, how choices in life are made, and how cultural spaces are closed and created.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0007 and SOCI0015 recommended.

SOCI0021. **Marriage and the family (6 credits)**
Marriage and the family are viewed comparatively, using historical and cross-cultural data. Included are the impact of industrialization and urbanization on family life, different forms of family organization and the societal conditions under which they occur, theories of mate selection, recent changes in dating and premarital sexual involvement, parenthood, and marital adjustment. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

SOCI0024. **Modern social theory (6 credits)**
This course will be a critical exposition of many of the major trends in modern social theory, linking contemporary movements with older philosophical traditions in an attempt to trace continuities and ruptures in social thought. The course will be concerned with the contributions of behaviourists and social exchange theorists, the efforts of contemporary interactionists and French structuralists, and the post-structuralist enterprise. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.
Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0001 recommended.

SOCI0027. **Politics and society (6 credits)**
This course offers a sociological discussion of political power, political institutions, political processes, and political behaviour. Assessment 25% coursework, 75% examination.
**SOCI0028.  Population and society (6 credits)**
The quantity and quality of population have profound effects on a society. The number of people who are born, who die and who migrate within or out of a society are results of decisions and actions taken by individuals or families which are in turn affected by local and international events and policies. Changes in the number and in the characteristics of a population also have far-reaching social, economic and political consequences. On the macro-level, this course will examine the inter-relationship between social, economic and political processes, and the demographic processes of fertility, mortality and migration. On the micro-level, it will investigate the mutual effects between actions of individuals and families, and the larger social and demographic processes. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

**SOCI0030.  Quantitative sociological analysis (6 credits)**
This course introduces students to basic concepts and techniques in formulating and testing sociological hypotheses. Real data sets, with special reference to Hong Kong, will be analysed. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

**SOCI0033.  Research project (6 credits)**
Students taking 48 or more credits on senior level courses in Sociology may undertake a small research project under supervision by a lecturer. Their proposed project must obtain the approval of a potential supervisor prior to enrolment. The project report must be submitted prior to May of the academic year of study. Assessment: 100% research report.

**SOCI0035.  Selected topics in social and cultural anthropology (6 credits)**
This course will examine the development of theory and empirical research in one or more selected topics in social and cultural anthropology. The topics to be covered will vary from year to year and will be announced before the beginning of the academic year. Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0008 recommended.

**SOCI0036.  Social anthropology of Hong Kong and Guangdong (6 credits)**
This course examines the transformation of culture in Hong Kong and compares it with developments in neighbouring Guangdong. It looks at changes in family organization, ritual and popular culture and problems of urban anthropology in Hong Kong.

**SOCI0038.  Social control (6 credits)**
A discussion of the problems of social order and control; basic techniques of social control; control in interpersonal relationship and small groups; the role of ideology and mass media in social control; the uses of conflict in establishing order. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination. Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0027 recommended.

**SOCI0041.  Social problems (6 credits)**
This course is designed to introduce students to a number of contemporary social problems, social issues, and social concerns. Special emphasis is given to the nature of social problems in Hong Kong.

**SOCI0042.  Social research methods (6 credits)**
The aims of this course are to introduce the basic principles and procedures which form the foundation of social research, to review the main types of research designs and methods of data collection used in social research, and to provide a set of criteria for analysing and evaluating the products of social research. The types of research covered will include participant observation, experimental design, survey methods and
documentary analysis. Ethical and political issues in social research will also be discussed. Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

**SOCI0043. Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)**
This course aims to survey a number of theoretical and methodological approaches to the study of contemporary cultural life. Topics covered will include the production and consumption of mass communication products (TV, films, advertisements, fiction, pop music), spectator sports, leisure patterns and subcultural lifestyles. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

**SOCI0044. Sociology of economic life (6 credits)**
This course deals with the relations between the economic and non-economic aspects of social life. Economic attitudes such as achievement motivations and work ethics, economic processes such as innovation and the establishment of business trust, economic roles such as entrepreneurs and managers, and economic organizations such as family firms and corporations will be examined in their sociocultural contexts. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

**SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)**
This course examines the interplay between law and society. It has a strong cross-cultural input, combining sociological, anthropological and historical materials. Students will be introduced to sociological theories of law, and to the theory and practice of law in socialist and liberal societies as well as pre-industrial and developing societies. The course therefore covers the customary, common law and codified legal systems and will examine the connection between legal institutions and social values. Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

**SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)**
This course deals with sociological and criminological theories of punishment. It will examine the historical and social context of punishment and look at the changing form of punishment in society. Students will be introduced to current debates on penal policy and corrections within the criminal justice system. Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination. Prerequisite: None but SOCI0071 recommended.

**SOCI0048. Sociology of sexuality (6 credits)**
This course examines how different cultures and sub-cultures construct their own categories of sexual desire, sexual identity, eroticism and sexualities. It covers theories of sexuality, issues in the cultural construction of sexuality, practices of sexual diversity and media representations of sex. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**SOCI0049. The body and society (6 credits)**
This course examines the ways in which the human body embodies the key ideas and cultural assumptions in society. It also looks at how major political, social and personal problems are expressed through the body.

**SOCI0052. Traditional Chinese society (6 credits)**
This course deals with the sociological significance and methodology of the study of the Chinese society. The theme is social integration -- how social order was attained in the late imperial period, and how that order disintegrated after the Western impact. Important institutions such as family and kinship, social stratification and mobility, rural and urban organizations, central and local government, religion and other belief systems will be discussed.
SOCI0053. Youth and youth culture (6 credits)
This course explores issues such as the discovery of childhood and adolescence, the development and expressions of youth culture in different societies including the United States, Britain, Japan, Canada, as well as youth cultures in Hong Kong.

SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)
In Hong Kong, Triads are known to have been long involved in the illegal businesses of drugs, gambling, prostitution, loan sharking, debt collecting and smuggling. Triads are also notorious for organized extortion from legitimate businesses, such as the entertainment industry, street hawking, wholesale markets and minibus services, interior decoration business, the trading of properties, and the film industry. Since Hong Kong Triads are believed to be increasingly active in drug trafficking, human smuggling, and economic organized crime such as credit card fraud, counterfeiting, and money laundering, Western police foresee that Hong Kong Triads are replacing the Italian Mafia as the most powerful criminal organization in the world in the next century. Are these contentions correct? In order to understand what Triads exactly do in different kinds of organized crime, this course is specifically designed to analyse the role of Hong Kong Triads in legal, illegal, and international markets.

SOCI0055. A cultural study of tourisms and tourists (6 credits)
The phenomenal growth of tourism in contemporary societies is of major social and cultural significance. This course introduces students to a cultural study of tourism viewed as a complex social phenomenon connected with social and cultural dynamics. Special attention will be given to Asian and Chinese experiences, not only as guest societies, but also host societies. Assessment: 100% coursework.

SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)
This course primarily aims to familiarize students with the idea that criminal justice can be viewed as a system consisting of interaction between three main components: police, courts, and corrections. Criminal investigation, arrest, prosecution, trial, conviction, sentence, incarceration, and community supervision will be examined. Attention will also be given to the formation and implementation of criminal justice policy. Students will be afforded the opportunity to explore a number of criminal justice systems found in other parts of the world but special attention will be devoted to the Hong Kong criminal justice system. Prerequisite: None, but SOCI0071 recommended.

SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)
This course introduces students to the nature of crimes committed by white-collar people such as businessmen, government officials, politicians, technicians and professionals. It examines in depth three major types of white-collar crimes: fraud, corruption and computer crime.

SOCI0061. Life styles and religious practices (6 credits)
In response to the highly stressful modern urban environment, there has been a movement towards alternative life style practices that are closely connected to various forms of religious practices. This course explores the reasons for the attractions of these religious practices, how they influence urban life styles, and why individuals and groups are attracted to the movements.

SOCI0062. Media development and cultural change in contemporary China (6 credits)
Economic reform and the rapid improvement of living standards have transformed the social and cultural
landscape of contemporary China dramatically. This course introduces students to change in these areas since 1979. It focuses in particular on the rapid development of mass media and the emergence of a consumer culture.

**SOCI0063. Multicultural societies and modern identities (6 credits)**
This course explores how individuals and groups, through the use of traditional and modern cultural idioms, attempt to negotiate, adapt and create their own identities in modern multicultural societies. Topics to be covered may include multiculturalism and the modern nation state; local, ethnic and global identities; religion and violence; popular culture and modern values; food and identity and intercultural romance, marriage and family. Videos and films will be used as teaching materials.

**SOCI0064. Globalization and the information society: myths, facts and emerging patterns (6 credits)**
This course will draw upon the most recent social research and undertake a critical examination of the ideas of globalization and information society. Three main areas will be covered: the nature of the knowledge-based informational economy, the ideas of risk, trust, and other economic-sociological aspects of e-business, and the transformations of work and non-work relationships as well as our experiences of time and space in the information age. Assessment: 100% coursework.

**SOCI0065. Understanding media studies (6 credits)**
This course provides an analysis of the nature, development and impact of communication media in society. It introduces students to the approaches for understanding the role of mass media in society. It also examines a number of substantive issues concerning the actual functioning of modern communication media. Topics covered will include: changing technologies of communication, the ideology, ownership and control of modern media, ideals and practices of journalism, the uniqueness of different media forms like television, cinema, print and the internet, the political impact of media, the social impact of new communication technologies, the regulation of and access to broadcasting, and the globalization of communication media.

**SOCI0066. The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)**
This course will examine the Asian economic miracles from the economic, social, and political angles. First, it will analyze the making of the economic miracles by exploring the roles of government policies, family and related social institutions, as well as the global political-economic forces. The relationships between these factors and the 1997 financial crisis will also be examined. Second, the course will look at the impacts of economic development on alleviating income and other forms of social-cultural inequality. Finally, it will address the complex interactions between economic development and political democratization. The course will focus on Hong Kong, Singapore, South Korea, and Taiwan, but it will bring in the experiences of the Mainland China, Japan and other Southeast Asian countries where appropriate.

**SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)**
The media plays in extremely influential role on the public’s conceptions of crime and order. This course is designed to look at the different ways in which the media shapes our ideas and responses to crime. The course is divided into two main sections. The first half of the course examines representations of crime in different media forms and theoretical explanations for why crime is portrayed in particular ways. The second half of the course focuses on the representation of crime in popular culture, particularly in films and novels. Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.
SOCI0068  Religious movements: peace, nationalism and terrorism (6 credits)
This course examines the emergence of various religious movements in the world today and the psychology of the people involved in these religious movements. It will examine why some religious movements expound on world peace while others advocate religious nationalism and religious terrorism. It will answer the question: “why are the religious fanatics willing to sacrifice themselves and others in the name of religion”, “are we living in a religiously dangerous world today?” Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

SOCI0069. Perspectives on crime and deviance (6 credits)
Building on the introductory course, the course aims to increase both the applied and theoretical aspects of understanding the causes of particular crimes and the remedies deployed to minimize their impact on individuals and society. Topics covered include violent and sex crimes, property crimes, illegal drug use, organized and elite crime, corruption and new crime (e.g. environmental, consumer and computer crime). The second half of the course examines topics in the administration of justice by focusing on the adjudicative process and the role of punishment including: the general rules of evidence; the principles and law of sentencing; and the efficacy and ethics of offender treatment and punishment. Related topics may include issues such as: police and judicial discretion; the sociology of prisons; community and intermediate punishments. Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.
Prerequisite: SOCI0071.

SOCI0070. Chinese identities and global networks (6 credits)
This course will explore the changing experiences and identities of Chinese in a globalizing world. It will examine the formation of Chinese communities and varieties of Chinese identities and representations in various parts of the world. Topics to be discussed include the use of social capital and guanxi networks in their social, economic and political pursuits, their desire to plant new cultural roots in their adopted countries, their sentiments towards their native home villages and ancestral villages in Mainland China, transnational socio-economic linkages and transnational businesses. This course aims to enhance students’ understanding of the formation of Chinese identities and representations in a globalizing world as well the significance of transnational linkages across socio-political boundary. Assessment: 100% coursework.

SOCI0071. Criminology (6 credits)
This course attempts to provide students with an overview of policy and governance in tourism. It will also provide them with hands-on experience in policy formulation – regarding the creation and interpretation of the issues that are connected to the understanding of cultural tourism. Issues such as ethnicity, the environment, culture and heritage will be studied. Students will be taught to interpret and analysis how tourist gazes are constructed for different types of tourism using the project-based method. Students will also be exposed to social and economic as well as ethical considerations of these creations. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

SOCI0072. Policy, governance and training in cultural tourism (6 credits)
This course attempts to provide students with an overview of policy and governance in tourism. It will also provide them with hands-on experience in policy formulation and the creation of cultural gazes through the understanding of cultural tourism. Students will be taught how to construct tourist gazes for different types of tourism using the project-based method. Students will also be exposed to social and economic as well as ethical considerations of these creations. Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
Special Topic in Sociology

This course provides an opportunity for students to study in depth an area of sociology of interest to staff and students. Students should consult the Department for information on the content and prerequisites, if any, of the unit on offer. Assessment: to be announced.
URBP0001. Cities and globalization (6 credits)
Cities have played a major role in the development of the global economy. As centres of production, commerce and trade, innovation, and intellectual and cultural exchange, cities have profoundly influenced the world in which we live. As cities occupy such a crucial position in the contemporary world, it is important to understand how they have developed and how they shape our daily lives, especially as the world becomes increasingly globalized. London and New York have occupied a prominent position in the emerging global economy for many decades. These 'world cities', and others like Hong Kong which also aspire to this special status, are key players in the global economy.
This course focuses on the various roles that cities play in the global economy. We will examine the inter-relationships between urban development and globalization processes. Particular attention will be given to the role of 'world cities' and to the debates surrounding their development. We shall look at the experiences of London and New York, as well as other major cities such as Shanghai, Tokyo, Sydney and Paris. We shall also review the current debate concerning the development of Hong Kong as Asia's 'world city': what this might mean and how it might be achieved. Assessment: 100% coursework. One individual term paper of 2,500-3000 words and one group project on an assignment set by the teachers
Teaching mode: 2 hours of formal classes per week, lectures and discussion sessions supplemented by 1 hour of small group tutorials

URBP0002. Creating the sustainable city (6 credits)
Since the publication of the report of the World Commission on Environment and Development in 1987, the principles of sustainable development have been widely adopted within the international community. Agenda 21, which has provided the framework for global action on sustainability, was adopted at the 1992 Earth Summit. Many cities and regions have developed new approaches to planning and managing economic and social development and environmental change using the Agenda 21 model. The World Summit on Sustainable Development in Johannesburg in 2002 placed a new emphasis on action to promote sustainability through partnerships between government, business and civil society. This course will review how the ideas surrounding sustainable cities and regions have developed over the past 20 years. The course will review experiences from different parts of the world to demonstrate how sustainability issues are now incorporated in the development process. We will also focus on the issue of sustainable development in China and Hong Kong, including the work of the Commission for Sustainable Development. We will explore how Hong Kong can plan its future in a more sustainable way to improve the quality of life of its people and to conserve its natural environment and biodiversity. Assessment: 100% Coursework. One individual term paper of 2,500-3000 words and one group project on an assignment set by the teachers
Teaching mode: 2 hours of formal classes per week, lectures and discussion sessions supplemented by 1 hour of small group tutorials